
BIBLE COMMENTARY FOREVER MINISTRIES

THE GOSPEL OF MATTHEW

Holy Spirit Filled Commentary

BIBLE COMMENTARY FOREVER MINISTRIES

Copyright © 2026 Bible Commentary Forever Ministries.

This work is freely distributed for personal use, ministry use, educational distribution, and charitable purposes.

PERMISSIONS

This publication may be copied, shared, printed, and redistributed, in whole or in part, in either digital or print form, subject to the following conditions:

The content must remain unchanged and reproduced in its original form.

Attribution to the ministry must be retained in all copies and distributions.

This work may not be sold, relicensed, or used for commercial purposes without prior written permission.

This copyright and permissions notice must be included with any redistributed version of the work.

Published in 2026

For permissions inquiries or additional information, please contact the ministry.

Table of Contents

Welcome to the home of the Holy Spirit word-by-word Bible dictation ministries! ..	5
Bible Commentary Forever Ministries Statements of Core Faith	6
Bible Commentary Forever Foundation	10
Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew	14
Chapter 1	16
Chapter 2	20
Chapter 3	24
Chapter 4	29
Chapter 5	33
Chapter 6	41
Chapter 7	46
Chapter 8	51
Chapter 9	56
Chapter 10	63
Chapter 11	73
Chapter 12	79
Chapter 13	93
Chapter 14	109
Chapter 15	118
Chapter 16	128
Chapter 17	139
Chapter 18	147
Chapter 19	158
Chapter 20	166
Chapter 21	177
Chapter 22	191
Chapter 23	202
Chapter 24	214
Chapter 25	230
Chapter 26	247
Chapter 27	267
Chapter 28	287
Acknowledgment	292

BIBLE COMMENTARY FOREVER MINISTRIES

THE GOSPEL OF MATTHEW

BY THE FOLLOWERS OF JESUS CHRIST, THE BELOVED SON OF GOD

"For God so loved the world, that He gave the only begotten Son, so that everyone believing in Him may not perish, but have eternal life." ([John 3:16](#))

"For the Son of Man came to seek and to save the lost." ([Luke 19:10](#))

Bible Commentary Forever Ministries aims to spread the good news of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who is God of the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son, God the Holy Spirit). The Lord Jesus Christ is the Son of God, born of the Virgin through the Holy Spirit. He was crucified and died on the cross to pay the ransom for all our sins. He was buried in the tomb, and rose in the body from the dead on the third day, and ascended into heaven to the Father in His bodily form, and now is seated at the right hand of God the Father.

The Bible tells us that we have one Teacher, the Holy Spirit, and one Book, the Bible, that people need for their lives. Our ministry offers free teaching resources from the New Testament through a Holy Spirit-filled online Bible commentary ([Bible Commentary Forever](#)) as well as a teaching YouTube channel that is part of our online Life Church BCFM, accessible through [Life Church BCFM](#). Our commentary on the New Testament is unique; we did not base our understanding on any other book or anyone; we used only one Book, the Bible, and only one Teacher, the Holy Spirit. The primary foundation of our commentary is our belief that the entire Scripture, as given to the writers chosen by God, is dictated word-by-word by the Holy Spirit to the soul and spirit of willing disciples (writers).

Additionally, our ministry also provides free international discipleship training through online courses based on the "Bible Commentary Forever Ministries Fundamentals of Faith Manual," which is available in print and online formats. Through this outreach, we support Bible distribution efforts, we plant churches, support local congregations, and assist missionaries in various countries.

Welcome to the home of the Holy Spirit word-by-word Bible dictation ministries!

This ministry exists to glorify the Trinity of God: God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit, in the name of Jesus Christ, our Lord and Savior. And promote the truth about the Holy Word of God and bring souls to the true knowledge of being followers of Jesus Christ, the Beloved Son of God.

Regardless of church affiliation or no affiliation, you can become a faithful follower of the Lord Jesus Christ, the Beloved Son of God, by reading and meditating on the Word of God and by applying the teachings of the Holy Bible to your life. The Lord calls us to live in a way that honors Him and to serve as examples of the Lord Jesus Christ in both the church and the world. Our mission is to glorify the Trinity of God as One: God the Father, God the Son (Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit (read our article: [The Trinity of God](#)). (Galatians 2:20, 1 Timothy 6:11-16)

Bible Commentary Forever

Ministries Statements of Core Faith

What is Faith?

Faith is knowledge about God already put in our souls before we were even born. And when we read the Bible or hear the Word of God, this knowledge and the Word will link the soul and the heart and will strengthen the soul's knowledge about faith. And when we start developing faith in our hearts, if we use the knowledge of the Word that we have learned from the Bible to ask the Lord to increase our faith, then that becomes a gift (see [Romans 10:17](#), [Romans 4:3-5](#)). Hebrews 11:1 tells us that "faith is the assurance of things hoped for, a conviction of things not seen."

1. The Trinity of God

We believe in the Trinity of God: God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit; God of Three but One. God of Three: different in each individual, but the Three become One in the Father; everything is in the Father. The God of Three is One from the beginning. The Lord Jesus Christ was begotten when He took flesh upon Himself, but He is One with the Father from the beginning.

- Supporting Bible passages: [Genesis 1:26-28](#); [Matthew 3:16-17](#); [Matthew 19:17](#); [Matthew 28:19](#); [Luke 3:21-23](#); [John 1:1-3](#); [John 1:14](#); [John 3:16](#).
- Supporting article: [The Trinity of God](#).

2. The Virgin Birth

We believe the Lord Jesus Christ was born of the Holy Spirit and the Virgin Mary to be the Son of God and the Son of Man. The Holy Spirit conceived the baby Jesus in the Virgin Mary's womb. Holy Spirit dwelt in the egg of Mary to make the egg conceive — God to be a Man.

- Supporting Bible passages: [Matthew 1:25](#); [Luke 1:30-35](#).
- Supporting article: [The Lord Jesus the Son of God and the Son of Man](#).

3. The Full Deity, Full Humanity, and Uniqueness of the Lord Jesus the Son of God

We believe the Lord Jesus Christ is both the Son of God and the Son of Man, being one hundred percent God and one hundred percent man. Furthermore, the Lord Jesus Christ is the Lamb of God, the only sinless human, and the only begotten Son of God.

- Supporting Bible passages: [Matthew 12:18](#); [Matthew 17:2](#); [Matthew 20:28](#); [John 1:1-5](#); [John 1:14](#); [John 1:18](#); [John 3:13](#); [John 3:16](#); [John 10:28-30](#); [John 12:32-34](#); [Mark 14:61-62](#); [2 Corinthians 5:21](#); [Colossians 2:9](#).
- Supporting article: [The Lord Jesus the Son of God and the Son of Man](#).

4. Believer's Water Baptism by Immersion

We believe that as the Lord Jesus Christ went to be baptized in the water, all the followers of the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, should be baptized in the water by immersion, in the name of the Father, of the Son, Jesus Christ, and of the Holy Spirit, for the remission of their sins.

- Supporting Bible passages: [Matthew 3:13-17](#); [Matthew 28:19](#); [Romans 6:3-4](#); [Colossians 2:12](#).
- Supporting article: [Water Baptism for a Christian](#).

5. The Crucifixion and The Bodily Resurrection of the Lord Jesus

We believe in the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ. The Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the sinless Lamb of God, was crucified and died on the cross for the sins of the world. He was buried in the tomb, and the same body (flesh and bones) rose out from the grave on the third day.

- Supporting Bible passages: [Luke 20:39-40](#); [Luke 23:33-47](#); [Luke 24:1-9](#); [Luke 24:36-42](#); [Luke 24:46-47](#); [John 20:26-28](#).
- Supporting article: [The Bodily Resurrection of the Lord Jesus](#).

6. The Lord Jesus, the Son of God, is the Only Way of Salvation for All Humans

We believe the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is the way, the truth, the life, and the only way to the Father.

- Supporting Bible passages: [John 14:6-7](#).
- Supporting article: [Make Peace with God the Father through His Holy Son Jesus Christ](#).

7. The Holy Bible as the Exact Word of God Dictated by the Holy Spirit

We believe that the Holy Bible is the Living Word of God, dictated by the Holy Spirit to the writers. The writers were willing to be under the control of the Holy Spirit when they wrote the Scriptures. As given to the writers, the Holy Bible is true and holy, with no errors. As followers of the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, we must abide by the entire Word of God.

- Supporting Bible passages: [Matthew 4:4](#); [Matthew 10:20](#); [John 1:1-5](#); [John 4:13-14](#); [John 6:51](#); [Hebrews 4:12-13](#); [2 Timothy 3:16-17](#); [Galatians 1:11-12](#); [2 Peter 1:16-21](#).
- Supporting article: [Bible Dictation](#).

8. The Presence of the Holy Spirit on Earth and the Baptism in the Holy Spirit

We believe that the Holy Spirit is now given to the followers of the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God. Because the Lord Jesus Christ was crucified, died on the cross, was buried in the tomb, rose out from the dead, and ascended into heaven to be with the Father, the gift of the Holy Spirit baptism is given to all the followers of the Lord Jesus Christ who believe in the Person of the Holy Spirit and seek this gift in the name of the Lord Jesus. The Holy Spirit is a gift of the Lord; upon the Lord Jesus' death on the cross, the Holy Spirit has been given to all humans who believe in the Son of God, the Lord Jesus Christ.

- Supporting Bible passages: [John 1:33](#); [John 14:15-17](#).
- Supporting articles: [Holy Spirit Proceeding](#) and [Holy Spirit Baptism for a Christian](#).

9. The Miracle of the Baptism in the Holy Spirit

We believe that the baptism in the Holy Spirit is a gift from the Trinity of God and is given by the grace of God. The manifestation of the baptism in the Holy Spirit of a believer must have speaking in tongues as a miraculous sign for the believer. Tongues spoken in gatherings can be either human or angelic tongues, but if they are angelic, there must be someone to translate. The baptism in the Holy Spirit is a gift of the grace of God and is different from having the Holy Spirit touch your heart. All true believers receive the filling of the Holy Spirit in their hearts upon accepting the Lord Jesus as their personal Savior. The filling of a believer with the Holy Spirit at salvation is different than the filling of a believer upon receiving the baptism in the

Holy Spirit. All the believers in the Lord Jesus Christ should earnestly and in faith seek their baptism in the Holy Spirit.

- Supporting Bible passages: Mark 16:17; John 1:33; Acts 2:1-41; Acts 10:44-48; 1 Corinthians 12:8-11; 1 Corinthians 13; 1 Corinthians 14:1-25.
- Supporting article: The Baptism in the Holy Spirit.

10. The Bodily Ascension of the Lord Jesus and His Second Coming

We believe that after the resurrection, the Lord Jesus Christ ascended into heaven in His heavenly body united with His human resurrected body and is seated at the right hand of God the Father, and by the will of the Father, He will come back in the same manner to judge the world.

- Supporting Bible passages: Matthew 24:35-37; Luke 18:8; Luke 24:50-51; John 14:1-4; Acts: 1:11; Revelation 3:11.
- Supporting article: The Second Coming of the Lord Jesus.

Bible Commentary Forever Foundation

WHAT IS SPECIAL ABOUT OUR BIBLE COMMENTARY?

Many books and commentaries are written about our Lord Jesus and the Bible. Yet, the Bible tells us that we have one Teacher, the Holy Spirit, and one Book, the Bible, that people need for their lives. This commentary is unique; we did not base our understanding on any other book or anyone; we used only one Book, the Bible, and only one Teacher, the Holy Spirit. We do not sell our commentary; it is available for free. We believe that any work done in the name of the Lord Jesus should be easily accessible without any cost. We trust that the Lord will connect people to our commentary, open their hearts to meditate on the Word of God by the help of the Holy Spirit, and nourish their souls. We pray that you will use this commentary as a guide and encouragement to make your daily life more dependent on the Bible and the Holy Spirit for learning and meditation on the Word of God (see [Acts 2:16-21, Acts 17:11](#)).

The primary foundation of our Bible commentary is our belief that the entire Scripture, as given to the writers chosen by God, is dictated word-by-word by the Holy Spirit to the soul and spirit of willing disciples (writers). For more information about the entire Scripture, please refer to our article, "[The Canon of Scripture](#)." The entire Bible has no copied portions; all of it was given by the Holy Spirit as the Living Word to each of the writers; the writers did not copy from each other; they wrote down what the Holy Spirit dictated to them, and that is why we call the Bible as the Living Word. This commentary presents this point of belief. We believe that the Holy Spirit dictated the Gospels to each writer, and there is no direct copying between the writers. Each Gospel writer wrote independently precisely what the Holy Spirit gave them. They had no interaction between them while writing; the only interaction was from the Holy Spirit. As a result, the Holy Spirit, which is the Spirit of truth, has given the words to be written down, so there are no errors in anything originally written down by the Gospels' writers. As we read the original Gospels, we, as humans, need to put the writings together to describe the events in the best light. We should not attempt to find errors; instead, we should seek to solve the issues to give the most logical explanation of the events presented in all Gospels. Our

commentary will always aim to offer the most reasonable solution to solve any perceivable inconsistencies in the Gospels' text. When there are differences in wording and events between one Gospel and another, the approach is to consider how to synthesize all the events from each Gospel and understand them. We must believe that there are no errors in the original Scripture writings. Each writer received the words from the Holy Spirit, who is the only Person who knows and remembers precisely the doings and the sayings of the Lord Jesus. After a time, no human mind can recall precisely what the Lord Jesus did and said throughout His ministry on earth.

*"However, the **Intercessor**, the **Holy Spirit**, whom the **Father** will send in **My** name, **He** will teach you all things, and will bring to your remembrance all things that **I** said to you." (John 14:26)*

For our explanation of our belief in writing Scripture, please read our articles: The Writing of Scripture and The Canon of Scripture.

BIBLE COMMENTARY FOREVER COMMENTS

"Bible Commentary Forever" is an ongoing work. This work is the result of our faith in the Trinity of God and our reliance on the Holy Spirit, who can give us the understanding of the Word of God, the Bible, but only by the will of the Father. The Holy Spirit is our Teacher, and all our comments and the ASVh e-Text come through prayer in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ and by the infilling gifts of the Holy Spirit. By the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, we provide the comments given to us through the gifts of the Holy Spirit. First, however, we will state that the comments we provide alongside the Bible verses are exactly what the name says: comments, not the Holy Bible. When we say the Holy Bible, we mean the gift given by God the Father to all humankind, and that the Bible writers have received by direct order what words to put down in the Bible. When we claim Holy Spirit-filled comments, we refer to the interpretation and understanding of the Bible that is given to us by the Holy Spirit's gift. Our comments are intended as advice to help with a deeper understanding. When it comes to the specific meaning of the Bible verses themselves, we have listed everything we have received through our prayer and meditation. Still, in some parts, we may not be able to put all our understanding down.

"Ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you; for everyone who asks receives; and the one who seeks finds; and to the one who knocks it will be opened." (Matthew 7:7-8)

By the mercy of the Lord, on January 12th, 2026, we finalized the ASVh e-text translation and the comments for all four Gospels (Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John) and the Book of Acts. We began the main commentary work in December 2013, after the Lord opened our eyes to pray and meditate on His Holy Word daily, verse by verse and word by word. Come and join us and discover the riches of God's Word. Use this commentary as an encouragement to ask the Lord through prayer to answer any questions you may have regarding His Word and the comments that we post. You do not need to be a scholar to understand God's Word. You only need faith in the beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, prayer, and asking for understanding from the Teacher of the Holy Word, the Holy Spirit. This commentary is given to us through faith and prayer, and the same Holy Spirit who guides us will guide you and resolve your questions.

"There is one body, and one Spirit, even as also you were called in one hope of your calling; one Lord, one faith, one baptism, one God and Father of all, who is over all, and through all, and in all." (Ephesians 4:4-6)

BIBLE COMMENTARY FOREVER NEW TESTAMENT E-TEXT

We are offering our Bible commentary based on the Revised Version, Standard American Edition of the Bible, commonly known as the American Standard Version (ASV). First released in 1900, the ASV serves as the foundational Bible text for generating an updated ASV literal e-text of the New Testament, which we refer to as ASVh. The American Standard Version is currently in the public domain. You can verify this information on [Wikipedia](#).

We followed three main principles of textual updating from the ASV New Testament to generate the ASVh e-text for our commentary.

First, for each verse in the ASV text, we engaged in prayer and meditation while carefully checking individual words using the Greek Interlinear and Strong's Greek Concordance of the New Testament. We updated archaic words and expressions accordingly. The Strong's Greek Concordance of the New Testament is in the public domain (see [Wikipedia](#)). Our aim was also to maintain the overall structure of the original translation.

Second, the Lord guided us to align and verify the ASV Bible translation with several key Greek texts: the 1881 Edition of the Westcott and Hort Greek New Testament (The New Testament in the Original Greek), Tischendorf's Eighth Edition Greek New Testament, and the Codex Sinaiticus (The Codex Sinaiticus), which are among the closest resources to the original writings. Additionally, we consulted other literal Bible translations, including Young's Literal Translation (YLT), which is also publicly available as shown on Wikipedia. We mainly access many of these resources through the Bible Hub online platform.

Third, to honor the Trinity of God, we have capitalized all pronouns and other words referring to the Persons of the Trinity of God. Additionally, we have preserved the use of "Thy" and "Thee" when referring to the Persons of the Trinity of God wherever appropriate. In our ASVh e-text available on the Bible Commentary Forever website, we have also bolded all pronouns and names referring to the Persons of the Trinity of God.

We refer to this updated ASV New Testament e-text as "ASV Helping Bible Commentary Forever," or simply ASVh. The phrase "Helping Bible Commentary Forever" refers to the ASVh, an updated electronic text of the New Testament based on the American Standard Version (ASV). This ASVh e-text aims to be the most literal and faithful update of the ASV, created with the guidance of the Holy Spirit to support our commentary. Additionally, the ASVh e-text is free of copyright restrictions, allowing anyone to use it without limitations.

Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew

ABOUT THE AUTHOR OF THE GOSPEL OF MATTHEW

The true author of the Gospel of Matthew, the whole Gospel from the beginning until the end, has only one author: the Holy Spirit; the words to put down in the Gospel itself come through the Holy Spirit. The Lord has chosen Matthew, the tax collector, to write down the Word in this Gospel, not because he had school but because he was clean from inside his heart. Because of the work he held, Matthew had more than one name (see [Mark 2:14](#) and [Luke 5:27](#)).

WHO IS MATTHEW?

Matthew was considered an outcast because he was a tax collector; many places in the Bible talk against the tax collectors. But the Lord takes him for a purpose. As the Bible says, the Lord called; he got up and went to follow the Lord Jesus. He held a position (as a tax collector), but that position didn't keep him there; just a word calling from the Lord, and he followed. The following is proof of his heart and of his deserving to be a disciple. Matthew has followed the Lord Jesus, has seen the work of the Lord, and he believed the Word of the Lord because he has seen it, so he believed every word the Lord spoke.

HOW DID MATTHEW REACH THE POINT OF WRITING THE GOSPEL?

After having passed a long time for him following the Lord and having seen many miracle works, the work of the Lord has opened his heart to commit himself fully to write down the Gospel (more than commitment; submit himself to the Lord for the work). So, he followed that conviction, left everything behind, and worked for the Lord: wrote down the Gospel.

One day, as he went along his life, the Lord had put it in his heart to start the work. That was a simple way: come along, sit down, and listen to the Holy Spirit speak to him as he writes down the Gospel. Suppose that someone comes and says that Matthew copied the Gospel. That is wrong; Matthew received the Gospel directly from the Lord; he did not take words from anyone, only from the Holy Spirit; his ear was opened, his heart was gentle, and the work of the Holy Spirit has been done

through him. Also, remember that Matthew was an intelligent man. His job as a tax collector was important to people at that time, but it did not keep him from where his heart was calling him. Most people, when the Lord calls, do not leave everything behind, but Matthew did. And the work of writing the Gospel, at that time, was work without payment.

PURPOSE OF THE GOSPEL

The Gospel of Matthew covers all the gospel details, and that is why his Gospel is the first Gospel to be put down in the Bible. The facts as written in this Gospel are further covered in the other Gospels. Think of the main details; for example, he has put enough details of the birth of the Lord, but other gospels will provide extra details as well. The main purpose of the Gospel of Matthew is to show the plan of the Lord for humans. He quotes things from the prophets that no one knows, except the Lord, who showed them to him. As you read the Gospel, you should notice that he quotes a Scripture manuscript that is older than his generation, which is not written down for common people to read. Some quotes he put in, as his work on earth as a tax collector, he would not have had a chance to study those works unless the Holy Spirit had revealed them to him.

Chapter 1

SUMMARY

Chapter 1 highlights the promises and fulfillment of prophecies that God has made with mankind regarding the birth of our Lord Jesus Christ. 1) The Lord's fulfillment of His promise to Abraham and David regarding blessing their seed through the birth of King Jesus. The Lord Jesus is a King, and many children are brought into the Kingdom of God through Him. 2) The genealogy of the Lord Jesus shows that Joseph cannot be the biological father of King Jesus since he descends from the cursed line of King Jechoniah. 3) The Lord Jesus is the Son of God, conceived by the Holy Spirit through the Virgin Mary, and He is the true blessing for the human race. 4) Mary is the most blessed woman, but she is not an angel, and after the birth of the Lord Jesus, she lived a regular life as the wife of Joseph.

1 A book of the genealogy of Jesus Christ, Son of David, Son of Abraham.

Comments Matthew 1:1. "Son of David." The Lord fulfilled His unconditional promise to David (see 2 Samuel 7:12-13; Psalm 89:35-36; Psalm 132:11).

"Son of Abraham." The Lord fulfilled His unconditional promise to Abraham (see Gen 22:5-18; Gen 17:19).

2 Abraham begat Isaac; and Isaac begat Jacob; and Jacob begat Judah and his brothers;

3 and Judah begat Perez and Zerah of Tamar; and Perez begat Hezron; and Hezron begat Ram;

4 and Ram begat Amminadab; and Amminadab begat Nahshon; and Nahshon begat Salmon;

5 and Salmon begat Boaz of Rahab; and Boaz begat Obed of Ruth; and Obed begat Jesse;

6 and Jesse begat David the king. And David begat Solomon of the wife of Uriah;

7 and Solomon begat Rehoboam; and Rehoboam begat Abijah; and Abijah begat Asa;

Comments Matthew 1:7. Starting with Solomon, the kingship covenant becomes conditional (see Psalm 132:12; 1 Chronicles 22:6-13; 1 Kings 8:22-28; 1 Kings 2:1-4).

8 and Asa begat Jehoshaphat; and Jehoshaphat begat Joram; and Joram begat Uzziah;

9 and Uzziah begat Jotham; and Jotham begat Ahaz; and Ahaz begat Hezekiah;

10 and Hezekiah begat Manasseh; and Manasseh begat Amon; and Amon begat Josiah;

11 and Josiah begat Jechoniah and his brothers, at the deportation to Babylon.

Comments Matthew 1:11. The Lord pronounced a curse on Jechoniah and his children (see Jeremiah 22:24-30).

12 And after the deportation to Babylon, Jechoniah begat Shealtiel; and Shealtiel begat Zerubbabel;

13 and Zerubbabel begat Abiud; and Abiud begat Eliakim; and Eliakim begat Azor;

14 and Azor begat Zadok; and Zadok begat Achim; and Achim begat Eliud;

15 and Eliud begat Eleazar; and Eleazar begat Matthan; and Matthan begat Jacob;

16 and Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

Comments Matthew 1:16. This Jacob is believed to be both the adoptive father and uncle of Joseph. Since Joseph, the husband of Mary, cannot descend from the cursed lineage of Jechoniah and his descendants, Jacob cannot be Joseph's biological father; he must be Joseph's adoptive father.

17 So all the generations from Abraham to David are fourteen generations; and from David to the deportation to Babylon fourteen generations; and from the deportation to Babylon unto the Christ fourteen generations.

Comments Matthew 1:17. Some generations are not counted here in the genealogy of the Lord Jesus because they disobeyed the commandments of the Lord.

18 Now the birth of Jesus Christ was in this manner: His mother Mary having been betrothed to Joseph, before they came together, she was found in womb having a Child of the Holy Spirit.

Comments Matthew 1:18. The Holy Spirit dwelled in the egg of Mary to make the egg conceive - God to be a Man.

19 And Joseph, her husband, being righteous and not wishing to expose her publicly, was minded to send her away privately.

20 But he, having pondered on these things, behold, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, saying, Joseph, son of David, do not fear to take to you Mary, your wife; for that having been conceived in her is of the Holy Spirit.

Comments Matthew 1:20. As shown by the genealogy given here, Joseph was the caretaker of the Lord Jesus, and through him, the unconditional prophecy given to King David was fulfilled.

"For that having been conceived in her is of the Holy Spirit." It is a wonderful experience for God to be a human and to make people see Him in the Lord Jesus. People can no longer claim that God doesn't know what it is to be a human.

21 And she will bring forth a Son, and you must call His name JESUS, for He will save His people from their sins.

22 Then all this has happened, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying,

23 Behold, the virgin will conceive in womb, and will bring forth a Son, And they will call His name Immanuel; which is, being interpreted, God with us.

24 Then Joseph arose from the sleep, and did as the angel of the Lord had commanded him, and received his wife;

25 and knew her not until she had brought forth a Son; and he called His name JESUS.

Comments Matthew 1:25. Mary is the most blessed woman. She is, however, not an angel, so she had a normal relationship with Joseph after the Lord Jesus was born.

"He called His name JESUS." The Lord Jesus is the true blessing for the human race.

1) The Lord is a faithful God who always fulfills His promises to His children. 2) The virgin birth is fundamental to our faith. We must believe that the Holy Spirit is the physical Father of our Lord Jesus. He was the One who made the Virgin Mary pregnant with our Lord Jesus, bringing to earth a miracle: "God be a Man."

Chapter 2

SUMMARY

In Chapter 2, the Lord shows the fulfillment of four Old Testament prophecies. 1) Jesus' Birth in Bethlehem. The people of the Lord were not aware of this event until the Lord sent the Magi from a different kingdom to come and worship the Lord Jesus as the King of the Jews. The coming of the Magi is significant since it shows that the coming of the Most High King (the Lord Jesus) was known outside of Israel, and the Lord God sent His beloved Son to be worshiped by the whole world, not only by His chosen people of Israel. 2) The Flight to Egypt. This event shows us that the Lord Jesus, Joseph, and Mary were not given any special treatment. They suffered and passed through the troubles of life like any regular human. For Joseph to take his family and move to a foreign land where he doesn't know anyone would have been very difficult. This move brought harsh times for the entire family, including the Child Jesus. The Lord Jesus suffered in many ways as a man and never received any special treatment from childhood until His crucifixion. So, humans cannot say that the Lord Jesus doesn't know what suffering is. 3) Herod Kills the Children as a ruthless leader. It is obvious that Herod, the leaders, and the common people did not understand who King Jesus was and the purpose of His coming to earth. Herod and the leaders felt threatened in their earthly positions. 4) The Move to Nazareth. The move to Nazareth happened to fulfill an unwritten prophecy that is given here through Matthew: "He will be called a Nazarene." We can't find this prophecy written in our Bible except here. However, since it is given here to us, it is clear that the Lord spoke it, at least through Matthew.

1 Now Jesus having been born in Bethlehem of Judea, in the days of Herod the king, behold, Magi from east arrived to Jerusalem,

2 saying, Where is the One having been born King of the Jews? For we saw His star in the east, and have come to worship Him.

Comments Matthew 2:1-2. Joseph and Mary remained in Bethlehem of Judea after the Lord Jesus was born in the manger. The story of the Lord has been told to people of many languages using different names, but they all knew the Lord as the Most High God. In their history, it has been told that the star of the Most High King who will be born will appear. Chosen Magi from other

kingdoms have seen the new star and have taken a journey in search of the Most High King. The Lord stirred up their hearts until they found the Lord Jesus. They reached Bethlehem before the Lord Jesus was one year old.

3 When Herod the king heard it, he was disturbed, and all Jerusalem with him.

Comments Matthew 2:3. Herod and the people were disturbed by the news that the Most High King had been born. Herod didn't want to lose the kingdom, and the people didn't want the Most High King, believing that He would be worse than Herod. They were all against the Lord Jesus before He was even born; nobody wanted a new King.

4 And gathering together all the chief priests and scribes of the people, he inquired of them where the Christ was to be born.

5 And they said to him, In Bethlehem of Judea, for thus it is written through the prophet,

6 And you Bethlehem, land of Judea, are in no way least among the rulers of Judea, for out of you will come forth One Ruler, who will shepherd My people Israel.

7 Then Herod, privately having called the Magi, inquired from them exactly the time of the star appearing.

8 And having sent them to Bethlehem, he said, Go and search out exactly for the young Child; and when you have found Him, report to me, so that I also may go and worship Him.

9 And having heard the king, they went their way; and behold, the star, which they saw in the east, went before them, until it came and stood over where the young Child was.

10 And having seen the star, they rejoiced with exceedingly great joy.

Comments Matthew 2:10. Nobody else saw the star. Only the Magi saw the star because the Lord opened their eyes and hearts.

11 And having come into the house they saw the young Child with Mary His mother; and having fallen down they worshipped Him; and opening their treasures, they offered to Him gifts, gold, and frankincense, and myrrh.

Comments Matthew 2:11. The Meaning of the Gift of Gold: Many things fire can destroy, but it can't destroy gold. You can melt gold and change its shape, but it is still gold when it hardens back. Fire can't burn it; gold is still gold. The Lord Jesus is purer and more precious than gold.

The Meaning of the Gift Frankincense: Frankincense is an aromatic gum resin that can be obtained from Boswellia trees. Frankincense was part of the sacred anointing oil in Exodus 30:34. It was also used in sacrificial offerings and as a perfume. Frankincense is a natural substance that the Lord created, and it can make something else complete and perfect. The Lord Jesus is the perfect sacrifice.

The Meaning of the Gift Myrrh: Myrrh is an extract from a tree. It was used in the anointing oil described in Exodus 30:23, and it has many other uses throughout the Bible. The Word of the Lord has something in it that people can use in many ways. The Lord Jesus is the anointed Word.

12 And being warned of God in a dream not to return to Herod, they departed into their own country by another route.

13 Now when they were departed, behold, an angel of the Lord appears to Joseph in a dream, saying, Arise, take the young Child and His mother, and flee into Egypt, and remain there until I will tell you; for Herod will seek the young Child to destroy Him.

Comments Matthew 2:13. The general question arising here is why the Lord did not stop Herod. The Lord Jesus had to be completely human and suffer the same way as humans suffer. In this way, people can't say that God doesn't know what human suffering means. The Lord Jesus has come to suffer and go through life as all men do. There was no special treatment for Him as a man.

14 And he arose and took the young Child and His mother by night, and departed into Egypt;

Comments Matthew 2:14. For the love of humans, the Lord Jesus put down His power. As a child, the Lord Jesus learned to control His power when suffering many hardships and hunger in Egypt.

15 and he remained there until the death of Herod; so that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying, Out of Egypt have I called My Son.

16 Then Herod, having seen that he was mocked by the Magi, was exceedingly angry, and having sent forth, and slew all the boys in Bethlehem, and in all its borders, from two years old and under, according to the time which he had exactly learned from the Magi.

17 Then was fulfilled that having been spoken through Jeremiah the prophet, saying,

18 A voice was heard in Ramah, weeping and great mourning, Rachel weeping for her children; and she would not be comforted, because they are not.

19 But when Herod was dead, behold, an angel of the Lord appears in a dream to Joseph in Egypt,

20 saying, Arise and take the young Child and His mother, and go into the land of Israel; for they are dead that sought the life of the young Child.

Comments Matthew 2:20. Joseph was afraid of Herod, and he was afraid to travel back to Israel when the Lord Jesus was still too young. So, the Lord allowed Joseph to stay in Egypt for about three years until the death of Herod.

21 And he arose and took the young Child and His mother and came into the land of Israel.

22 Now when he heard that Archelaus reigns over Judea instead of his father Herod, he was afraid to go there; now being warned of God in a dream, he withdrew into the region of Galilee,

23 and came and dwelt in a city being called Nazareth; so that it should be fulfilled which was spoken through the prophets, that He will be called a Nazarene.

Comments Matthew 2:23. Nazarene here relates to the Lord Jesus, who lived in Nazareth. Verse 23 reveals to us an unwritten prophecy, and it stands to testify on its own for the fulfillment of this prophecy. This prophecy was not preserved for us, but the Lord made it happen and revealed it to us through Matthew.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) Being Christians, we don't have a guarantee that we will be kept out of the hardships of life (like in an eggshell), but wherever we go, the Lord will be with us to help us. He helped Joseph and his family survive in Egypt and safely return to their homeland. 2) We should not doubt the Bible in any way. The Word of God will be fulfilled until the last dot. So, if the prophecy is told to us by Matthew, we must believe that it was spoken by God, even if we don't find a reference in our Old Testament Bible.

Chapter 3

SUMMARY

In this Gospel, the Lord doesn't give any further details about the childhood life of the Lord Jesus after His return to Nazareth. Here in Chapter 3, the Lord Jesus is an adult man, and we are presented with the events that mark the start of His ministry on earth. 1) A human messenger, John the Baptist, introduces the Lord Jesus as the One who has the power to save us from our sins, take us to heaven, and baptize us with the Holy Spirit for the cleansing and purifying of our souls. 2) The Lord Jesus was baptized in the water by John the Baptist; therefore, the baptism of the Lord Jesus in water is an example for all Christians to follow. 3) At the water baptism of the Lord Jesus, the Spirit of God the Father descended from heaven like a dove and alighted on Him, and God the Father confirmed to John, and people, with a voice from heaven, that the Lord Jesus is His beloved Son in whom He delights. 4) Verses 16 and 17 describe a reunion between the Father, the Son Jesus, and the Holy Spirit. These verses are a clear testimony to the Trinity of God.

- 1 Then in those days comes John the Baptist, preaching in the wilderness of Judea,
2 and saying, Repent; for the kingdom of the heavens has come near.

Comments Matthew 3:1-2. John is a messenger of the Lord. John warns people to come to the Lord and repent; come to the Lord Jesus is his message. The Father's love for the world He created is so great that He sent His beloved Son to earth to show us the way. The Lord Jesus opened the gate of the heavens; believe and come to Him.

- 3 For this is the one that was spoken of through Isaiah the prophet, saying, A voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare the way of the Lord, make His paths straight.

Comments Matthew 3:3. John is the messenger of the Lord. He calls people to come to the Lord Jesus.

See Comments Luke 3:4.

- 4 Now John himself had his raiment of camel's hair, and a leather belt about his waist; and his food was locusts and wild honey.

Comments Matthew 3:4. John was part of a group of prophets that kept themselves separated from the world.

5 Then went out to him Jerusalem, and all Judea, and all the region around the Jordan,

6 and were being baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins.

7 Now having seen many of the Pharisees and Sadducees coming to the baptism, he said to them, Offspring of vipers, who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?

8 Bring forth therefore fruit worthy of the repentance.

9 And think not to say within yourselves, We have Abraham as our father. For I say to you, that God is able out of the stones to raise up children to Abraham.

Comments Matthew 3:7-9. Pharisees and Sadducees came to find mistakes and criticize the work of John; they did not come to be baptized. This passage explicitly refers to that time and to those who claim themselves righteous; to those who blame someone else instead of themselves and see themselves as always righteous. The Lord has come, and He gives all a chance to hear the truth and see the light. John asked them to come to the light.

10 Now already the axe is applied to the root of the trees; every tree therefore that does not yield good fruit is cut down, and cast into the fire.

Comments Matthew 3:10. The axe here represents the Word of God.

The root of the trees refers to those people who believe themselves to be righteous and perfect and not in need of a Savior (see [Luke 18:10-14](#)). The Pharisees and the Scribes of that time acted as middlemen between God and the people. This duty ended with the birth of the Lord Jesus. There is no need anymore for these kinds of people to come and tell us what the Lord says. Now, the Lord speaks straight to everybody's heart if they pray and meditate on the Word of God.

In this verse, the fire represents hell.

11 I indeed baptize you in water to repentance, but mightier than I comes after me, He of whom I am not fit to carry the sandals, He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and fire,

Comments Matthew 3:11. The sin cannot be where the Holy Spirit is. When we are baptized in the Holy Spirit, the sin in us will be burned by the holy fire (pure fire) of the Lord, which cleanses our souls.

See comments on the Holy Spirit baptism in [Comments John 1:33](#).

12 whose winnowing shovel is in His hand, and He will thoroughly cleanse His threshing floor; and He will gather His grain into the storehouse, but the chaff He will burn up with unquenchable fire.

Comments Matthew 3:12. The winnowing shovel (or fan) here represents the scale that weighs man's deeds, the good and bad.

His threshing floor, or simply floor, represents the entire world.

Grain (or wheat) represents the saved people.

The storehouse (or barn) here represents the house of the Lord, heaven.

The chaff represents the unsaved people.

Unquenchable fire represents hell.

13 Then comes Jesus from Galilee to the Jordan to John, to be baptized of him.

14 But John was hindering Him, saying, I have need to be baptized of Thee, and do Thou come to me?

Comments Matthew 3:13-14. This passage of Scripture shows that even the sinless Lamb of God needs to be baptized in water. If the sinless Lamb of God asks to be baptized, how then can humans say they have no sin and do not need to be baptized? Here we see the example we need to follow about baptizing in water.

15 However, Jesus answering him said, Permit just now; for thus it is proper to us to fulfill all righteousness. Then he permits Him.

Comments Matthew 3:15. As it is written, "to fulfill all righteousness," the Lord Jesus Himself needed to be baptized in water. He is both God and human, serving as an example for humans to follow. If the sinless One has to be baptized in water, then all the people who want to follow the Lord Jesus must also do so. As is the walk through the gate of death, even so, a person baptizing in the water dies from the old life and becomes a new person in the Lord. The old book of life has been destroyed, and a new book of life starts (see [Matthew 12:30](#) and [Matthew 12:36-37](#)).

When you merge under the water in the name of the Father, the Son, the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit, your soul is touched by the Lord in that water. And when you come out from that water, the Lord becomes the guide of your soul in the unseen world and the master of your life in this world. Water

baptism is important for a new believer, but the person must meditate on the Lord's teaching and seek and ask for the Holy Spirit baptism as well. When you have received the Holy Spirit baptism, the Holy Spirit goes through your soul and guides your soul. All humans need to be born of water and the Holy Spirit in order to enter the kingdom of heaven (see [John 3:5](#)).

Your life living on this earth must follow according to the master of your life. If you do not baptize in the water, your soul will not have a chance to be counted in; after the Lord's crucifixion, all must be baptized in water. For the soul of a human, the baptism in the water is the same way as a butterfly emerging. The soul itself is wrapped with many layers of sins. When you submerge into the baptismal water and when you come out, most of the layers of sins covering your soul are left in that water, and you come out with a purer soul, free; this is the new birth in the spiritual world. However, the Holy Spirit baptism, when it happens, will cleanse the soul thoroughly, making a complete cleansing of your soul.

16 Now, Jesus, having been baptized, ascended immediately from the water; and behold, the heavens were opened to Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending as a dove, alighting upon Him;

Comments Matthew 3:16. The door of heaven was opened to the Lord Jesus for the Lord to see His house: the Father's throne. The Lord Jesus misses His home. The Father misses His Son. This here is a reunion between the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit (the Trinity of God).

17 and behold, a voice from out of the heavens, saying, This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

Comments Matthew 3:17. John saw part of the reunion act between the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit. All the other people present only heard the voice of the Father. See also [Comments Mark 1:9-11](#).

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) The Lord Jesus is identified as the Son of God and the Savior of the world by a man, John the Baptist, by God the Father Himself, and by the Holy Spirit. 2) This chapter testifies to the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son, the Lord Jesus, and God the Holy Spirit), which must be the foundational belief of our faith. 3) Our

lives living on this earth must follow according to the master of your life. Therefore, as Christians, we must follow the Lord Jesus' example, be baptized in water, and seek the baptism of the Holy Spirit.

Chapter 4

SUMMARY

After the Lord Jesus was attested to the people as the Son of God in Chapter 3, Chapter 4 describes how the devil tempted the Lord Jesus. As a man, the Lord Jesus faced three major temptations: 1) the temptation of the flesh, 2) the temptation of pride, and 3) the temptation of an easy life and laziness. Going through these temptations, the Lord Jesus shows us the key to fighting temptations: stand firm on the Word of God. "It is written" is His reply to each temptation. Following the temptations, three more important events are given in this chapter. 1) The Lord Jesus begins His ministry in the territory of Zebulun and Naphtali, fulfilling one of Isaiah's prophecies. Here, it is to be noted that the Lord Jesus begins His ministry alone by preaching, "Repent for the kingdom of heaven is at hand." 2) The Lord Jesus calls His first disciples. Note that His first disciple to call was Simon Peter. 3) The Lord Jesus continues His ministry throughout Galilee and performs miraculous healings, and great multitudes start to follow Him.

1 At that time Jesus was led up by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted by the devil.

Comments Matthew 4:1. The Lord Jesus was one hundred percent human. Temptation comes to everyone. The Lord Jesus was led by the Spirit to be tempted as every human would be, so He is an example for us of how to overcome temptations.

For the temptation of the Lord Jesus, see also [Comments Luke 4:1-13](#).

2 And when He had fasted forty days and forty nights, afterward He hungered.

Comments Matthew 4:2. "... afterward He hungered." This fast was a food fast; nothing that had any taste was taken, only water.

3 And the tempter having come said to Him, If Thou are the Son of God, command that these stones become bread.

Comments Matthew 4:3. This temptation is the temptation of "the satisfaction of the flesh," a big temptation for all humans. When they are hungry, humans can do anything to satisfy their hunger.

4 But answering, He said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every spoken-word coming out of the mouth of God.

Comments Matthew 4:4. The Lord Jesus tells us that food for the soul is more important than food for the stomach.

5 Then the devil takes Him to the holy city; and sets Him on the pinnacle of the temple,

6 and says to Him, If Thou are the Son of God, cast Thyself down; for it is written that, He will command His angels concerning Thee, and, On their hands they will bear Thee up, lest haply Thou dash Thy foot against a stone.

Comments Matthew 4:6. This temptation is the temptation of "proving that you are somebody important," which is a hard temptation for humans.

7 Jesus said to him, Again it is written, You shall not tempt the Lord your God.

Comments Matthew 4:7. On earth, the Lord Jesus came to obey His Father and do the Father's will. By not challenging the Lord, you admit that you are the Lord's servant, and you keep your pride under control.

8 Again, the devil takes Him to a very high mountain, and shows Him all the kingdoms of the world, and the glory of them;

9 and he said to Him, All these things will I give Thee, if Thou will worship me falling down.

Comments Matthew 4:9. This temptation is the temptation of "an easy life and laziness," a hard temptation for all humans.

10 Then Jesus says to him, Depart Satan; for it is written, You must worship the Lord your God, and Him alone you must serve.

Comments Matthew 4:10. "For it is written." The Father's word has power. The Lord Jesus abides by the Father's word only. The Lord Jesus listened and obeyed the Father in everything to the point of death.

"You must worship the Lord your God ..." Only through the Lord Jesus can you fight evil. You need to make a commitment to serve the Lord Jesus all of your life.

11 Then the devil leaves Him; and behold, angels came and ministered to Him.

12 Now when He heard that John was delivered up, He withdrew to Galilee;

Comments Matthew 4:12. John's duty was to prepare the way for the Lord. John's arrest marked the beginning of the Lord's ministry.

13 and leaving Nazareth, He came and dwelt at Capernaum, by the sea, in the region of Zebulun and Naphtali,

14 that it might be fulfilled which was spoken through Isaiah the prophet, saying:

Comments Matthew 4:13-14. The Lord Jesus Himself, while on earth, always one thing He will do: He will fulfill whatever the Father has given to the prophets. The obedience to the Father is the key for the Lord Jesus to come on earth. All the prophecies of the Father will be done in all things. If you follow the Lord Jesus, the main thing is to listen and obey.

15 The land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, Way of the sea, beyond the Jordan, Galilee of the Gentiles,

16 The people who were sitting in darkness Have seen a great light, And to those sitting in the land and shadow of death, To them, a light has sprung up.

Comments Matthew 4:15-16. These are people who did not hear about the Lord. The Lord Jesus always performed miracles to guide them to the light of life. The Lord Jesus is the light for them.

17 From that time Jesus began to proclaim, and to say, Repent; for the kingdom of heavens has drawn near.

18 Now walking beside the Sea of Galilee, He saw two brothers, Simon called Peter, and Andrew his brother, casting a net into the sea; for they were fishermen.

19 And He says to them, Come follow after Me, and I will make you fishers of men.

20 And immediately having left the nets, they followed Him.

21 And going on from there, He saw two other brothers, James the son of Zebedee, and John his brother, in the boat with Zebedee their father, preparing their nets; and He called them.

22 And immediately having left the boat and their father, they followed Him.

Comments Matthew 4:20-22. The Lord Jesus calls Peter, Andrew, James, and John, and they respond immediately. Their action shows simple faith, just a simple call, and they follow the Lord Jesus immediately.

23 And He was going throughout all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and proclaiming the gospel of the kingdom, and healing every disease and every sickness among the people.

Comments Matthew 4:23. "Proclaiming the gospel of the kingdom ..." The whole Bible is His word. The Lord Jesus did not have much time on earth; therefore, He summarized to the people what the Bible teaches.

24 And the news of Him went out into all Syria; and they brought to Him all that were sick, having various diseases and torments, possessed by demons, and epileptics, and paralytics; and He healed them.

Comments Matthew 4:24. The news about the Lord Jesus has spread by word of mouth.

25 And followed Him great multitudes from Galilee, and Decapolis, and Jerusalem, and Judea, and beyond the Jordan.

Comments Matthew 4:25. People in those days had a simple faith. They left everything behind and followed the Lord Jesus.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) The Lord Jesus is our example of how to fight temptations; to fight temptations, we must rely on the Bible and stand firm on what the Bible teaches. 2) It is essential to understand that the Lord Jesus is the only way to heaven, and He holds the selection scale for who goes to heaven and who goes to hell.

Chapter 5

SUMMARY

In Chapter 4, we saw how large crowds followed the Lord Jesus after He taught in the synagogues and healed all kinds of diseases and sicknesses. Here in Chapter 5, the Lord Jesus sees the multitudes of people and goes up a mountain to teach them. He taught all those whose hearts were open to listen to Him. His sermon on the mountain covers four major topics. 1) Blessings of the kingdom of heaven and the rewards that follow in heaven. 2) Christians are the spiritual light of the world and are responsible for witnessing the Lord Jesus in this world. 3) The Lord Jesus came to fulfill the Law and the Prophets. 4) How to behave, as Christians should, emphasizing the following personal relationships: anger, lust, divorce, oaths, retaliation, and love for our enemies.

1 Then seeing the multitudes, He ascended on the mountain; and when He had sat down, His disciples draw near to Him,

2 and opening His mouth, He was teaching them, saying,

Comments Matthew 5:2. The Lord Jesus spoke softly, and the air carried His voice miraculously further and further, so everybody in the crowds could hear His voice at the same time while He was speaking.

3 Blessed are the poor in the spirit, for theirs is the kingdom of the heavens.

Comments Matthew 5:3. "Poor in the spirit" refers to a humble soul seeking the Lord. The humble soul is the one who is hungry for the Lord; it seeks first to please the Lord, not themselves; it lives just for the Lord.

4 Blessed are those who mourn, for they will be comforted.

Comments Matthew 5:4. "Those who mourn" are the ones who grieve for those who do not seek the Lord. They mourn for the lost, for those who do not have a portion in the Lord's kingdom.

5 Blessed are the meek, for they will inherit the earth.

Comments Matthew 5:5. "The meek" (quiet, gentle, obedient) are the ones who keep the Word of God in them at all times.

"... inherit the earth." Here, the earth refers to the new earth (not the earth we are on now) that has been prepared for the elect. Only the chosen ones will be there, and they shall reap their reward on the new earth.

6 Blessed are those who hunger and thirst for righteousness, for they will be filled.

Comments Matthew 5:6. This righteousness is the righteousness of following the Bible's teaching, which means to follow the Word, obey the Word, and do what the Word is telling you. The Lord Jesus is our example of righteous living. He does not live by His own will but by the will of the Father. We can only be righteous in the Lord Jesus.

"Filled" (satisfied) is not about the body but about the soul. The soul is satisfied and full of joy when it feels near the Father. This filling can happen only when we come to the Father through the Lord Jesus. There is no other way to come close to the Father, only through the Lord Jesus.

7 Blessed are the merciful, for they will receive mercy.

Comments Matthew 5:7. "The merciful" are those who have mercy on lost souls and pray to the Father to have mercy on them and take them in. Be merciful to the ones you dislike the most and pray for them.

8 Blessed are the pure in heart, for they will see God.

Comments Matthew 5:8. "Blessed are the pure in heart." "The pure in heart" are the ones who harbor no negative or bad thoughts towards believers and non-believers alike. If you see someone doing something wrong, pray for that person, and do not judge them. Always think well about others and have mercy on them, the Lord died for them too.

"For they will see God." This seeing refers only to the believers who seek the Lord. If your heart is pure, you will see the light of the Lord on another believer who is pure in heart. How do you see God on this earth? You don't see God Himself, but you can see His love in the ones who love the Lord. The light in this place is not the light you use for seeing things but the light of a clean heart. By conversing with a person, we can tell the difference in the light; their mouth will speak words that will never be against the Bible.

9 Blessed are the peacemakers, for they will be called sons of God.

Comments Matthew 5:9. "Blessed are the peacemakers." "The peacemakers" are the ones who try to make peace between humans and God. Our first

peacemaker is the Lord Jesus. No other peacemaker can be like Him. The Father's anger subsides with the Lord Jesus' tears when He cries for humans.

"For they will be called sons of God." When you accept the Lord Jesus, invite Him into your heart, and He will dwell in your heart, and at the same time, you dwell in Him, and you become a child of God.

10 Blessed are those who have been persecuted on account of righteousness, for theirs is the kingdom of the heavens.

Comments Matthew 5:10. "Blessed ... on account of righteousness." These are the ones who, when they see someone else being treated unfairly, for the name of the Lord, will join in for the cause; not for building their name up, but for serving the Lord.

"For theirs is the kingdom of the heavens." Then the Lord will use you and let the name of the Lord be your reward. Your name will be written in the Book of Life, and you will be part of the new earth that is coming.

11 Blessed are you when they shall insult and persecute you, and shall say all kinds of bad against you speaking falsely, on account of Me.

12 Rejoice and exult for your great reward in the heavens, for so they persecuted the prophets before you.

Comments Matthew 5:12. "... great reward in the heavens." Serving closer to the Lord in some manner is a part of the reward.

13 You are the salt of the earth; however, if the salt becomes tainted, in what will it be salted? For it has no power any longer, except to be cast out and trampled upon by people.

Comments Matthew 5:13. "You are the salt of the earth" refers to the ones who call themselves Christians.

"If the salt becomes tainted." When believers behave worse than non-believers, they lose their Christian testimony and make the Lord's death and suffering lose their meaning.

"In what will it be salted?" The testimony lost its own meaning. Therefore, how can you make people understand the way of the Lord when your behavior is not worthy?

"For ... trampled upon by people." Your testimony has no value; you make the Lord's crucifixion become nothing for people.

14 You are the light of the world. A city set on a hilltop cannot be hidden.

Comments Matthew 5:14. "You are the light of the world." The ones who are true Christians are those who truly believe in their hearts in the Lord Jesus. The true Christians are the salt and the light of the world.

"A city set on a hilltop cannot be hidden." The city here represents the church. The church must be widely known as a church and be open to all people.

15 Neither do they light a lamp, and put it under the bushel, but upon the lampstand; and it gives light to all that are in the house.

Comments Matthew 5:15. Pray without shame. Be proud to pray and be proud to show others that you are a child of God.

16 Thus let your light shine before people; so that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father who is in the heavens.

Comments Matthew 5:16. Show people you are a Christian. Give the Lord glory in your conversations. Tell people to bring their problems to the Lord.

17 Do not consider that I came to abolish the Law or the Prophets; I did not come to abolish, but to complete.

Comments Matthew 5:17. The Lord Jesus says He completed the Law, in the sense that He is the end of the Law. Now, we only need to obey His Law.

18 For truly I say to you, Until heaven and earth pass away, one iota or one dot will not pass away from the Law, until all things be accomplished.

19 If therefore, whoever may break one of the least of these commandments, and may teach others so, will be called least in the kingdom of the heavens; but whoever may keep and teach them, will be called great in the kingdom of the heavens.

Comments Matthew 5:19. "... least in the kingdom of the heavens." Those who interpret the Law and try to interpret it to fit their own convenience are wrong.

20 For I say to you, that unless your righteousness shall exceed above that of the scribes and Pharisees, you will never enter into the kingdom of the heavens.

Comments Matthew 5:20. "... unless your righteousness shall exceed ..." Our righteousness is in Christ; without faith in Christ, we can never enter the kingdom of the heavens.

21 You have heard that it was said to the ancients, You shall not kill; and whoever shall kill will be liable to the judgment.

22 However, I say to you, that everyone being angry with his brother will be liable to the judgment; and whoever will say to his brother, Raca, will be liable to the council; and whoever will say, Fool, will be liable to the hell of fire.

Comments Matthew 5:22. "... everyone being angry with his brother will be liable to the judgment." The brother here refers to those who have accepted the Lord Jesus as their Savior. When brothers are angry with each other, the anger of the Father comes upon them. The Father expects us to forgive and love each other (see Matthew 6:14).

"... Raca, will be liable to the council." "Raca" means doing bad things to your brother; it is more than just wishing bad. Here, it includes thinking and saying; when you say it, you have hurt the person.

23 If therefore you are offering your gift at the altar, and there remember that your brother has something against you,

24 leave there your gift before the altar and go your way; first be reconciled to your brother, and then come and offer your gift.

Comments Matthew 5:24. "First be reconciled to your brother ..." Humble yourself and say sorry; no need to fight between brothers. Seek first the peace. Don't try to look for who is right and who is wrong.

25 Agree with your accuser quickly while you are with him on the way; lest ever the accuser delivers you to the judge, and the judge to the servant, and you will be cast into prison.

Comments Matthew 5:25. "Lest ever the accuser delivers you to the judge ..." Between the believers, the fight should be judged by the believers. Do not take your brother to the outside courts. (See also 1 Corinthians 6:1-8).

26 Truly I say to you, you shall by no means come out, until you have paid the last quadrans (the smallest Roman copper coin).

27 You have heard that it was said, You shall not commit adultery;

28 however, I say to you, that everyone looking at a woman to desire her has committed adultery with her already in his heart.

Comments Matthew 5:28. "... that everyone looking at a woman to desire her ..." Do not look at their body, look into their eyes. The eye is the window of their soul. Looking at the body creates lust; just look into their eyes.

29 And if your right eye causes you to sin, pluck it out, and throw it from you; for it is profitable for you that one of your members should perish, and not your whole body be cast into hell.

Comments Matthew 5:29. See [Comments Matthew 18:9](#).

30 And if your right hand causes you to sin, cut it off, and throw it from you; for it is profitable for you that one of your members should perish, and not your whole body go into hell.

Comments Matthew 5:30. See [Comments Matthew 18:8](#).

31 It was said also, Whoever shall divorce his wife, let him give her a certificate of divorce;

Comments Matthew 5:31. See [Comments Matthew 19:7-10](#).

32 however, I say to you, that everyone divorcing his wife, except on account of sexual immorality, makes her an adulteress; also, if whoever shall marry a divorced one commits adultery.

Comments Matthew 5:32. A true Christian man is free to divorce a wife and remarry if his wife has committed adultery. A true Christian man cannot marry a divorced woman in any scenario, but he can marry a widow. The Lord created the man and the woman, but the woman committed the first sin. A true Christian woman cannot remarry as long as her husband is alive. The only way for a true Christian woman is to reconcile with her husband.

33 Again, you have heard that it was said to the ancients, You shall not swear falsely, but you shall keep to the Lord your oaths;

34 however, I say to you, do not swear at all; neither by the heaven, because it is the throne of God;

35 nor by the earth, because it is the footstool of His feet; nor by Jerusalem, because it is the city of the great King.

Comments Matthew 5:34-35. "However, I say to you, do not swear at all." If you do not want to do something, do not make any promise. As the Bible says, let your yes be yes and your no be no (see [Matthew 5:37](#)); more than this is sin. The Lord Jesus loves Jerusalem.

36 Neither shall you swear by your head, because you cannot make one hair white or black.

37 However, let your word be, Yes, yes; No, no; and anything more than these is out of the evil.

Comments Matthew 5:37. "However, let your word be, Yes, yes; No, no." If you make a promise, you must keep it. If you promise to serve the Lord, you must keep it.

"Anything more than these is out of the evil." When you try to give a reason not to do what you promise, that comes from the evil one.

38 You have heard that it was said, Eye for eye, and tooth for tooth;

39 however, I say to you, do not resist the evil; instead, whoever strikes you on your right cheek, turn to him the other also.

Comments Matthew 5:39. "However, I say to you, do not resist the evil." You cannot fight evil by yourself. Follow the Lord Jesus' example. The Lord Jesus prayed to the Father; He did not fight the evil one (see [Matthew 4:1-11](#), [Mark 1:12-13](#), and [Luke 4:1-13](#)). Rely on the Lord Jesus and pray. Bring your troubles to the Lord Jesus and let the Lord Jesus fight for you.

See also [Comments Luke 6:29](#).

40 And to the one willing to sue you, and take your tunic, yield to him the cloak also.

41 And whoever shall compel you to go one mile, go with him two.

42 Give to the one asking of you, and from the one that would borrow from you, turn not away.

Comments Matthew 5:42. See [Comments Luke 6:30](#).

43 You have heard that it was said, You shall love your neighbor, and shall hate your enemy;

44 however, I say to you, Love your enemies, and pray for those that persecute you;

Comments Matthew 5:44. See [Comments Luke 6:27-28](#).

45 so that you may be sons of your Father in the heavens; for He makes His sunlight to rise on the evil and the good and sends rain on the righteous and the unrighteous.

Comments Matthew 5:45. See [Comments Luke 6:31-36](#).

46 For if you love those that love you, what reward do you have? Do not also the tax collectors do the same?

47 And if you greet your brothers only, what do you do more abundantly? Do not also the Gentiles do the same?

48 You therefore be perfect, as your heavenly Father is perfect.

Comments Matthew 5:48. "You therefore be perfect ..." The perfect love is to love your enemy. Love your enemy as the Father loved the enemies of His Son, even those who crucified the Lord Jesus. He didn't strike them dead when they were born, even though He knew what they would be doing to His Son. He let them live and enjoy His creation.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) There are many kinds of blessings and rewards waiting for us in the heavens. 2) The Lord Jesus came to fulfill the Law and the Prophets. 3) As children of God, we are the light of the world, and we are expected to maintain high moral standards.

Chapter 6

SUMMARY

In Chapter 5, the Lord teaches about personal relationships. In this chapter, the Lord teaches us about our relationship with the Father and Heaven. 1) Practice our righteousness towards God, not towards people. a) Give to the poor for the sake of being seen by God, not by people. b) Pray to the Father to be seen by Him, not by people, and glorify the Father who is the Most Holy. c) Fast to be seen by the Father, not by people. d) Do work to lay up treasures in heaven, not on earth. 2) Love and serve God, not riches. 3) Do not be anxious for tomorrow; seek the kingdom of heaven first, and God will meet all our daily needs.

1 Beware now that you do not do your righteousness before the people, to be seen by them; if now otherwise, you have no reward with your Father in the heavens.

2 Whenever, therefore, you give alms, do not sound a trumpet before you, even as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets so that they may have glory from people. Truly I say to you, They have their reward.

3 But when you give alms, do not let your left hand know what your right hand does,

4 so that your alms may be in the secret; and your Father who sees in the secret will reward you.

Comments Matthew 6:3-4. The purpose of doing something is to please the Lord, not to please somebody else, not even to please yourself.

5 And when you pray, you shall not be like the hypocrites, because they love to pray standing in the synagogues, and in the corners of the streets, so that they may be seen by people. Truly I say to you, They have their reward.

Comments Matthew 6:5. When you pray, think of the purpose of the words you say. Check your heart before you pray in public. Are you bringing the need before the Lord to ask for help or to show off what you are doing? Are you saying one thing but your heart thinks something else? Are you praying for the Lord to know or for the people to know?

6 But you, when you pray, enter into your room, and having shut your door, pray to your Father who is in secret, and your Father who sees in secret will reward you.

Comments Matthew 6:6. "But you, when you pray, enter into your room ..." Go to your room when you pray, asking for your own personal wants, not for helping. Make a difference between your wants and your needs when you pray. The needs bring them into public (church) for prayer, but personal wants should be between you and the Lord. However, for someone else's wants or needs, bring them into the public (church) to pray so that everybody can participate in the prayer. In this way, you can avoid boasting about yourself. Because when praying and asking for one another between brothers, the Lord grants mercy. When the Lord grants mercy, the person can feel boastful, but when someone else prays as well, the boasting will subside (will be controlled).

7 And praying do not use vain repetitions, like the Gentiles, for they think that they will be heard in their many words.

8 Therefore, do not be like them, for your God the Father knows of what things you have need, before you ask Him.

Comments Matthew 6:7-8. There are two kinds of needs. The first need is the need to fulfill what we do not have: these are our true needs. The second need is the need to show off what we already have, but we want more: these are our wants. The true needs we can bring to the public prayer. The wants should be just between us and the Lord; they should be in secret, and we should not tell them in the open. Instead, we should just bring praises and thanks to the Lord for what we already have. Truly, this verse tells us to be content and be assured that the Lord knows what we need before we even ask, and He will provide all our needs as He sees fit.

9 Thus then you pray: Our Father in the heavens, Hallowed be Thy name.

Comments Matthew 6:9. Our prayer must start in this way. God the Father is the most important, the most Holy. Three in One, but God the Father is the most Holy One. The Three, God the Father, God the Son (the Lord Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit cannot be separated, but God the Father comes first.

10 Thy kingdom come; Thy will be done, as in heaven, also upon earth.

Comments Matthew 6:10. "Thy kingdom come ..." Asks for the second coming of the Lord Jesus when He comes and rules on earth during the Millennial Kingdom. This second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth really is the time when the Father's will is done on earth as it is in heaven.

11 Give us today our daily bread.

12 And forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors.

13 And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from the evil.

Comments Matthew 6:13. "For Thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, forever and ever. Amen."

Some manuscripts omit this part of the verse, but it should be considered as part of the original Gospel.

14 For if you forgive people their trespasses, your Heavenly Father will also forgive you.

15 However, if you do not forgive people their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

Comments Matthew 6:15. The principle here is that if you give ten coins, you will receive ten coins.

16 Moreover, whenever you fast, be not gloomy like the hypocrites; for they disfigure their appearances so that they might appear fasting to people. Truly I say to you, They have their reward.

Comments Matthew 6:16. The fast is a secret between you and the Lord. Do not trumpet out when you fast. Keep it secret between you and the Lord. The Lord sees in secret.

17 However, when you fast, anoint your head, and wash your face;

18 so that you might not appear to people fasting, but to your Father who is in secret; and your Father, who sees in secret, will restore you.

19 Do not lay up for yourselves treasures on the earth, where moth and rust destroy, and where thieves break in and steal;

Comments Matthew 6:19. The treasures on earth are everything that you think is yours. They all are not real; they are yours for a moment, and then they are gone.

20 however, lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust destroy, and where thieves do not break in nor steal;

Comments Matthew 6:20. Treasures in heaven are when you are praising and glorifying the Lord. Every word you use to glorify the Lord is your treasure in

heaven. Build them up more and more. The Lord is your safe keeper. Every word the Lord hears, and keeps it for you.

21 for where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

Comments Matthew 6:21. Whatever you think about, your heart is there. If you think about the Lord, your heart will be there to glorify the Lord by heart, not by mouth.

22 The lamp of the body is the eye; if therefore your eye may be clean, your whole body will be full of light.

Comments Matthew 6:22. This verse does not talk about the physical eye but about the spiritual eye of your body. The spiritual eye gets light from prayer. If you do not stay in prayer, your spiritual eye goes into darkness.

23 However, if your eye may be bad, your whole body will be full of darkness. If therefore, the light that is in you may be darkness, how great that darkness!

Comments Matthew 6:23. If your spiritual eye gets darkened, your spirit is lost.

24 No one is able to serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other; or he will be devoted to one and despise the other. You are not able to serve God and riches.

Comments Matthew 6:24. Riches (mammon or money) in this verse represent all the wealth you have.

25 On account of this, I say to you, do not be anxious about your life, what you may eat, or what you may drink; nor for your body, what you may put on. Is not the life more than the food, and the body than garments?

26 Look at the birds of the heaven, that they do not sow, nor do they reap, nor gather into barns; and your Heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not of much more value than they?

27 Now which of you by being anxious can add one cubit to his age?

28 And why are you anxious concerning garments? Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow; they do not toil, nor do they spin;

29 however, I say to you, that not even Solomon in all his glory was adorned like one of these.

30 However, if God thus clothes the grass of the field, which today exists, and tomorrow is thrown into a furnace, will He not much more you, O you of little faith?

31 Therefore do not be anxious, saying, What may we eat or what may we drink or what may we put on?

32 For after all these things the Gentiles seek; for your Heavenly Father knows that you have need of them all.

33 However, seek first the kingdom and its righteousness, and all these things will be added to you.

34 Therefore, do not be anxious about tomorrow, for tomorrow will be anxious about itself. Sufficient to the day is the trouble of it.

Comments Matthew 6:25-34. In this passage, the Lord wants us to be concerned about working and living, but not to be overly worried about these. If you do your daily work at hand, the Lord will provide the food, the clothes, and all other needs. Do not be anxious to look at what someone else has and try to have the same. Be happy for what you have and give glory to the Lord for all things.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) When we pray, we always need to glorify our Father in heaven and pray in the name of our Lord Jesus. 2) When we pray in public, we should check inside our hearts and make a difference between our wants and needs. We must pray with sincerity of heart for the Father to know, not for the sake of people to know. 3) We serve a jealous God and cannot serve God and wealth simultaneously. We must keep our hearts with the Lord Jesus and show Him all our love.

Chapter 7

SUMMARY

In Chapters 5 and 6, the Lord teaches the crowds about personal relationships, our relationship with the Father, and heaven. In Chapter 7, the Lord continues to teach the people the same themes, and the people become astonished at His teachings. The Lord Jesus' teachings prove that He is not only "God the Man" but also "God the Teacher of men" since He teaches with authority. In this chapter, the Lord Jesus teaches some important rules about the kingdom of heaven. 1) Do not judge. Use the Bible as the scale between right and wrong. 2) Ask for faith, seek the truth, and knock on the door of understanding, and our faith will continue to grow. 3) The Lord Jesus is the narrow gate to heaven; enter by it. 4) Recognize false prophets by their fruits and know that not everyone who says to the Lord Jesus, "Lord, Lord," will enter the kingdom of heaven. We must believe in the Lord Jesus and follow His teachings to enter the kingdom of heaven; this is the Father's will for us. 5) The rock of our faith must be the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus.

1 Judge not, that you be not judged.

Comments Matthew 7:1. You can judge neither faith nor behavior; there is nothing to judge. The Lord doesn't want us to be the accusers. You cannot make your own way straight, so how can you judge someone else? You can only judge if it goes against the Word of God. The Bible is the scale between right and wrong.

2 For with what judgment you judge, you will be judged; and with what measure you measure, it will be measured to you.

3 And why do you look at the speck in your brother's eye, but do not notice the beam in your eye?

4 Or how will you say to your brother, Permit me cast out the speck from your eye; and behold, the beam is in your eye?

5 You hypocrite, cast out first the beam from your eye, and then you will see clearly to cast out the speck from your brother's eye.

6 Do not give that which is holy to the dogs, nor throw your pearls before the pigs, lest they will trample them with their feet, and having turned rend you.

Comments Matthew 7:6. "That which is holy" here refers to the understanding of the Bible. Do not try to explain it to dogs. You will recognize them by their fruits.

"Dogs" here refer to those who say they are believers, but in reality, they are not.

"Pearls" here refer to the understanding of the Word of God. When you see people start arguing and not believing, stop.

"Pigs or swine" here refer to the ones that never think about God, such as atheists who do not believe that God created everything they see.

7 Ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you;

Comments Matthew 7:7. "Ask, and it will be given to you." Ask for faith and understanding.

"Seek, and you will find." You seek for the truth, and the truth will set you free.

"Knock, and it will be ..." When you kneel down before the Lord and pray, the door of understanding will open, and you will understand more about the Lord.

8 for everyone who asks receives; and the one who seeks finds; and to the one who knocks it will be opened.

Comments Matthew 7:8. Practice these three things (ask, seek, and knock) and your faith will continue strongly.

9 Or which one of you, who, if his son will ask for bread, will give him a stone?

10 Or also if he will ask for a fish, will give him a snake?

11 If you then, being evil, know to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in the heavens give good things to those asking Him!

12 All things therefore, whatever you wish that people should do to you, even so do you also to them; for this is the law and the prophets.

13 Enter through the narrow gate, for wide is the gate, and broad is the way leading to destruction, and many are those entering through it.

14 For narrow is the gate, and straitened the way, leading to life, and few are those finding it.

Comments Matthew 7:14. "For narrow is the gate ..." Humans are selfish and believe in themselves. It is hard for them to accept that man can be God. They cannot accept the fact that God walked on earth as a man. The dark mind covers the eyes of the man. The way is narrow and there is only one gate to heaven, through the Lord Jesus. There is no other way to heaven, just believe in the Lord Jesus. How many humans are willing to give their lives for another human?

"Few are those finding it." People try to find reasons to fight against the virgin birth of the Lord Jesus. They limit God's power to make a human baby without the action in a human way. A few have clear minds and can accept that God has the power to do unbelievable things. Those will find the way in.

15 Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly are ravenous wolves.

Comments Matthew 7:15. It is hard to recognize a false prophet because they cover themselves with sheep's skin. You can recognize them by their stand on the following three points: 1) The Lord Jesus' birth must be by the Holy Spirit through the Virgin Mary; 2) The Lord Jesus' death must be death on the cross for atonement for our sins; 3) The Lord Jesus' resurrection must be a bodily resurrection.

16 From their fruits you will recognize them. Do they gather grapes from thorns, or figs from thistles?

17 Even so every good tree makes good fruit; but the bad tree makes evil fruits.

Comments Matthew 7:17. Here in this verse, "tree" refers to humans, "good fruits" refers to faith in the Lord Jesus, and "evil fruits" refers to the unfaithfulness of those who turn away after receiving the Lord Jesus as their Savior.

18 A good tree cannot make evil fruits, nor can a bad tree make good fruits.

19 Every tree that does not make good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire.

20 Therefore by their fruits you will recognize them.

21 Not everyone saying to Me, Lord, Lord, will enter into the kingdom of the heavens, but the one doing the will of My Father in the heavens.

Comments Matthew 7:21. "Not everyone saying to Me, Lord, Lord ..." Those who have faith by mouth, they call "Lord, Lord" by mouth but not by heart.

"But the one doing the will ..." The Lord Jesus Himself always does the will of the Father. Likewise, we need to believe in the Lord Jesus and be obedient to the teachings that the Lord Jesus gives us, and this is the will of the Father for us.

22 Many will say to Me in that day, Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy in Your name, and in Your name cast out demons, and in Your name do many miracles?

Comments Matthew 7:22. "That day" refers to the Judgment Day for all.

23 And at that time, I will declare to them, I never knew you; depart you from Me, those working lawlessness.

Comments Matthew 7:23. "I never knew you; depart you from Me ..." Some call themselves pastors and teachers, but they do not believe. By the words they used to teach, they will be judged.

24 Everyone therefore, whoever hears these words of Mine, and does them, will be likened to a wise man, who built his house upon the rock;

Comments Matthew 7:24. "House" refers to faith. Build your faith and keep your faith strong by reading, meditating, and practicing the Word of God. A house without the Bible cannot be a house.

"Rock" refers to the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus. He rose up in the body, not in the spirit. It is a material body that is risen (the same flesh that was crucified has risen from the dead).

25 and the rain came down, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; but it did not fall, for it had been founded upon the rock.

Comments Matthew 7:25. "And the rain ..." "Rain" and "winds" refer to general earthly troubles. "Floods" refers to attacks that are directed at one's faith.

"But it did not fall, ..." The best weapon to fight against all troubles is the Bible. The Word of God must grow roots in our hearts.

26 And everyone hearing these words of Mine, and does them not, will be likened to a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand;

Comments Matthew 7:26. "Foolish man" refers to non-Christians, the ones who know about the Lord Jesus but do not believe.

"Sand" in this verse refers to false doctrines; false doctrines are produced by those who use their own understanding to teach others in the wrong way.

27 and the rain came down, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and struck against that house; and it fell, and great was the fall of it.

28 And it came to pass, when Jesus had finished these words, the multitudes were astonished at His teaching;

29 for He was teaching them as having authority, and not as their scribes.

Comments Matthew 7:29. The Lord Jesus is not just "God to be a Man" but "God to be a Teacher of men." The Lord Jesus teaches the things that He hears from the Father. It is the Father's will for Him to teach. He came down to do the Father's will on earth.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) The Lord Jesus is "God our Teacher," and He is the narrow gate to heaven. 2) The rock of our faith must be the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus. 3) Practice the three prayer principles: ask, seek, and knock, and your faith will continue to grow.

Chapter 8

SUMMARY

In Chapter 7, we see that the Lord Jesus teaches with authority. Here, in Chapter 8, we see that the Lord Jesus has authority and power over all sickness, spirits, the Word, and the winds and the sea. 1) The Lord Jesus is the hope for all the hopeless people: rich and poor, men and women, young and old. He heals a leper, a slave, Peter's mother-in-law, people oppressed by demons, and all who were sick and came to Him for mercy. All these healings are performed to show that the Lord Jesus took our illnesses with His Word and bore our diseases by the nail wounds on the cross. 2) The Lord Jesus answers a scribe and a disciple about what it means to follow Him. Both have different concerns that relate to their personal interests. The scribe is looking for material gain and power, while the disciple is looking for a secure future when following the Lord Jesus and is not concerned with money. 3) The Father creates a situation on the sea for the disciples in order to guide their hearts and show who the Lord Jesus is. They need this experience to build up their faith for facing future life trials and troubles.

1 Now when He had come down from the mountain, great multitudes followed Him.

Comments Matthew 8:1. "Now when He ... mountain." This event took place after teaching crowds of people on the mountain (see Matthew 5, 6, and 7).

2 And behold, a leper having come, worshipped Him saying, Lord, if Thou wilt, Thou can make me clean.

Comments Matthew 8:2. The Lord chose this leper first to comfort him, because his heart was searching for the Lord. He was a poor man with a body dirty with leprosy, but with a humble and clean heart.

3 And having stretched out the hand, He touched him, saying, I will; be you made clean! And straightaway his leprosy was cleansed.

4 And Jesus says to him, See, you tell no people; but go, show yourself to the priest, and offer the gift that Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

Comments Matthew 8:3-4. "See, you tell no people ..." This healing was public, so it is obvious that here the Lord told the leper something personal

when He healed him, and this command refers to this fact. He was not supposed to tell anyone about what the Lord told him privately.

5 Now, He having entered into Capernaum, a centurion came to Him, begging Him,

6 and saying, Lord, my slave is lying in the house sick of the palsy, grievously tormented.

Comments Matthew 8:5-6. If you have faith, you can ask the Lord for someone under your authority to receive mercy. The centurion asked mercy for his own servant, who belonged to him.

7 And He says to him, I will come and heal him.

8 However answering, the centurion said, Lord, I am not worthy that Thou should come under my roof; but only say the word, and my slave will be healed.

Comments Matthew 8:8. The centurion shows himself humble and having simple and honest faith. Do not think that you deserve anything; just come with simple faith. You enter the throne of the Father when you come with a humble heart.

9 For I also am a man under authority, having under myself soldiers, I appoint; and I say to this, Go, and he goes; and to another, Come, and he comes; and to my servant, Do this, and he does it.

10 And having heard, Jesus marveled, and said to those following, Truly I say to you, Not even in Israel I have found so great faith.

Comments Matthew 8:10. Come to the Lord with simple faith, asking for mercy not demanding mercy. The Father has mercy on humans, and He sent the Lord Jesus not because the humans were demanding Him, but because the Father has love and mercy. The Lord Jesus' obedience to the Father is greater than His own suffering to lower Himself to become a human. That is why the Father loves the Lord Jesus and does accordingly with the Lord Jesus' will. When the Lord Jesus asks in someone's name, the Father does it.

11 And I say to you, that many will come from the east and the west, and will recline with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, in the kingdom of the heavens;

12 but the sons of the kingdom will be cast out into the outer darkness; there will be the weeping and the gnashing of the teeth.

13 And Jesus said to the centurion, Go your way; as you have believed, let it be done to you. And the servant was healed in that hour.

14 And when Jesus has come to Peter's house, He saw his mother-in-law lying sick of a fever.

15 And He touched her hand, and the fever left her; and she arose, and ministered to them.

Comments Matthew 8:15. For Peter's mother-in-law's case, the Lord had compassion on Peter because Peter would not be at home to care for her. The mother-in-law was the one who was taking care of the house. The Lord Jesus healed her, and she rose and began to serve them.

16 And when evening came, they brought to Him many being possessed with demons, and He cast out the spirits by a word, and healed all those being sick,

17 so that it might be fulfilled that having been spoken through Isaiah the prophet, saying: Himself He took our weaknesses, and bore our sicknesses.

Comments Matthew 8:17. The Lord Jesus took our illnesses with His word, and He carried them at the cross on the wounds of the nails. He carried all the sins of the world, past, present, and future in those nails' piercings. That is why the Father loves His Son and does all things accordingly to His wishes. The pain of the Lord Jesus won the love of the Father. Watching His Son have that pain because of the love for humans, when His Son asks forgiveness for someone, the Father gives it, because the Lord Jesus already received the punishment for that person. The Father watching that moment when it happened with His Son made the Father feel the hurt the Lord Jesus received. That is why the Father's love for the Lord Jesus is multiplied.

18 Now when Jesus saw a great multitude around Him, He commanded to depart to the other side.

19 One scribe came and said to Him, Teacher, I will follow Thee wherever Thou might go.

Comments Matthew 8:19. The Lord Jesus' true home is not on earth; it is in heaven. Following Jesus means to build treasures in heaven, not on earth. Our reasons for following the Lord Jesus have to be set right (properly) into our hearts. (See also Luke 9:58).

20 And Jesus says to him, The foxes have dens, and the birds of the heaven nests; but the Son of Man has not where to lay His head.

21 And another of the disciples said to Him, Lord, permit me first to go and bury my father.

22 But Jesus says to him, Follow Me, and leave the dead to bury their own dead.

Comments Matthew 8:22. The living ones are with the Lord Jesus. He is the giver of life. We must follow Him, and we pass from death unto life; we are not among the dead anymore. Note that here the Lord answers a disciple's question, and in verse 20, He answers a scribe's question. Look into the goals of their questions to understand the Lord's answer.

23 And He having entered into the boat, His disciples followed Him.

24 And behold, a great storm happened in the sea, so that the boat was covered by the waves; but He was sleeping.

25 And having come, they awoke Him, saying, Lord, save us, we are perishing!

26 And He says to them, Why are you fearful, O you of little faith? Then having arisen, He rebuked the winds and the sea; and there was a great calm.

27 And the men marveled, saying, Of what manner is this, that even the winds and the sea obey Him?

Comments Matthew 8:27. The Father created the situation with the sea storm to build up the faith of the disciples to follow the Lord Jesus. The Father wanted them to see that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God, and that they should listen and obey Him. Building up their faith was important because the Lord Jesus' disciples would face many challenges ahead, and they would need a strong faith to persevere. To follow the Lord Jesus was not easy for them. Their life no longer belongs to themselves; they belong to the Lord Jesus.

28 And when He had come to the other side, to the region of the Gadarenes, met Him two possessed by demons, coming out of the tombs, extremely violent, so that no one could pass by that way.

Comments Matthew 8:28. This healing described here in Matthew and the healing described in Mark Chapter 5 happened in the same region but at different parts of the region, which were not close to each other. Gadarenes refers to the region's name, and Gerasenes in Mark refers to a village name. The region had two ends, and both ends had the same thing happening—one with two men described here, and the other with one man described in Mark. The name of the Lord Jesus spread widely all over because of these healings. The Lord Jesus encountered many more of these kinds of people, whom He healed. Not all the cases encountered by the Lord Jesus are present in our times. And this is because the Lord Jesus was on earth, and then He asked the

Father to send the Holy Spirit to occupy the earth (see the Book of Acts). The presence of the Holy Spirit controls the dark side's activity.

29 And behold, they cried out, saying, What to us and to Thee, Son of God? Have Thou come here to torture us before the time?

30 Now there was far off from them a herd of many swine feeding.

31 And the demons begged Him, saying, If Thou cast us out, send us away into the herd of swine.

32 And He said to them, Go. And having come out, they went away into the swine; and behold, the whole herd rushed down the steep bank into the sea, and perished in the waters.

33 Now those that fed them fled, and having gone away into the city, they announced everything, also about the demoniacs.

34 And behold, all the city went out to meet Jesus; and having seen Him, they begged Him that He might depart from their borders.

Comments Matthew 8:34. The pig was like a god for these people since the pig gave them everything. Their riches and everything came from the pigs. The death of their pigs made them angry at the Lord Jesus, so they didn't want Him around.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) The Lord Jesus is the Lord of all. He has authority and power over the Word, our lives, our illnesses, the spiritual world, and nature. 2) Poor, rich, men, women, young, and old, we can all come in faith to the Lord Jesus for our needs. But first, we need to acknowledge that He is the Son of God and believe in His love and mercy in order to receive anything.

Chapter 9

SUMMARY

Chapter 8 shows that the Lord Jesus has authority and power over the Word, sicknesses, spirits, and the winds and the sea. In Chapter 9, we see the same trend of authority and power, including authority over the forgiveness of sins. All these show people that the Lord Jesus is the Lord above all, and He is God. Throughout this chapter, four themes are evident. 1) The Lord Jesus is the Lord above all, and He is God. a) He has the authority to forgive sins and the power to heal and give life. He forgives sins and heals a paralytic, restores the ruler's daughter to life by His word, heals a woman with bleeding when she touches His garment, and heals two blind men by touching their eyes. b) The Lord Jesus has authority over spirits. He heals the demon-oppressed man who was mute. c) He has authority over the Word. He tells Matthew, "Follow me," and Matthew leaves his job and follows the Lord Jesus. Afterward, the Lord teaches the way at the sinners' table. 2) The Lord Jesus shows mercy on the messenger (John). He tells John's disciples that they cannot mix John's teachings with the Pharisees' teachings by giving them the parables of the old garment and old wineskins. 3) The Lord Jesus is accused directly and indirectly by the Pharisees. Crowds follow the Lord, causing the jealousy of the Pharisees and scribes to grow, and they start to bring public accusations against His work on earth. 4) The harvest is plentiful, and the laborers are few. The Lord Jesus has compassion on the crowds and tells His disciples to pray for mercy from the Father, so that He may open the way for more disciples to work in the harvest.

1 And He entered into a boat, crossed over, and came to His own city.

Comments Matthew 9:1. "... His own city." The city of Nazareth (see [Matthew 2:23](#)).

2 And behold, they brought to Him a paralytic, lying on a mat. And Jesus having seen their faith said to the paralytic, Son, be of good courage; your sins are forgiven.

Comments Matthew 9:2. The Lord saw the faith in this man. His heart was searching for the Lord, not for the healing. He came to worship the Lord. The Lord showed him mercy according to his heart. Forgiveness of sins and healing have been given.

- 3 And behold, certain of the scribes said to themselves, This blasphemeth.
- 4 And Jesus knowing their thoughts said, So, why do you think evil in your hearts?
- 5 For which is easier, to say, Your sins are forgiven; or to say, Arise, and walk?
- 6 But that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on the earth to forgive sins... Then He says to the paralytic, Arise, take up your mat, and go up to your family.

Comments Matthew 9:6. The paralytic's healing shows that the Son of Man has the authority to forgive sins. He has authority over every living breath on earth. Even the sickness is under His authority as well. The Lord Jesus is the Lord of all.

- 7 And having arisen, he departed to his family.
- 8 When the multitudes saw it, they were afraid, and glorified God, who had given such authority to men.
- 9 And Jesus passing by from there, He saw a man, named Matthew, sitting at the tax booth; and He says to him, Follow Me. And having arisen, he followed Him.

Comments Matthew 9:9. The Lord Jesus' disciples are special. They do not see but feel the authority of the Lord Jesus. They feel they belong to the Lord Jesus. The disciples' eyes were open to see the Lord Jesus, not because the Lord Jesus looked different, but their eyes and hearts were open to see the Lord Jesus as their Lord.

- 10 And it happened: He was reclining in the house, and behold, many tax collectors and sinners came and were reclining with Jesus and His disciples.

Comments Matthew 9:10. By the title "Teacher," they invite the Lord Jesus as a teacher, not as a guest. The door is open, and the teacher's duty is to teach them. However, as a participant, you cannot attend such gatherings. If they invite you as a speaker, then you can go.

See also [Luke 5:27-30](#).

- 11 And when the Pharisees saw it, they said to His disciples, Why does your Teacher eat with the tax collectors and sinners?

Comments Matthew 9:11. The Lord Jesus joined the food but did not join the lifestyle of the tax collectors and sinners. The purpose of joining is important. Do not join to be alike, but join to show a different lifestyle. The purpose of the Lord joining the table was to teach them, not to follow them.

12 And having heard, He said, Those being strong have no need of a physician, but those being sick.

13 However, you go, learn what it is: I desire mercy, and not sacrifice, for I came not to call the righteous, but sinners.

14 Then came to Him the disciples of John, saying, Why do we and the Pharisees fast, but Thy disciples do not fast?

Comments Matthew 9:14. Notice the term "Pharisees" used in their question. John's disciples mingled with the Pharisees and wanted to accept their teachings and abandon John's teachings. That is why the Lord Jesus gave them the old garment and the old wine-skins parables. It was wrong for John's disciples to mingle with the Pharisees and listen to their advice. Here, the Lord has mercy on the messenger, John, and He teaches John's disciples to go back to him and not to mingle with the Pharisees.

15 And Jesus said to them, The sons of the bridechamber cannot mourn as long as the bridegroom is with them; however, the days will come, when the bridegroom will be lift off from them, and then they will fast.

Comments Matthew 9:15. In this verse, the Lord speaks of what will come later. The Lord Jesus' love is greater than His own suffering. His suffering on the cross is not just for them alone, but for all humans, and not just for now, but until all will be judged.

16 However, no one puts a patch of unprepared cloth upon an old garment; for the filling up of it tears away from the garment, and a worse tear is made.

Comments Matthew 9:16. In this parable, the Lord tells the disciples of John to separate themselves from the Pharisees.

17 Neither pour they new wine into old wineskins; otherwise, the wineskins burst, and the wine is spilled, and the wineskins are destroyed; but they pour new wine into fresh wineskins, and both are preserved.

Comments Matthew 9:16-17. The "unprepared (unshrunk) cloth" and the "new wine" represent the new teachings of John about the Messiah being the Lamb of God who is coming to sacrifice Himself for the human race (see [John 1:29](#)).

The "old garment" and the "old wineskins" represent the teachings of the Pharisees and scribes. They promote their word to have equal authority with

God's Word. But this is an abomination to put themselves at the same level as God.

The "tear" and "spilled or burst" mean that the new teachings of John cannot be mixed with the teachings of the Pharisees. The parables show John's disciples that the Pharisees will not accept the new teaching of John and will reject it. And for them, trying to mix the two teachings was wrong and would damage their calling.

18 While He was speaking these things to them, behold, a certain ruler came, kneeling down to Him, saying, My daughter just now has died; but come, lay Thy hand upon her, and she will live.

Comments Matthew 9:18. This ruler acknowledges the Lord's authority above all, both the dead and the living. He actually acknowledged the Lord Jesus as God in front of people.

19 And Jesus arose, followed him, also His disciples.

20 And behold, a woman having an issue of blood twelve years, having come behind, touched the fringe of His garment;

21 for she said within herself, If I only may touch His garment, I will be healed.

22 And Jesus turning and seeing her said, Daughter, take courage; your faith has healed you. And the woman was healed from that hour.

Comments Matthew 9:20-22. This woman, if she touches something that belongs to the Lord Jesus, in her belief, His power is there as well. Her faith has paid her well. For more comments about this healing, see also [Mark 5:25-34](#) and [Luke 8:43-48](#).

23 And Jesus came into the ruler's house, and saw the flute-players, and the crowd making a commotion;

24 He said, Depart: for the damsel is not dead, but sleeps. And they ridiculed Him.

Comments Matthew 9:24. "... the damsel is not dead, but sleeps." The ruler's daughter was not dead yet; she was just in a coma. Her spirit was still holding on to her body.

25 Now when the crowd had been put out, He entered in, took hold of her hand, and the damsel arose.

Comments Matthew 9:25. "... and the damsel arose." The girl's spirit was stuck in the dark and could not find the way back to her body. The body cannot

wake up without the spirit. The Lord Jesus opened the path for her spirit to join back with her body. He commanded the spirit to join back with the soul and body and be at peace.

26 And this report went out into all that land.

27 And as Jesus passed by from there, two blinds followed Him, crying out, and saying, Have mercy on us, Son of David.

Comments Matthew 9:27. David was as God in the eyes of people. These ones really recognized the Lord Jesus as the Son of God. See also Comments Mark 10:46-52.

28 Now having come into the house, the blinds came to Him, and Jesus says to them, Do you believe that I am able to do this? They say to Him, Yes, Lord.

Comments Matthew 9:28. "... the blinds came to Him." This shows the action of the ones who were seeking the mercy of the Lord. They believe that the Lord Jesus can heal them.

"... They say to Him, Yes, Lord." They were blind in their eyes, but they could see with their hearts and acknowledged the Lord Jesus as God.

29 Then He touched their eyes, saying, According to your faith let it be to you.

Comments Matthew 9:29. The Lord Jesus touched their eyes because they acknowledged Him as God.

30 And their eyes were opened. And Jesus strictly instructed them, saying, See that no one knows.

Comments Matthew 9:30. "See that no one knows." The Lord Jesus wants people to come to Him because of the message He brings, not because of the works He does on earth. He wants people to believe that He is the Son of God and He is the way to heaven.

31 But they went out; they made Him known in all that land.

Comments Matthew 9:31. They did a good work for the Lord. They told and showed people with proof who the Lord Jesus is. The Lord wants us to do works for Him by our own initiative, from the heart, without Him telling us. What the Lord puts in our hearts, and not what we think with our heads, is what we should do.

32 And as they were going out, behold, they brought to Him a mute man possessed by a demon.

Comments Matthew 9:32. Because the Lord Jesus was on the earth, and now, because the Holy Spirit occupies the earth, these dark things cannot show their power anymore. See also Comments Mark 5:1-13.

33 And when the demon was cast out, the mute man spoke; and the multitudes marveled, saying, It was never thus seen in Israel.

34 Now the Pharisees said, By the chief of the demons He casts out demons.

35 And Jesus went about all the cities and the villages, teaching in their synagogues, and proclaiming the gospel of the kingdom, and healing every disease and every sickness.

Comments Matthew 9:35. "...proclaiming the gospel of the kingdom." The Gospel's main points are: 1) The forgiveness of sins through the Son of God, the Lord Jesus; 2) A chance to be forgiven by the Father through His Son; 3) The Lord Jesus is the only way out for mankind; 4) Come unto the Lord Jesus and find peace and gain eternal life.

36 Now having seen the multitudes, He felt compassion for them, because they were distressed and cast aside, as sheep not having a shepherd.

37 Then He says to His disciples, The harvest indeed is plentiful, however, the laborers are few.

Comments Matthew 9:37. "The harvest indeed is plentiful" means that there are many lost souls.

"The laborers" are the ones who are willing to leave everything and work for the Lord, and the pay will be according to their commitment.

38 Therefore, pray to the Lord of the harvest, that He sends out laborers into His harvest.

Comments Matthew 9:38. "The Lord of the harvest" is the Father.

"His harvest" refers to the lost souls in the world.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) We must believe that the Lord Jesus is God within the Trinity of God. His works testify to this, and we should not doubt His authority and power as God. 2) We cannot mix the teachings of the Lord Jesus with any other human teachings. 3) We

must always pray to the Father, the Son, the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit in the name of the Lord Jesus for missionaries, pastors, and workers.

Chapter 10

SUMMARY

In Chapter 10, the Lord Jesus gives authority to eleven of His apostles by His Word to cast out demons and heal every disease and affliction. It is important to note that the betrayer, Judas, cannot have authority and join the kingdom. He just went along with the other apostles, but he had no authority of his own due to his lack of faith. After the apostles' era, the Lord Jesus no longer gives anyone that kind of authority. A new era of gifts and mercy begins when miracles are done only through the gifts of the Holy Spirit. After the Lord gives authority to the disciples, He teaches them. His teachings cover four main themes. Within His teachings, some verses can be applied only to the apostles, some to the apostles and all who take their wages from tithes to the Lord, and others to all true believers. 1) Instructions for service (verses 5 to 14). The apostles were to proclaim the Lord Jesus to the house of Israel only. However, when the soldiers of the governor put the crown of thorns on the Lord Jesus' head, they proclaimed Him king of the entire world. He is no longer the God of the Jews only. Then, when the Lord Jesus was crucified, His blood was shed for the whole world. After the crucifixion, our duty as believers is to tell everybody that the Lord Jesus is God and He is the only way to salvation for Jews and Gentiles. When we receive the Lord Jesus as our Lord, the heavens come to us, and we must extend our hand and tell others about Him. 2) Be ready; tribulations will come (verses 16 to 26 and 34 to 36). The Lord warns us to beware of evil men. They will mock and persecute true Christians, but we should not fear those who fight against God. The truth about the Lord Jesus cannot die and cannot be hidden. Believe by heart, not by mouth. During the first coming of the Lord Jesus on earth, the Jews united themselves against Him. They crucified Him and persecuted the disciples, and before the second coming of the Lord, the entire world will be united against the Lord Jesus, and great persecution will come upon the true Christians. 3) What does it mean to be a disciple (verses 26 to 33 and 37 to 39)? First, we must acknowledge the Lord Jesus as our God and Savior and fear the Father who can destroy both body and soul in hell. Then, we need to carry our own beliefs, follow the Word, and stand firm on our belief that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God and He is the only way to heaven. Ultimately, we cannot forsake the Lord Jesus for the sake of our loved ones or for fear of men and life's trials. 4) Spiritual rewards. The two main rules for following

the Lord Jesus are to love God and love your neighbor as yourself. If we apply these in our daily lives, we will store treasures in heaven.

1 And He called His twelve disciples, He gave to them authority over unclean spirits, so as to cast them out, and to heal every disease and every sickness.

Comments Matthew 10:1. The disciples walked with the Lord Jesus and had seen many miracles the Lord had done in front of them. By this time, their faith had grown. To have authority (power) but not enough faith, it would not work; they could be misled to use the authority in the wrong way. The Lord Jesus knew them and who they were. The Lord Jesus gave them the authority by His Word.

2 Now the names of the twelve apostles are these: first, Simon, called Peter, and Andrew his brother; and James the Zebedee, and John his brother;

Comments Matthew 10:2. Peter, the Bible tells us that his name means stone (see [Matthew 16:18](#) and [John 1:42](#)).

3 Philip, and Bartholomew; Thomas, and Matthew the tax collector; James the Alphaeus, and Thaddaeus;

4 Simon the Cananaean, and Judas Iscariot, who also betrayed Him.

Comments Matthew 10:4. The betrayer could not have authority; he did not have faith in the Lord Jesus. The Lord had mercy on him and sent him with the disciples, but he was not alone. He was different, but he himself didn't think about why. He lived in the dark; he had chosen his way to walk in the darkness.

5 These twelve Jesus sent out, having ordered them, saying, Go not into the way of the Gentiles, and enter not into a city of the Samaritans;

Comments Matthew 10:5. Verses 5 to 6 must be applied only to the apostles for that particular situation. Before the Lord Jesus was crucified, He came to minister to the house of Israel only (see [Matthew 15:24](#) and [Acts 3:25-26](#)). When the Lord Jesus was crucified, His blood was shed for the whole world. By the Lord Jesus' blood, the love and mercy of God are extended to the entire world.

6 however, go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.

Comments Matthew 10:6. The Jews are the ones who have the duty first to spread the Word of God. When the Jews talk to one non-Jewish person, that person has the duty to tell the Word further and further.

7 Also going on, proclaim, saying, The kingdom of the heavens has drawn near.

Comments Matthew 10:7. Note that verses 7 to 10 can be applied to the apostles and all that take wages from tithes to the Lord.

When you receive the Lord Jesus as your Lord, then the heaven comes to you. Extend out your hand and tell others about the Lord Jesus. You share the heaven with them when you share the Word.

8 Heal the sick, raise the dead, cleanse the lepers, cast out demons; freely you received, freely give.

Comments Matthew 10:8. The Lord Jesus gave authority to the disciples except to the betrayer. The apostles were special. They had authority up to the point of calling fire from heaven, punishing someone, healing by shadow, and by cloth touching. This kind of authority and power ended with the era of the apostles. After the apostles' era, the Lord Jesus no longer gives this kind of authority to anyone. A new era of gifts and mercy has started, where miracles are done only through the gifts of the Holy Spirit.

There is a difference between authority and gifts. By authority, the apostles could command (see [Acts 5:1-11](#)). By the gifts, the power belongs to the Holy Spirit, and the miracles are performed through prayer and asking. If your heart is open, you can receive the gifts of the Holy Spirit. These days, many have gifts from the Holy Spirit, but some are using them in the wrong way. Watch out for those who use the Lord Jesus' name to benefit themselves, and do not let self-proclaimed apostles come and mix you up. Only the Lord Jesus has the power to appoint an apostle (see [Acts 9:3-9](#)).

9 Acquire neither gold, nor silver, nor bronze in your belts,

10 nor leather pouch for the way, nor two coats, nor sandals, nor staff; for the laborer is worthy of his nourishment.

Comments Matthew 10:9-10. These verses apply to all those who take the wage from the tithe to the Lord. The Lord Jesus tells you to take your mind out of the things of this world. If you commit yourself to serving the Lord Jesus, do it without worry. The luxury living takes your mind away from relying on

the Lord. The Lord will provide enough for your daily living. Do not try to prepare for yourself more than how much you need.

11 Now into whatever city or village you enter, search out who in it is worthy; and there stay until you go out.

Comments Matthew 10:11. Note that verses 11 to 14 can be applied to all true believers.

"Worthy" refers to the ones that are worthy in the eyes of the Lord (in the heart, not necessarily in wealth). In those times, the worthy ones were the ones who helped the poor without expecting anything in return. Nowadays, we help through the church and charity organizations, which is also the right way.

12 And entering into the house, greet it.

Comments Matthew 10:12. When the verse says "greet," it also means "bless" as well. Pray for that house for the Lord to come upon it. If they accept the Lord, the Lord will also accept them and stay there with them.

13 And if indeed the house be worthy, let your peace come upon it; however, if it be not worthy, let your peace return to you.

14 And whoever may not accept you, nor hear your words, going out of the house or that city, shake off the dust of your feet.

Comments Matthew 10:14. If they do not accept the Lord, when you leave, do not think of them anymore. If they reject the Lord, they reject you as well. Cut them off your mind, no guilt is on you.

15 Truly I say to you, It will be more tolerable for the land of Sodom and Gomorrah on the day of judgment, than for that city.

Comments Matthew 10:15. "It will be more tolerable ..." Think here of the word unbearable (intolerable) and imagine being punished in an unbearable way for eternity, not just for a moment.

"The day of judgment" refers to the end-time judgment day when there is no more repentance left over. The Lord has given humans every chance possible to repent while they are on earth. This earth is the only place where we can repent.

16 Behold, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves; be you therefore practically wise as serpents, and pure as doves.

Comments Matthew 10:16. The sheep trust the shepherd to walk without fear. So you, you walk with the Lord, have no fear, trust in the Lord.

"Wolves" here means the world.

The serpents, when they hear a sound, the first thing they do they run. In the same way, when you feel something is not right, there is no need for you to experience it; just avoid it. You do not need to get into a trap.

Be gentle and innocent as a dove. Trust in the Lord as a baby.

17 But beware of people, for they will deliver you up to Sanhedrims, and in their synagogues, they will flog you;

Comments Matthew 10:17. These days, where we are, we may not face persecution as it is written in this verse; instead, we may receive only rejection. People just reject us and treat us as a disease. In the past, believers died for the sake of the Lord Jesus' name. These days, it is hard for us to endure just the embarrassment of being followers of the Lord Jesus; this is called faith at the surface or cold faith.

18 and before leaders also, and kings you will be brought on account of Me, for a testimony to them and to the Gentiles.

19 Then when they deliver you up, be not anxious how or what you should speak; for it will be given to you in that hour what you should speak.

Comments Matthew 10:18-19. These verses discuss facing confrontation and apply to the past, present, and future. If someone confronts you about your faith, the first thing you must do is to call the name of the Lord Jesus in your heart, and the words will come to your mouth; the job belongs to the Lord.

20 For it is not you that speak, but the Spirit of your Father that speaks through you.

21 And brother will deliver up brother to death, and father child; and children will rise up against parents and will put them to death.

22 And you will be hated by all on account of My name; however, the one that endures to the end, this will be saved.

23 Then whenever they persecute you in one city, flee to the other; for truly I say to you, You may not have completed the cities of Israel, until the Son of Man comes.

Comments Matthew 10:16-23. In verse 15, the Lord talks about the day of judgment. Then, in verses 16-25, He discusses the persecution that will come. Christians will always face some form of persecution, but these verses will be

fulfilled in their fullness during a period of time before the tribulation, prior to the second coming of the Lord Jesus. Before the second coming of the Lord, a movement of faith will first begin in Israel. This paragraph applies in its fullness to a group of chosen ones from all over the world during this pre-tribulation period.

24 A disciple is not above the teacher, nor a servant above his master;

Comments Matthew 10:24. In this verse, "disciple" applies to the believer, "teacher" to the Lord Jesus, "servant" to the Lord Jesus, and "master" to the Father. In the Bible, we can observe that in some places, the Lord Jesus refers to Himself as the servant of the Father.

25 sufficient for the disciple that he becomes as his teacher, and the servant as his master. If they called the master of the house Beelzebub, how much more those of his household!

Comments Matthew 10:25. In this verse, "of his household" refers to the believers.

26 Therefore, you should not fear them; for nothing is covered that will not be revealed; and hidden, that will not be known.

Comments Matthew 10:26. Fear not those who speak against God, those who try to find the proof against His birth and resurrection. Believe by heart, not by mind.

"For nothing is covered ... and hidden ..." There have been talks against the Lord Jesus from the beginning, and people have spread the word of lies. The truths about the Lord Jesus that He is the Son of God, He was conceived by the Holy Spirit through the Virgin Mary, He was crucified and died for our sins, and He rose again on the third day in the body cannot be hidden. The world will see the Lord Jesus again, and they will see the truth when He comes to judge the world.

27 That which I tell you in the darkness, speak in the light; and that which you hear in the ear, proclaim upon the housetops.

Comments Matthew 10:27. This verse mainly refers to the understanding of the Word when you read or hear it. The Lord speaks in the heart, not in the thought of reason. The first thought that comes into the heart, not the thought that you are thinking, bring that thought forth.

28 And you should not be afraid of those killing the body, but are not able to kill the soul; however, rather fear Him being able to destroy both soul and body in hell.

Comments Matthew 10:28. "Those killing the body" refer to the ones who are against those who believe in the Lord Jesus. There are many like this around us, and many come among us. Be aware of those who are among you and pretend to be like you, but they are not. Those are the real enemies of the true Christians; watch out for them; some are leaders in the churches.

"Fear Him being able to destroy ..." The Three in One is God the Father, God the Son (the Lord Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit. All have the power to destroy the soul, but only the Father has the authority to command that the soul be destroyed.

29 Are not two sparrows sold for an assarion? And not one of them will fall on the ground apart from your Father;

Comments Matthew 10:29. The Father cares for the sparrows. And we are the children of His Son. Therefore, how much more will the Father care for us?

30 but even the hairs of your head are all numbered.

Comments Matthew 10:30. Every word we speak and all our deeds are written in the Judgment Book. We are responsible for what we say and do. The judgment to come will be clear. No one can say that the judgment is not fair.

31 Therefore, fear not; you are worth more than many sparrows.

Comments Matthew 10:31. Do not deny the Lord Jesus, and do not be afraid to testify about the Lord Jesus in front of people. Only the Lord Jesus can bring us to the Father. Our soul is more important than the body.

32 Therefore, everyone who will confess Me before people, in him I will also confess before My Father who is in the heavens.

33 But whoever shall deny Me before people, him I will also deny before My Father who is in the heavens.

34 Do not think that I came to bring peace to the earth; I did not come to bring peace, but a sword.

35 For I came to set a man at variance against his father, and a daughter against her mother, and a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law,

36 and the man's enemies are those of his household.

Comments Matthew 10:32-36. These verses must yet be fulfilled in a future time to come. We believe these events will happen in their fullness in a time prior to the tribulation period and during the tribulation period (see the Book of Revelation). People will try to make god on earth. You will hear about it, god on earth that can save you. And they will call people to join them to save the world. Do not follow them. They cannot save you. These are false christs. They will alter something in the Bible, such that all the Bibles that come out are no longer the true Bible. You will not find a true Bible; it will be outlawed. This time will be a time of a false god, a false christ, and a false word.

They will use human fear with people to make them abandon their true Bible. They will make people believe there are errors in the true Bible, and people will give up their own true Bible and join them. Don't try to save your life for the sake of this world. You think you can do it, but when this future time comes, not that many will be able to keep the truth.

37 The one loving father or mother more than Me is not worthy of Me; and the one loving son or daughter more than Me is not worthy of Me.

Comments Matthew 10:37. If you have someone you love, such as your own child or family member, who falls into this dark trap (see [Comments Matthew 10:32-36](#)) and wants to draw you in, go back to the Lord Jesus' Word and think carefully about it. Do not fall for it. Remember that you have a family in heaven!

38 And whoever does not take his cross and follows after Me, is not worthy of Me.

Comments Matthew 10:38. Carry your own belief, not the belief that someone wants you to have. You have the true Word; it is your life, follow the Word.

39 The one having found his life will lose it; and the one having lost his life on account of Me will find it.

Comments Matthew 10:39. People will try to get rid of the true Word. They will change something in the Bible, and all the Bibles that will come out will not be true Bibles. Watch out! They think they have good news to tell you. Do not believe them. It is good news for them to take your soul. The only way to be saved is by following the Lord Jesus' teaching. Read the Word and obey.

See also [Comments Matthew 16:25](#), and [Comments John 12:25](#).

40 The one receiving you receives Me, and the one receiving Me receives the One that sent Me.

Comments Matthew 10:40. The verse shows a chain reaction. If you receive the one that comes in the name of the Lord Jesus, you receive the Lord Jesus. And if you receive the Lord Jesus, you receive the Father who sent Him.

41 The one receiving a prophet in the name of a prophet will receive a prophet's reward; and the one receiving a righteous in the name of a righteous will receive the reward of a righteous.

Comments Matthew 10:41. If you receive someone who claims to be a prophet or a righteous person, and if you believe that the gift is from the Lord, you receive the One who gives him authority. Do not doubt, seek first the advice from the Holy Spirit through prayer. He will guide you. Appreciate their work, but do not forget that all things have to match the Bible. The Bible must be your guide.

42 And whoever may give to drink to one of these little ones a cup of cold water only, in the name of a disciple, truly I say to you he may not lose his reward.

Comments Matthew 10:42. This verse refers to those who believe in the Bible and believe what the Bible tells us about the Lord Jesus. They act not in the way of the world but in the Lord Jesus' way. One of the main commandments of following the Lord Jesus is: "Love your neighbor as yourself."

"Little ones" refer here to believers in the Lord Jesus.

"Cold water" here refers to the Gospel. We always need to feed the Gospel among ourselves and others.

"Truly I say to you he may not lose his reward." We, as Christians, need to show mercy and kindness to all who ask. Show mercy and kindness as the Lord shows mercy and kindness to everyone, and you will build up treasures in heaven.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) Acknowledge the Lord Jesus as our God and Savior, stand firm on our faith, follow the Word, and share the Lord Jesus with others. 2) Do not fear men; fear God,

who can destroy both body and soul in hell. 3) Beware of tribulations and persecutions from evil men coming our way in various forms. 4) Do good to people, show love, and share the Gospel with them, and we will receive our rewards in heaven.

Chapter 11

SUMMARY

Chapter 11 tells us that after the Lord Jesus instructed His disciples and supervised them for a short while, He went alone to teach and preach in various cities. The starting event of this chapter is when John the Baptist sends his disciples to the Lord Jesus to ask Him publicly if He is the One to come. The Lord Jesus used this event to preach to the crowds. His sermon here in Chapter 11 can be divided into four main themes. 1) Blessed is he who is not offended by the Lord Jesus and believes that He is the Son of God, conceived by the Holy Spirit, and born through virgin birth. 2) The Lord Jesus tells people about John. John was appointed to be born, and he was the messenger of the Lord. As the messenger of the Lord, he preached repentance, baptized the Lord Jesus in water, and testified about the Lord Jesus as the Son of God. That is why John is greater than the prophets. 3) Repent and accept the Lord Jesus as God. The Lord Jesus clearly tells us that if we do not repent, we will be destroyed in hell. 4) Come to the Lord Jesus and stay under His blood. There is only one name above and under the heavens that can ask forgiveness for our souls and lead our souls, and that name is the Lord Jesus.

1 And it came to pass when Jesus had finished commanding His twelve disciples, He withdrew from there to teach and preach in their cities.

Comments Matthew 11:1. Only instructing the disciples was not enough for them to be alone. The Lord Jesus traveled with them for a short period of time; however, at this time, He accompanied them only as moral support, and He did not perform the actions (see [John 4:1-2](#)). The disciples needed this experience to do the work of the Lord by themselves while still being guided by the Lord Jesus. The Lord Jesus wanted to prepare them so they could do the work after He would be taken away.

"He withdrew from there ..." Afterwards, He separated Himself from the disciples and went alone to teach and preach. The disciples knew where they could find Him, and if they encountered any problems, they could find Him.

2 And when John heard in the prison the works of the Christ, he sent two of his disciples,

3 and said to Him, Are Thou the coming One, or are we to look for another?

Comments Matthew 11:2-3. John was just a man himself. He had a short period of difficulty. When difficult times come, doubt also comes with them.

4 And Jesus answered and said to them, Go and report to John what you hear and see:

5 the blind receive sight, and the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, and the deaf hear, and the dead are raised up, and the poor have the good news proclaimed.

6 And blessed is the one who may not be offended in Me.

Comments Matthew 11:6. Primarily, this verse focuses on the Lord Jesus, who is the Son of God, conceived by the Holy Spirit, born through the virgin birth, to be both God and man at the same time. Blessed are those who believe this.

7 And as these were going, Jesus began to say to the multitudes concerning John: What did you go out into the wilderness to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

Comments Matthew 11:7. "A reed shaken by the wind" refers to people who cannot get hold of themselves to do anything. They just go with the wind, have no backbone to stand on their own.

8 But what did you go out to see? A man clothed in soft garments? Behold those who wear soft garments in king's houses.

9 But what did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I say to you, and greater than a prophet.

10 This is he, about whom it is written, Behold, I send My messenger before Thy face, Who will prepare Thy way before Thee.

Comments Matthew 11:10. "Before Thy face" here refers to the Lord Jesus. "Prepare Thy way before Thee" refers to preparing the way for the baptism of the Lord Jesus. John was the man on earth chosen by the Father to baptize the Lord Jesus. That is why the messenger of the Lord is much more than a prophet.

11 Truly I say to you, Among those born of women there has not risen one greater than John the Baptist; yet the least in the kingdom of the heavens is greater than he.

Comments Matthew 11:11. John has been appointed to be born. His destiny was decided before he was born (see [Luke 1:13-17](#)). He was the messenger of the Lord, and that was the purpose for him to be born.

"The least in the kingdom of the heavens" refers here to heavenly beings (such as angels). Humans are born out of a sinful nature, but those who are born in heaven are born with no sin. The verse gives a simple comparison between two types: the living souls on earth and the living ones in heaven.

12 And from the days of John the Baptist until now the kingdom of the heavens suffers violence, and the violent seize it.

Comments Matthew 11:12. See also [Comments Luke 16:16](#).

"From the days of John the Baptist" refers to the days when John the Baptist started to preach in the wilderness.

"Until now" refers to the time when the Lord Jesus started His ministry.

"The kingdom of the heavens suffers violence ..." This part of the verse relates to the spiritual world.

13 For all the prophets and the law prophesied until John.

14 And if you are willing to receive, he is Elijah, who is about to come.

15 The one having ears, let him hear.

16 However, to which will I compare this generation? It is like little children sitting in the markets, who call out to others,

Comments Matthew 11:16. "This generation" refers to the human race from the beginning until the end time; from the beginning until the end, because all people have ears and eyes, but they have never been able to use them as the Lord intended.

"Little children" refers to believers, the children of God.

"Others" are those that the believers, the children of God, think of as being believers like them.

17 saying, We played the flute for you, and you did not dance; we lamented, and you did not mourn.

Comments Matthew 11:17. The children of God rejoice in the Lord by praising and singing, and they will see the difference. Those who believe like them will glorify the Lord together with them, and those who do not believe

like them will not glorify the Lord. In the context here, these verses are directed to the Jews. The Jews were all children of God, chosen by God. Yet, only a few have recognized the Lord Jesus as Messiah. Many of them mocked the Lord Jesus and John the Baptist.

18 For John came neither eating nor drinking, and they say, He has a demon.

19 The Son of Man came eating and drinking, and they say, Behold, a gluttonous man and a wine drinker, a friend of tax collectors and sinners! And wisdom is justified by her works.

Comments Matthew 11:19. "The Son of Man came eating and drinking ..." People who use this verse to point out that the Lord Jesus drank are people who try to bring the Lord down. They use verses in the Bible to justify their own beliefs and actions. The Lord Jesus never drank alcohol. The wine the Lord Jesus drank was grape juice. If the Lord instructed us not to drink alcohol, then He Himself surely did not drink.

"A friend of tax collectors and sinners ..." The Lord Jesus has been friends with the sinners. The purpose of being friends with the sinners is to bring the sinners out of their dark ways. Do not think that being with the sinners means to be like them. The wisdom here in these verses is to see the purpose of the Lord Jesus in being with the sinners. Use the wisdom that the Lord Jesus provides and justify your own actions. Use the Lord Jesus' guideline to be with the sinners. The Lord Jesus went to teach them not to learn from them. Do likewise.

20 Then He began to denounce the cities in which most of His miracle power happened, because they did not repent.

21 Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! For if the miracle power had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, then they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.

22 However, I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon in the day of judgment than for you.

23 And you, Capernaum, will not be exalted to heaven, you will go down to Hades: for if the miracle power had been done in Sodom which were done in you, it would have remained until the day.

24 But I say to you that it will be more tolerable for the land of Sodom in the day of judgment, than for you.

Comments Matthew 11:20-24. Verses 20 to 24 show that repentance towards the Lord is the main issue for us humans to take. When we repent, it also means accepting that the Lord Jesus is the greatest, and He is God. If we do not repent, we will be destroyed in hell.

25 At that time Jesus answering said, I thank Thee, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that Thou have hidden these from the wise and understanding, and revealed them to little children.

Comments Matthew 11:25. "These" refers to the fact that the Lord Jesus can forgive sins, and under the death of the Lord Jesus on the cross, sins can be covered. There is only one name under and above the heavens that can ask forgiveness for us, and that name is the Lord Jesus.

"Wise and understanding" refers to those who think that they know it all. They believe they know it all, but they don't even know what will happen tomorrow.

"Little children" are the ones who accept the Lord Jesus and take communion with the Lord Jesus, drink His blood, and join to be one with the Lord Jesus.

26 Yes, Father, for in this way it was well-pleasing before Thee.

27 All have been delivered to Me by My Father. And no one knows the Son, except the Father; and no one knows the Father, except the Son, and the one to whom the Son may wish to reveal.

Comments Matthew 11:27. All the souls and the power belong to the Lord Jesus, but He hasn't taken possession yet. He came on the earth to ask all to come to Him, saying: "Come unto Me." See next verse.

28 Come unto Me, all you that labor and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.

Comments Matthew 11:28. The "labor" here does not mean only the missionaries and pastors working for the Lord, but includes all those searching and wanting to do work for the Lord. Additionally, as a secondary meaning, the labor can be applied to all those who toil for the things of this world but are still seeking the Lord.

"Heavy laden" refers to those who carry the burden for the lost souls who didn't have a chance to know the Lord and feel heavy in their hearts to go and tell others about the Lord Jesus.

"I will give you rest." Come to the Lord Jesus and stay under His blood, and you will find peace and rest for your soul.

29 Take My yoke upon you, and learn from Me, for I am meek and lowly in heart, and you will find rest to your souls.

Comments Matthew 11:29. "Take My yoke upon you ..." The "yoke" is to tell the love and the knowledge you have about God the Father. Tell all that the Father is kind and loving, but His wrath is even greater than His love. Come and glorify the Father through the Lord Jesus.

"For I am meek and lowly in heart ..." Be humble, do not boast. God is not for you alone; share your love and knowledge about God.

30 For My yoke is gentle, and My burden is light.

Comments Matthew 11:30. "My yoke is gentle" refers to the love for all. All who ask for mercy and love in the name of the Lord Jesus, show mercy to them and bring their situation for prayer. Remember, we must pray from within our hearts, not just with our mouths.

"My burden is light" means the love and care for all the believers that you come to be in contact with. But we must come in the name of the Lord Jesus and give our concern and worry to the Lord. Our duty is to pray in detail for them and not worry for them. Worrying for them is too heavy for us; that is the Lord's duty.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) The Lord Jesus is the Messiah, "the One who is to come," and blessed are those who believe this. 2) Repent and stay under the blood of the Lord Jesus. The kingdom of heaven is the place that we need to search for and toil for. 3) Use the Lord Jesus' guideline to be with sinners. The Lord Jesus went to teach them and show them the way, not to learn from them. 4) Tell the love and knowledge about God the Father to others. The Lord Jesus came to love all in the same way.

Chapter 12

SUMMARY

Chapter 12 addresses the authority of the Lord Jesus over the seen and the unseen world. This chapter also presents some of the numerous accusations brought against the Lord Jesus by the Pharisees, the scribes, and others, and provides His responses to their accusations. The Lord Jesus is the Law for mankind, and He has the same authority as the Father to forgive or not forgive sins. In support of His authority, this chapter shows three ways in which the Lord Jesus is greater: a) The Lord Jesus is greater than the temple since His body is the living holy temple that never faces corruption; b) The Lord Jesus' teaching is greater than Jonah's, as He teaches repentance and salvation for all mankind, whereas Jonah preaches repentance to a specific group of people; c) The Lord Jesus' wisdom is greater than the wisdom of Solomon since His wisdom concerns how to be pleasing to the Father, while Solomon's wisdom is how to be with people. The chapter's summary of the events that triggered the dialogue between the Pharisees and scribes with the Lord Jesus, the accusations brought to Him, and His response is fivefold. 1) The Lord Jesus' disciples rubbing heads of grain in their hands on a Sabbath day. This action is considered work by the Pharisees, and they accuse the Lord Jesus of not teaching His disciples to follow the law. The Lord Jesus responds and ultimately tells them that He is the Lord of the Sabbath, implying His deity. 2) Healing of a man with a withered hand on the Sabbath in their synagogue. The Pharisees conspired to destroy the Lord Jesus because, in their belief, He was doing unlawful things on the Sabbath, but He responded by withdrawing from there and allowing those who believed in Him to separate and follow Him. 3) The Lord Jesus heals a demon-oppressed man who is both blind and mute. The Pharisees accuse the Lord Jesus of casting out demons not by the Spirit of God. He responds and concludes by saying that there is a judgment day, and we are all responsible for our actions and the words we speak. 4) The Pharisees and the scribes ask for a sign. The Pharisees and scribes call the Lord Jesus a teacher, but they do not show Him the respect due to a teacher. He responds that no sign will be given to anybody except His bodily resurrection from the dead on the third day after His crucifixion. 5) His mother and brothers stood outside while He spoke to the people. People, by pointing publicly to His mother and brothers, it was a way to lower the Lord Jesus down as merely a simple man and attack His

claims to be the Son of God. The Lord Jesus responds that He has only one Father, who is in heaven, and His brother, sister, and mother are those who glorify the Father and glorify the Lord Jesus as God.

1 At that season Jesus went on the Sabbath through the grainfields; and His disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and to eat.

Comments Matthew 12:1. From now on, it will be shown who the Lord Jesus is, especially to His disciples. The Lord Jesus did not come to break the Law. He came to complete the Law, and His disciples must learn this. He is the Law for humans, and in Him, all the Law is complete.

2 And the Pharisees, having seen, said to Him, Behold, Thy disciples are doing which it is not lawful to do on Sabbath.

Comments Matthew 12:2. Here, the Pharisees blamed the Lord Jesus for not teaching His disciples to follow the Law. But the Lord Jesus is the Law to follow. If He is the Law, how can you tell the Law to follow the Law?

"Thy disciples are doing which it is not lawful ..." In this case, the Pharisees' accusation is that the process of rubbing the grain heads in their hands to separate the grains for eating is work. They put burdens on men, which was not what the Lord wanted to do. The Sabbath keeping was for building faith, not to make the faith go away. That is why the Lord Jesus fulfilled all those laws to show the mercy of the Lord.

The Lord wanted to end this controlling, which was so wrong. Men created rules using God as a means to consolidate their power and control others. This way was not what the Lord wanted for the Sabbath. The Sabbath was to glorify God.

3 And He said to them, Have you not read what David did, when he was hungry, and those with him;

4 how he entered into the house of God, and they ate the loaves of the showbread, which it was not lawful for him to eat, nor for those with him, except only the priests?

Comments Matthew 12:3-4. This here is an example of the mercy of the Lord. David and his companions were hungry, and the Lord showed mercy, allowing them to eat without holding them guilty. Because they were hungry, the Lord had mercy. What was that bread for: to feed the hungry (David and his men) or not the hungry (the priests)? Those priests did not need to eat the

bread, but David and his men were hungry and in need of food. That is why this is the mercy of the Lord.

5 Or have you not read in the law, that on the Sabbath the priests in the temple profane the Sabbath, and are guiltless?

Comments Matthew 12:5. In this chapter, the Pharisees put the priests above the Sabbath. With this question, the Lord made the people think twice about whether the priests were guiltless or not by the Law.

Because they are the ones who have been chosen, they are considered guiltless by the Law. However, if the priests make mistakes and do not follow the Law exactly as it is written, they become guilty of that sin. The Law itself will tell you that you must follow the Law exactly to avoid sin; therefore, follow according to the Law, not another. At this time, the Pharisees set many laws for themselves even if the Law of God did not command it. They did this to distinguish themselves. Some of the things they do are for personal use, but they claim that what they do is in the Lord's will, and that is profane.

Here, there is only one Lord of the Sabbath, whom they did not recognize, and they think they are guiltless, but they are not. The Lord does not look at the position the person has. He looks at the heart of the person. That is why the Lord Jesus came to fulfill the Law of the Sabbath. The Sabbath is for people, not for the Lord. When the Lord gives the rules for the Sabbath, we, as humans, must follow those rules, not change them. The Lord gave the Sabbath rules to follow from the beginning; then, these people changed those rules, and the Sabbath became about following human rules, not the true Sabbath's rules.

If we glorify the Lord Jesus, we do not need to keep the Sabbath because He is the Lord of the Sabbath. They are guilty, not the Lord Jesus.

To better understand verses 3 to 5, read 1 Samuel 21:1-6, Leviticus 24:5-9, 1 Chronicles 9:28-32, and Numbers 28:9.

6 But I say to you, that a greater than the temple is here.

Comments Matthew 12:6. "A greater than the temple" can be linked to the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus (see [John 2:18-22](#)). The Lord Jesus states this because they do not believe in the bodily resurrection. They all believe in a spiritual, not a bodily, resurrection of the dead (see [Acts 23:8](#) and [Acts 24:21](#)). The body of the Lord Jesus is the living temple and is greater than the earthly temple. The Lord Jesus has only one body, which we will see at His second coming. His body never faced corruption. And we will see His nail-pierced

hands. The earthly temple needs repairs, but the living temple is perfect; it never decays. The living temple is larger than the universe; it has no limit. All those who believe can enter, and it never fills up; there is always room for one more.

7 However, if you had known what is, I desire mercy, and not sacrifice, you would not have condemned the guiltless.

Comments Matthew 12:7. "I desire mercy, and not sacrifice." The Lord Jesus condemns the fact that there was no mercy, and people would bring the best things for sacrifices, but would ignore the needs of their brothers. Then and now, people do not look out for each other's needs, but only for themselves alone. The Lord desires unity among brothers and wants to see them helping one another. He wants all to join together to bring sacrifices to the Lord and do things together peacefully. There should be no jealousy between each other, no lifting up of one over another, no backbiting. As Christians, we must all be one in Christ, just as the Lord is One, comprising the Father, the Son (Jesus Christ), and the Holy Spirit.

"You would not have condemned the guiltless." The guiltless refers to the Lord Jesus only.

8 For the Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath.

9 And having departed from there, He went into their synagogue.

Comments Matthew 12:9. The synagogue is a place where all the Jews gather together. The Lord was there and taught them on that Sabbath day for them to see the Lord's way. The Lord Jesus did not come to follow their law, but He came to teach them the Law of the Lord. However, they refused His teaching and did not accept Him. However, in the Bible, we see that they call Him teacher. If they call Him "teacher," but do not believe what He teaches, then their guilt remains. We need not be like them; we must listen and obey the Lord's teaching.

10 And behold, a man having a withered hand. And they asked Him, saying, Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbaths? So that they might accuse Him.

Comments Matthew 12:10. "And behold ... hand." The man's hand couldn't stretch open; he couldn't stretch out his fingers. In his heart, all he wanted was that he could open his hand to worship the Lord. Note that this man came to

the temple. A beggar who cannot open his hand cannot ask people for mercy, but with his palm closed, he can still ask the Lord for mercy.

"And they asked ... accuse Him." Here, it shows how people are. The Pharisees use their own laws to set traps to be able to make accusations and destroy the Lord Jesus. When they see that one does good, they set the trap to destroy that one (see verse 14).

11 And He said to them, What man will there be among you, who will have one sheep, and if this falls into a pit on the Sabbaths, will he not lay hold of it, and lift it up?

12 How much then is a man more valuable than a sheep! Therefore, it is lawful to do good on the Sabbaths.

13 Then He says to the man, Stretch out your hand. And he stretched it out, and it was restored sound, as the other.

Comments Matthew 12:11-13. People make many laws for themselves and claim them to be the law of God for their own benefit. The Sabbath is for man, not for God. Here, God performs His Sabbath, but people cannot accept God doing His work (to do good) on the Sabbath. They come asking things on the Sabbath, and if God does it, they do not accept it. Their anger blinds their heart. We are supposed to do good on the Sabbath, but we, as Christians, do not keep the Sabbath anymore. For us, each day is a Sabbath day because we have Christ in us, and He is the Lord of the Sabbath. Charity is considered good work for the Lord. So, do good every day, and it will count. Do not harm anyone, believers or non-believers. Think of yourself before you do something to someone.

14 Now the Pharisees went out and held a council against Him, how they might destroy Him.

Comments Matthew 12:14. Setting the trap was not enough for them. Now, they start plotting to make the trap work to destroy the Lord Jesus and interrupt His work.

15 And Jesus having known withdrew from there. And many followed Him; and He healed them all,

Comments Matthew 12:15. "And Jesus, having known ..." The Lord can hear the heart and knows what is in the heart.

"And many followed Him." The ones who, in their hearts, want to follow the Lord will come out and follow. The Lord is like a light in the dark. All His sheep saw the light and followed.

"And He healed them all." Here, we can understand that the Lord healed the hearts of those who followed Him. The word healed here may be better understood as renewed.

16 and warned them that they should not make Him known:

Comments Matthew 12:16. The Lord Jesus did not come to be famous. He came to heal the brokenhearted, those whom no one cared about. They were healed through the mercy of God to strengthen their faith in the Father. The Lord Jesus wanted them to talk about how merciful God is. He came to glorify the Father, not Himself.

17 so that it might be fulfilled which was spoken through Isaiah the prophet, saying,

18 Behold, My servant whom I have chosen; My beloved in whom My soul has found delight. I will put My Spirit upon Him, And He will proclaim justice to the Gentiles.

Comments Matthew 12:18. The Lord Jesus is one hundred percent Man and one hundred percent God. Here, the Lord Jesus is portrayed as the servant and the beloved Son of God the Father, who is anointed by the Holy Spirit.

19 He will not quarrel, nor cry aloud; Nor will anyone hear His voice in the streets.

Comments Matthew 12:19. The Lord is a teacher, and He is the most Holy Teacher. Our heart is His temple. He talks straight to our hearts. He did not walk around the streets and teach. If our heart cries for Him, He comes right away to His synagogue. It is a personal conviction between the heart and the Lord. The Lord will never force Himself on anyone. The willingness of a person is the key for the Word to enter into the heart of a man or a woman.

20 A crushed reed He will not break, And a smoldering flax He will not quench, Until He brings forth justice to victory.

Comments Matthew 12:20. "Crushed reed" refers here to those who are double-minded and weak in faith. The faith has many levels. Some believe that their faith is the right faith. Our duty is to tell but not to judge. We have no right to judge anyone. If we judge, we break the soul of a person. The reed here is the soul itself. The judgment is at the end, and it is the Lord's duty.

"Smoldering flax" refers to those people who believe they understand the Bible, but they are using their own judgment and don't ask the Lord for understanding. This also applies to the teachers of the Bible who teach from their own understanding and never ask the Lord for understanding. The Lord will not bring someone to make them publicly ashamed for what they understand, even if their understanding is wrong. It is not the Lord's will to hurt anyone's feelings. If you want to correct someone, do it privately, not in public, so as not to shame them (see [Acts 18:24-28](#)).

"Until He brings forth justice to victory." See the Book of Revelation chapter 4.

21 And in His name the Gentiles will hope.

Comments Matthew 12:21. This verse applies when the Word of God is preached all over the world to the Gentiles. There are still more people who have never heard about the Lord Jesus. The Lord supports missionary work that goes out to share the Word of God.

22 Then was brought to Him one possessed by a demon, blind and mute, and He healed him, so then the mute spoke and saw.

Comments Matthew 12:22. In this case, it was not a physical disability. There was nothing abnormal in the body. The disability was related to the sin of the man.

"And He healed him ..." The Lord's mercy is greater than all. The sin the man had has been lifted up. The man did not come to ask by word. But by his heart, he was asking for mercy, and mercy had been poured out on him. The mercy that has no ending from the Lord continues forever for those who are searching with a true heart.

23 And all the multitudes were amazed, and said, Can this be the Son of David?

24 And the Pharisees having heard, said, This does not cast out demons, if not by Beelzebub the chief of the demons.

Comments Matthew 12:23-24. At the time, it was well known among the people that the Pharisees were the ones who had the authority to cast out evils, not someone else. And the Lord Jesus is not part of their group. In their view, the Lord Jesus did not have that authority. But the Lord Jesus proves over and over that He has this authority.

25 Now knowing their deliberations He said to them, Every kingdom divided against itself is brought to desolation, and every city or house divided against itself will not stand.

Comments Matthew 12:25. "Knowing their deliberations ..." The Lord Jesus hears the heart and knows the thoughts of men. Nothing is hidden from Him; even the most secret thing is open in front of the Lord. He sees through all things.

26 And if Satan casts out Satan, he is divided against himself; how then will his kingdom stand?

27 And if I by Beelzebub cast out demons, by whom do your sons cast them out? On account of this they will be your judges.

Comments Matthew 12:26-27. "By whom do your sons cast them out?" In these verses, we understand that the older generation passed on the teaching of casting out evils from the previous generation. But now, their children's generation is corrupt. The old way of their practice has been changed; the new generation cannot cast out demons anymore (see [Acts 19:13-20](#)). There was nobody from their group who rose up to take on this duty as the old generation did. And now, the Lord Jesus has the power and authority over the evil spirits, but He is not part of their group. The Pharisees fear the shifting of authority from them. For people to see that someone outside of their group can exert authority over evils, they can't let this happen. For them, the shift of authority must be stopped, and the Lord Jesus must be destroyed.

28 However, if I by the Spirit of God cast out demons, then the kingdom of God has come upon you.

Comments Matthew 12:28. Even when the Lord tells them straight, they can't believe it. The darkness covers their eyes. When you serve the dark, you cannot see the light. The conclusion of verses 24 to 29 is that the Lord wants them (the Pharisees) to admit that their children do not use the power of God to do their work (they lost the authority) and acknowledge that the power and authority over the spirits belongs to the Lord Jesus. They lost the power when they saw the Lord Jesus' power and did not recognize Him as the Son of God; they walked parallel with God, not with God anymore. That is why they can't see the authority the Lord Jesus has shown among people.

29 Or how can one enter into the house of the mighty, and plunder his goods, except he first binds the mighty? And then he will plunder his house.

Comments Matthew 12:29. This verse is straightforward. However, you can also apply it to the heart of the man. If you let the wishes of this world be the main thing that occupies your mind, then it is, as the Bible says, they have tied you up, and all the bad thoughts enter in you. Therefore, do not occupy your mind with the things to build treasures on earth which you cannot take with you; rather, stay in prayer and invite the Lord to be with you in your daily living.

30 The one being not with Me is against Me, and the one not gathering with Me scatters.

Comments Matthew 12:30. This verse relates to the baptism in the water in the name of God the Father, God the Son (Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit. The Lord Jesus has been an example for us, and He has been baptized in the water. Simply accepting the Lord Jesus is not enough to secure a place to be close to the Lord. We need to be baptized in the water. When we do that, we acknowledge the Lord in public and become the children of God. And, when we immerse ourselves under the water, we go through the gate of this world and enter the gate of heaven with the Lord Jesus Christ.

31 Because of this I say to you, Every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven to people; however, blasphemy of the Spirit will not be forgiven.

32 And whoever may speak a word against the Son of Man, it will be forgiven him; but whoever may speak against the Holy Spirit, it will not be forgiven him, neither in this age, nor in the coming.

Comments Matthew 12:31-32. In this particular case, the Pharisees accused the Lord Jesus as per verse 24, which is why the Lord spoke this way.

"This age" refers here to the time when the Lord Jesus was on earth.

"The coming" refers here to the time after the crucifixion of the Lord Jesus. After the crucifixion, the earth goes on according to the love of the Son. The mercy and love of the Son sustain the earth from the wrath of the Father.

33 Either make the tree good, and its fruit good, or make the tree worthless, and its fruit worthless; for the tree is known by the fruit.

Comments Matthew 12:33. The tree here represents humans. Humans have free choice. What you choose, that is what you live on. If you choose light, you will walk in the light of the Lord. If you do not choose the light, you will reap the fruits of the darkness. The Lord Jesus is the true light; come to the Lord

Jesus. The duty of the Lord Jesus is to lead the children of God to glorify the Father.

34 Offsprings of vipers, how are you able, being evil, to speak good things? For out of the abundance of the heart, the mouth speaks.

Comments Matthew 12:34. "Offsprings of vipers" in those days applied to the Pharisees. But now, amongst us, we have worse than the vipers. They come in many forms, mainly bringing joy and fun to life. The Pharisees of the past believed in God and thought about God. But nowadays, people do not think about God anymore. So, the Pharisees of the past have converted themselves to be the atheists of today.

"For out of the abundance ..." Talk with them, and you will know what is really in their hearts. What is in their hearts will come out. The blasphemous words are on the tips of their tongues. They hang the evil like a golden chain around their necks.

35 The good person out of the good treasure brings forth the good; and the bad person out of the bad treasure brings out the bad.

36 And I say to you, that every idle word that people will speak, they will give an account of it in the day of judgment.

Comments Matthew 12:35-36. These verses discuss the individual book of life, which has been written since birth. All the careless words we say are written in it. The book of life has two parts: before we are baptized in water and after we are baptized in water. The moment we are baptized in water, our book of life has been destroyed. A new book of life begins at the time of our baptism, and this book of life will be used to judge Christians. There is no turning back; we cannot go back to be baptized again. The baptism in water is important. If you want to be baptized in water, you will find water. If you do not want to be baptized, you will not do it even if there is water. The Lord Jesus has been baptized in the water. If the Lord of your life was baptized, how can you find a reason not to do it?

37 For by your words you will be justified, and by your words you will be condemned.

38 Then certain of the scribes and Pharisees answered Him, saying, Teacher, we wish to see a sign from Thee.

Comments Matthew 12:38. The duty of the "Teacher" is to teach, show love and patience, and also punish those who do not obey the rules of the teacher. We as Christians are different: we are not students but brothers with the Lord Jesus. We come to have the same Father as the Lord Jesus.

"Teacher, we wish to see a sign from Thee." They call the Lord Jesus "Teacher" but have no respect for Him. The power to decide and judge belongs to the teacher. The teacher does not need to prove that he has power and authority. They must prove themselves worthy of being taught. But we, as Christians, must be different; we just need to accept what the Lord Jesus has done for us.

39 And answering, He said to them, An evil and adulterous generation seeks for a sign, and a sign will not be given to it, except the sign of Jonah the prophet.

Comments Matthew 12:39. It is not just that generation but every generation that seeks a sign. Even now, the Lord has always been asked to show signs. If you believe, you believe; no sign or miracle will be given. We should come with a humble heart and acknowledge that we are just dust. We should not come bargaining with the Lord, as with a merchant for selling things. The Lord does not sell things; He has created all things. Come and glorify God the Father, God the Son (Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit.

40 For just as Jonah was three days and three nights in the belly of the great fish; so will the Son of Man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.

Comments Matthew 12:40. See comments in Matthew 27 and Matthew 28 about the Lord Jesus' death and resurrection.

41 The people of Nineveh will rise up in the judgment with this generation and will condemn it, for they repented at the preaching of Jonah, and behold, a greater than Jonah here!

Comments Matthew 12:41. "The people of Nineveh ..." This verse only shows that the generation of people living in Nineveh has repented at the preaching of Jonah, but the generation that saw the Lord Jesus did not repent at the preaching of the Lord Jesus. It is not to be taken literally that the Nineveh's generation will judge this generation.

"Greater than Jonah" refers to the teachings that the Lord Jesus gives. This portion of the verse is not about the person of the Lord Jesus but about His teaching. Those who came before brought a message only to a specific group, but the Lord Jesus has the living Word to the whole world. The message of the

Lord Jesus has no barriers; it is for every culture, color, and language. His message to all people is salvation by grace, not by works.

42 The queen of the south will rise up in the judgment with this generation and will condemn it; for she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon; and behold, greater than Solomon here!

Comments Matthew 12:42. "Greater than Solomon" refers to wisdom. Solomon's wisdom is how to be with the people. The Lord Jesus' wisdom is about how to be pleasing to the Father, which the world is not interested in.

43 And when the unclean spirit is gone out from the human, it passes through waterless places, seeking rest, and does not find.

Comments Matthew 12:43. "Waterless places." Our soul is a living water place where the evil can feed on.

"The unclean spirit" here refers to the spirit of the antichrist (see [1 John 2:18-25](#)). When this spirit leaves the house, which is the soul, because the person tries to join with the Lord and cleans up their own act, it goes into waterless places. But if it needs to extend its life, it will try to come back to take over the old place. When it comes back, it will not be alone; it will be more violent, and it will fight to take over again. Don't leave the house empty. Stay in prayer and read the Word of God, for only the Word of God can help and fill the house. The Word of God is the eternal food for our souls.

44 Then it says, I will return to my house from where I came out; and having come, it finds it being unoccupied, and swept, and put in order.

Comments Matthew 12:44. "It finds it being unoccupied, and swept, and put in order." House here refers to the soul of a person. People believe that the house is the heart, but the heart is just an organ of the body. Think of the heart in two dimensions as well: one dimension of the heart is an organ for the body, and another dimension of the heart is for the soul. An evil spirit does not need the heart, but it needs the soul to feed on.

As humans, we try to use a human way to keep ourselves clean. You sweep the soul clean when you try to cut off something useless in life. But if you do not come to the Lord Jesus and read the Word of God, you leave the soul empty, and it becomes a temptation for an evil spirit to dwell in. Before we become Christians, we try to be clean, to change, and to become a new person. But if we do not fill our souls with the Word of God, the change will not last long. The empty house will collapse down. Also, as Christians, if we slack off from

the Word of God, we make empty rooms in our souls to be tempted. Human nature, the laziness of human nature, leads us to be vulnerable. If we call ourselves Christians, we need to read the Word of God. Only the Word of God can be used to fill and shield the soul.

45 Then it goes and takes with itself seven other spirits more evil than itself, and having entered in, they dwell there; and the last of that human becomes worse than the first. Thus, it will be also to this evil generation.

Comments Matthew 12:45. "Then it goes ..." As a Christian, the soul is precious living water, and that is why your soul becomes a temptation for evil to latch on. Once you know the Word of God and turn away from the Word of God, you will be attacked more. You have to cling on to the Word of God because the Word of God is the shield of protection for your soul.

"And having entered in, they dwell there ..." This passage refers to those who have accepted the Lord Jesus as their Savior and then deny Him as their God because of the troubles of this life. And then they blame Him and claim that all troubles are from Him. Accepting the Lord does not mean that there will be no troubles in life. But no suffering on this earth can be compared with the eternal damnation. There is no second chance for those who betray the Lord Jesus.

"Thus, it will be also to this evil generation." This evil or wicked generation refers here to the generation that denied the Lord Jesus when He was on earth.

46 While He was speaking to the multitudes, behold, His mother and brothers were standing outside, seeking to speak to Him.

Comments Matthew 12:46. This passage shows us that the Lord Jesus has cut Himself off from everything, except those who followed the Father. Those who follow the Father become His family. Everything is for the Father; nothing else on earth is more important than listening and obeying the Father.

47 And someone said to Him, Behold, Thy mother and Thy brothers are standing outside, seeking to speak to Thee.

48 He answered and said to the one telling Him, Who is My mother, and who are My brothers?

Comments Matthew 12:48. As humans, can we love someone else before those who are inside our earthly family? We fail this test all the time because our eyes are always fixed on the things we can see. Because we cannot see the

Lord, we cannot give up everything for the Lord. There is no visual or physical exchange between humans and God, so only faith can carry us through.

49 And having stretched out His hand towards His disciples, He said, Behold, My mother and My brothers!

Comments Matthew 12:49. Remember where your true home is. There, you have the true family, and you will be forever with them. If you want the family of this earth to be there, speak the Word of the Lord Jesus to them. Make them meditate on the Word of God.

50 For whoever may do the will of My Father in the heavens, he is My brother, and sister, and mother.

Comments Matthew 12:50. The Lord Jesus has only one Father who is in heaven. Brother, sister, and mother are those who glorify the Father and believe in the Lord Jesus. Those who are just spectators are not included in the family. The ones counted in the family are only those who glorify the Father and glorify the Lord Jesus as God.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) For us Christians, each day is a Sabbath day because we have Christ in us, and He is the Lord of the Sabbath. Charity is considered good work for the Lord. So, we should do good deeds each day, and it will count. 2) The baptism in the water is an essential step for a Christian. The moment we are baptized in the water, our book of life will be destroyed, and a new book of life will start. This new book of life will be used to judge Christians, so we should watch every word we say since they can't be erased anymore. 3) Keep in prayer and read the Word of God regularly. Only the Word of God can fill our souls and keep us safe from evil attacks. 4) Appreciate the brothers and sisters in Christ. These are part of our true family in heaven, and we will be together for eternity. 5) We do not need to ask for a sign from God to prove Himself to us. The only sign that has been given to us is the bodily resurrection of our Lord Jesus on the third day after His death on the cross. 6) Ultimately, it is our free choice to do good or evil, and what we choose will determine what we live for.

Chapter 13

SUMMARY

The main question a Christian should ask when reading this chapter is, "What is heaven for me?" Many people are drawn into the parables in this chapter, which compare heaven to their own lifestyle and beliefs. Heaven is so large but, at the same time, so small. We can't figure out the size of heaven; it is beyond our understanding. But for us, ultimately, heaven should be the Lord Jesus Himself. There are eight parables portrayed in this chapter by the Lord Jesus, along with explaining why He speaks to people in parables. Also, at the end of the chapter, we are shown why the people in the Lord Jesus' hometown rejected Him. This passage of the Bible should be a lesson for all. Just as people who lived during the Lord Jesus' time saw His family on earth and stumbled upon His earthly family, today, many people continue to believe that for the Lord Jesus to be the Son of God, Mary must be holy and remain so. So, people went along and manipulated the facts of the Bible to keep Mary holy. However, the people in the Lord Jesus' hometown are witnesses to the fact that Mary lived a normal life after the Lord Jesus' birth since they "took offense at Him." However, we should believe from our hearts that the Lord Jesus was born of the Virgin Mary, that He is the only begotten Son of God, and that Mary is only a blessed woman. The Lord Jesus does not give us a clear definition of heaven since we need to find heaven for ourselves, as each one of us is different. All parables in this chapter give us various perspectives on how to find and serve the Lord Jesus. 1) The parable of the sower teaches us that if we want to be sons of the kingdom of the heavens, we need to listen to and meditate on the Word of God, confess our sins, and receive the grace of God through the Lord Jesus. 2) The parable of the wheat and the tares teaches us that the church is mingled until the end times, and we need to study and meditate on the Word of God to discern the difference between truth and error within the church. 3) The parable of the mustard seed illustrates to us that the kingdom of the heavens is so small that it can live in our hearts and so big that all believers can live in it. 4) The parable of the leaven illustrates that the kingdom of the heavens cannot be seen by the human eye, and the kingdom of the heavens is alive and can grow. 5) The parable of the hidden treasure teaches us that if one covers their knowledge about the kingdom of the heavens, then that person is doing the work of the evil one. 6) The parable of the pearl of great value demonstrates how

a true Christian should be. We must be willing to give up all our earthly treasures for the heavenly treasures and share the knowledge of the kingdom with others. 7) The parable of the net shows us that the Lord has thrown His love to all mankind, and He wants everybody to become children of the kingdom of the heavens. 8) The parable of the new and old treasures teaches us that a true Christian must be taught by the Bible through the Holy Spirit for a complete understanding of who the Lord Jesus is.

1 In that day Jesus having gone out from the house, He sat by the sea.

2 And were gathered together to Him great multitudes, so that He entered into a boat, sat down, and all the multitude stood on the seashore.

Comments Matthew 13:2. Here, all the people in the crowds hear the Lord Jesus' voice miraculously when He teaches them. For the Lord Jesus, there is no space and time. The space is bent (folded) together in one point, so there is no distance for the Lord Jesus' voice to travel, and so all hear Him at the same time. Because the Lord Jesus' Word is the living Word, when He teaches, His Word is alive, and everyone hears it at the same time. No one can say, "I'm first to hear," or "I'm last to hear." This is the same way throughout the Bible when the Lord Jesus teaches multitudes of people (see also [Matthew 5:2](#)).

3 And He spoke to them often in parables, saying, Behold, the sower went out to sow;

4 and in his sowing, some indeed fell along the way, and the birds having come devoured them;

5 and others fell upon the rock, where it had not much soil, and immediately it sprang up, because of not having deepness of soil;

6 and the sun having risen, it was burned; and because of not having root, it was dried up.

7 And others fell upon the thorns, and the thorns grew up and choked them;

8 and others fell upon the good ground, and yielded fruit, some indeed a hundred, and some sixty, and some thirty.

9 The one having ears, let him hear.

10 And the disciples having come, said to Him, Why do Thou speak to them in parables?

11 He answered and said, Because to you it has been given to know the mysteries of the kingdom of the heavens; however, to them it has not been given.

Comments Matthew 13:11. Within the crowds, the purpose of coming to listen to the Lord Jesus is different. Some are coming to find mistakes and point them out. Some are coming to find weak points and point them out for people to have no faith in the Lord Jesus. To those, the secrets of the kingdom of the heavens have not been given. But some are coming with a clean heart and want to hear the Lord Jesus before deciding to believe or not. To those, the Lord will give the understanding of the secrets of the kingdom of the heavens.

12 For whoever has, to him will be given, and he will have abundance; now whoever has not, from him will be taken away even what he has.

Comments Matthew 13:12. "For whoever has, to him will be given ..." This portion here refers to the spiritual world. Keep yourself in the Word of God, and more spiritual blessings will be given to you. Spiritual blessings for this life on earth are understanding the Word of God, faith in the Lord Jesus, peace with God, and joy that you can feel deep inside your soul. If we have these spiritual blessings on this earth, when we depart, these spiritual blessings will be transformed to be used for our life after death. The peace of God comes only to those who have a clean heart. The heart that is like a child's heart will be the heart that comes closer to the kingdom of heaven. The joy comes to those who have real faith in the Lord Jesus.

"Now whoever has not ..." This portion of the verse is opposite to the one above. This part relates to the pleasures of the world that you think you have. Those pleasures will be taken away if you do not want to receive the pleasure of knowing the Word of the Lord. Nothing in this world is worth knowing more than the Word of the Lord.

13 Because of this I speak to them in parables; because seeing they do not see, and hearing they do not hear, nor do they understand.

Comments Matthew 13:13. This passage refers to those who have rejected the miracles and the words of the Lord Jesus. Many of them feel they have sinned but reject the Lord completely. Their eyes have witnessed what many others never had the chance to see. Yet, if they themselves cannot benefit personally, they reject and try to limit the power of God. The prophecy is speaking about self-centered people. They see the Lord Jesus and hear the Lord

Jesus, yet they reject Him. Blessed are those who come after, and by just hearing and not seeing, believe in the Lord Jesus.

14 And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Isaiah, saying: In hearing you will hear, and will not understand; And seeing you will see, and will not perceive.

15 For this people's heart has grown dull, And their ears barely they have heard, And their eyes they have closed; Lest by chance they might see with their eyes, And they might hear with their ears, And they might understand with their heart, And might turn again, And I might heal them.

Comments Matthew 13:14-15. For verses 14 to 15, see [Comments Mark 4:10-12](#).

16 However, blessed are your eyes, because they see; and your ears, because they hear.

17 For truly I say to you, that many prophets and righteous desired to see what you see, and did not see; and to hear what you hear, and did not hear.

18 Then hear you the parable of the sower:

19 Everyone hearing the word of the kingdom and not understanding, the evil one comes and snatches away that having been sown in his heart. This is the one having been sown by the way.

Comments Matthew 13:19. "Everyone hearing the word of the kingdom and not understanding." This verse refers to everyone on earth who has a chance to hear about the Lord but never thinks about the Word of God. For them, the name of the Lord has no meaning. They hear the Word of God and let it pass by them. They never think of the Word of God, asking to understand what they hear, but they forget it immediately. If you hear or read the Word of God, you need to show interest and curiosity in the Word of God and meditate upon it (see [Matthew 7:7-8](#) and [Luke 11:9-10](#)). The Lord expects us to seek, ask, and knock, and then He will open the understanding. The people in the church also need to do this. Simply reading the Word of God is not enough.

20 Now the one having been sown upon the rock, this is the one hearing the word, and immediately with joy receives it;

21 but he has no root in himself but endures for a while; but tribulation or persecution having come on account of the word, immediately he stumbles.

Comments Matthew 13:20-21. These are the ones that receive the Word of God and think they understand it, but they never bring the teaching to practice. You can hear and read forever, but if you do not practice the teachings of the Word of God, the Word of God will never make root in you. To practice it requires you to pray and meditate on the Word of God that you have heard or read and believe the teaching that God is Trinity (Three in One: God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit), the Lord Jesus is God, the Lord Jesus is human, the Lord Jesus is our Holy Teacher, but also the Lord Jesus is the begotten Son of God. Also, practicing means believing in who the Lord Jesus is for humans. The Lord Jesus is the door and the only way to the Father and the Holy Spirit. He serves as the mediator between humans and God the Father and the Holy Spirit, with the Lord Jesus at the center, bridging this world and the unseen world. For anyone to follow the Lord's teaching requires faith.

22 Now the one having been sown among the thorns, this is the one hearing the word; and the care of the world, and the deceitfulness of riches, choke the word, and it becomes unfruitful.

Comments Matthew 13:22. These are those who hear and know what the Word of God says, but because they enjoy the pleasures and riches of this world more, they choose not to follow the Word of God. Also, here we have those who feel lazy to read the Word of God and those who think that the Word of God is for the old times and older people only. If they follow the Word of God, they see themselves as unfit for society and today's living. So, they choose to ignore the Bible.

23 However, the one having been sown on the good ground, this is the one hearing the word, and understanding; who indeed brings forth fruit, and produces, some a hundredfold, some sixty, some thirty.

Comments Matthew 13:23. "The one having been sown on the good ground." The good ground refers to those who confess their sins and believe in the mercy of God to forgive and accept His grace to cleanse their hearts. Those who accept the forgiveness of the Lord will be transformed, and the people around them will notice the change. Their duty is to tell others about the mercy and grace of the Lord and sow the seed of trust in the Lord in their hearts. These people will act as disciples of the Lord.

"Who indeed brings forth fruit, ... some thirty." This fruit refers to the heart of those who received the grace of God, and it relates to their commitment and

willingness to tell others about the forgiveness of the Lord. You don't need to enumerate for the public to know all the sins the Lord forgave you from, but you should tell people about the true mercy of the Lord to forgive sins according to the Bible.

24 Another parable set He before them, saying, The kingdom of the heavens is likened to a man having sown good seed in his field,

Comments Matthew 13:24. "A man" refers to the Son of Man, the Lord Jesus.

"Having sown" refers to the Word of God. The Lord Jesus is sowing the Word of God into the world, and where the Word is sown, if it grows, that one becomes the son of the kingdom (the good seed). The Word of God is the food that the seed uses to grow to become a good seed.

The "good seed" refers to the sons of the kingdom, who are all the true believers in the Lord Jesus. These are all the believers in the Lord Jesus who come out of the elect people (the Jews) and of the free will people (Gentiles). The elect people (the Jews) themselves have the free will to become a believer, but for some, during the Lord Jesus' ministry on earth, the Lord appointed them to be His disciples. The Lord created specific circumstances in their lives, so they had no choice but to follow the Lord Jesus. After the Holy Spirit is sent upon the earth, on the day of Pentecost, all believers come to faith in the Lord Jesus by free will. The Holy Spirit does not force anybody to become a believer. It is our free choice to call upon the name of the Lord Jesus and become sons of the kingdom.

"Field" refers to the world, which is the Lord's. The Lord is the creator of all things.

25 but while men are sleeping, his enemy came and sowed tares among the wheat, and went away.

Comments Matthew 13:25. "Men" refers to the sons of the kingdom, the true believers in the Lord Jesus.

"Sleeping" refers to laziness regarding doing the work of God and praying.

"His enemy came and sowed tares among the wheat." This passage relates to other passages in the Bible where it shows that the evil one can make himself look like the children of light (2 Corinthians 11:12-15) or they can dress in sheepskins (Matthew 7:15-20). The sons of the dark penetrate among the children of God by making themselves look alike to them. However, they

change the meaning of the Word of God and trick many negligent children. The children of God walk astray because of their own negligence; they must stay in prayer and must use the knowledge of the Word of God to justify what the eyes see and the ears hear. Pray and ask the Lord to open the eyes and ears to see and hear, and then the heart will hear the Lord, and you will be able to distinguish between the truth and the lie. The Lord has given us the shield, which is His Word, and we must use it and be ready (see Ephesians 6:10-20).

"And went away." The evil one knows very well that what they sow grows fast and covers the wheat. To do evil, you do not need any practice, but doing good needs hard work. The evil one uses the human nature to fight against the Lord. They do not need to be around to see the results, so they go away, back to their place. If humans do bad and do not use the Word of God to help them think before they sin against God, the Lord will be upset with them, not with the evil one. The evil one sowed the weeds, but it is the sons of the kingdom's fault for ignoring the Word of God and allowing the weeds to grow. The Lord Jesus has done the hard work for us already. He came and was crucified for our sins, rose again, and won the battle against the evil one for us. Just believe and reap the benefits. We need to think of eternity.

26 And when the plant sprouted and produced fruit, then appeared the tares also.

Comments Matthew 13:26. This verse refers to the spiritual world. "The plant sprouted and produced fruit" shows that the Lord is teaching the sons of the kingdom. The ones who study and meditate on His Word have knowledge of the teachings of the Lord. They go out and have children and teach their children the Word of God, but their children do not study and meditate. Because of this, their children go out and mingle with the tares, and they get confused and lose the teachings of their fathers ("then appeared the tares also"). The tares are fast-growing. They are not children of God, but you will not see this until you can see the fruits they produce. But by that time, the damage had already been done. This happens in many churches these days when false preachers bring false teachings and damage the church of God. Watch out because the tares are smart and tricky, and they know how to manipulate the Word of God.

27 And the servants of the master of the house having come said to him, Sir, did you not sow good seed in your field? From where then does it have the tares?

Comments Matthew 13:27. "The servants of the master of the house having come said to him, Sir, ..." Here the house (or household) includes all things

that have been created, the seen and unseen (earth and heaven). The servants are the angels of the Lord and all the prophets of the old times, including the prophets whose names are not written down. Sir (or Master) refers to the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit).

"From where then does it have the tares?" This passage shows that the servants are watching things on earth. The servants can see down to a limited area appointed to them, but they cannot look everywhere. Also, the servants do not have the ability to get involved unless they have permission from the Lord (see Matthew 17:3, Mark 9:4). This shows the limitation of all angels; all servants act according to the orders from the Lord only.

28 And he said to them, A man, an enemy did this. And they said to him, Do you desire then that having gone forth we may gather them?

Comments Matthew 13:28. The meaning here is that the servants want to go down and separate the tares (or weeds) from the wheat. They want to move the tares, plant them elsewhere, and help them. But the servants cannot help them; it's not their job.

29 But he says, No; for fear that by chance gathering the tares, you would uproot the wheat with them.

Comments Matthew 13:29. This verse shows that the meaning of gathering the tares (or weeds) mentioned in verse 28 is uprooting and replanting them. But the plants, wheat and tares, have tangled their roots together, and if you move one, you impact another one as well. It doesn't matter how careful you are in the uprooting process; it is impossible to avoid damaging the other plant. Thus, it is better to let them grow together. When the harvest time comes, there is no need to be concerned anymore because the tares themselves will be cut off; that is, marked and separated in bundles to be burned (see verse 30). There will be no damage done at that time since the Lord Himself will do the work.

30 Let both grow together until the harvest; and in the time of the harvest, I will say to the reapers, Gather up first the tares, and bind them in bundles to burn them; and gather together the wheat into my barn.

Comments Matthew 13:30. This parable, in fact, talks about the time when the Lord will judge His house (see 1 Peter 4:17). Until the end times, the church will continue to mingle as it is described here (wheat and tares). But the clean-up will start first in the church of God. There are two eras before the

end-time judgment. The first era is the "grow together" era, which refers to the church era and spans from the first coming of the Lord Jesus on earth until His second coming. The second era is the "harvest time" era, also known as the millennium time era (see Revelation 20:4-6). Each era is a long time for humans. Many of us will live our lives, and the church era will not end. The human time and the angel time are not the same length. As it is written, a day of the Lord is a thousand years of human time (see 2 Peter 3:8).

The time of the Lord and humans are not alike. During the "harvest time" era, there will be a falling away for those who do not watch themselves and do not use the Word of God in their daily living. It will be the last fight of the evil against those who are not watchful. There will be those who will be using the name of the Lord for their personal gain. The Lord will clean up His church during this time in a visible way on earth and in the spiritual world. Many events described in the Bible during the millennium time era will happen in parallel between these two worlds. The Lord will judge them from the inside, not from their outside appearance. Those who appear righteous on the outside but have nothing right inside will be bundled together and thrown out. During the millennium time era, as shown in Revelation 20:4, the Lord will establish the millennium kingdom, and He will judge the people left on earth after the tribulation time. In those times, the sinful nature of humans will make the believers sin even with Satan being bound in chains.

"Gather up first the tares, and bind them in bundles to burn them; and gather together the wheat into my barn." During the "harvest time" era, the Lord would clean up the church in a visible way; one day, people would wake up and just see only the dead around.

Brief Notes on the Second Coming of the Lord

There are two eras before the end-time judgment. First is the church era, which began with the Lord Jesus' first coming to earth (His birth on earth) and will end with the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth. The second era is the harvest time era or the millennium time era, which will start with the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth and will end with the final destruction of this earth. At the harvest time era, the Lord will gather the wheat into His barn, and the end-time judgment will start. Before the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth, there will be the tribulation period. This tribulation period is a time of judgment coming from the Lord upon this earth before the Lord Jesus returns.

The coming of the Lord Jesus to earth will happen in three stages.

1. The first stage occurs while the Lord is still in heaven, and this stage is marked by the beginning of the tribulation period on earth.
2. The second stage occurs when the Lord comes into the air, and this stage is marked by the rapture of the church. The rapture of the believers takes place during this second stage, when the Lord comes into the air, and may take place sometimes in the middle of the tribulation period itself.
3. The third stage occurs when the Lord Jesus Himself will touch the earth. The Lord Jesus will touch the earth sometime after the tribulation period. At this time, the millennium time era on earth will start. The earth itself will look much different at this time. The Lord will spare only a small portion of the earth for the remaining people, but the rest of the earth will be uninhabitable. (See Isaiah 13:6-13 and Ezekiel chapters 40 to 48).

At the end of the millennium time era, this earth will be transformed by the fire from God, and the parallel earth will come. The parallel earth will swallow the melted earth because the new things will be formed on this parallel earth, and all believers will get the heavenly bodies and dwell there. The parallel earth is not heaven; it resembles this earth, but is not the same. We can now think of the parallel earth as a spiritual earth, but for that world where this parallel earth exists, it is a heavenly material earth. In John 14:3, the Lord Jesus refers to the parallel earth that we are talking about here when He says: "And if I go and prepare a place for you, I am coming again, and will receive you to Myself; that where I am, you may be also." The Word of God reveals to us that this earth is transformed and does not disappear, as the Lord has been transformed; but His flesh body contains the earth because the Bible tells us that nothing that the Lord has created will disappear completely.

31 Another parable set He before them, saying, The kingdom of the heavens is like a grain of mustard, which having taken, a man sowed in his field;

32 which indeed is smallest of all the seeds; however, when it is grown, it is greater than the garden plants, and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the heaven come and perch in the branches of it.

Comments Matthew 13:31-32. The kingdom of the heavens is a kingdom, and it has all things in the kingdom. The kingdom of the heavens is as small as a mustard seed, but it can grow large. It is large beyond what humans can imagine, but also too small for the eye to see. The kingdom of the heavens is

so small that it can live in our hearts, and so large that all believers can live in it.

33 Another parable spoke He to them; The kingdom of the heavens is like leaven, which having taken, a woman hid in three measures of flour, until it was all leavened.

Comments Matthew 13:33. The Father created the kingdom of the heavens. The kingdom of the heavens is alive, and it can grow bigger and bigger. The kingdom of the heavens is like a child for the Father who created it, and it can grow, and it never stops growing.

"Hid" here means that the human eye cannot see the kingdom of the heavens.

"Until it was all leavened," tells us that when the end time (the judgment) is over, all will have been arranged in the end. The kingdom of the heavens will not grow further. When the last soul will be judged, that means "it was all leavened" (grown to the maximum of it by the will of the Father).

34 All these things spoke Jesus in parables to the multitudes; and without a parable spoke He nothing to them,

35 so that might be fulfilled that having been spoken through the prophet, saying, I will open My mouth in parables; I will utter things hidden from the foundation of the world.

36 Then having dismissed the multitudes, He went into the house; and His disciples came to Him, saying, Explain to us the parable of the tares of the field.

37 He answered and said, The One sowing the good seed is the Son of Man;

38 and the field is the world; and the good seed, these are the sons of the kingdom; and the tares are the sons of the evil;

39 and the enemy who sowed them is the devil; and the harvest is the end of the age; and the reapers are angels.

40 As therefore the tares are gathered and burned up in fire; thus, it will be in the end of the age.

41 The Son of Man will send forth His angels, and they will gather out of His kingdom all causes of sin, and those doing lawlessness,

42 and they will cast them into the furnace of the fire; there will be the weeping and the gnashing of teeth.

43 Then the righteous will shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of their Father. The one having ears, let him hear.

Comments Matthew 13:36-43. The first stage of the millennium time era is when the Lord sends His angels to gather the tares together to burn them up with fire. This period of time does not end in one earthly day. The length of time is unknown for humans; it is the Lord's time. And then, His chosen ones will be left to glorify the Lord, and He will rule them as the King of all. The chosen ones will be the ones who stay and glorify the Lord. The words from their lips will be only to glorify the Lord, and no useless words will be spoken in that time because they are in front of the Lord. Sin will not happen at that time because the tares have been destroyed.

In this passage, when it talks about "the end of the age," it does not refer to the Judgement Day. The Judgement Day in the Bible refers to the judgment of the souls of the non-believers. Only the believers who will go with the Lord Jesus will get heavenly bodies. The parallel earth that comes; this is where His believers will go, which is why their lips cannot say useless words. Still, the tares are already bundled up before the Judgment Day, and at the Judgment Day, these will be cast into the furnace of fire (hell) together with the non-believers.

44 The kingdom of the heavens is like a treasure hidden in the field, which a man having found, hid, and from the joy of it, goes and sells all that he has and buys that field.

Comments Matthew 13:44. This parable refers to the understanding of the Word of God. The Lord brings the knowledge into the path of the chosen ones. As in the parable of the wheat and the tares (weeds), we also have two kinds of people here in this parable. The chosen ones will take the treasure (the knowledge of the Word) and share it with others. However, the ones mentioned here, which are joyful and cover it up, are the ones who are happy to have found a way to fight against God and undermine His work on earth. These are the ones that serve the evil one. Meditate on these words: found, joy, and hid ("which a man having found, hid, and from the joy of it ...") to understand the meaning of this parable.

45 Again, the kingdom of the heavens is like a man, a merchant seeking beautiful pearls,

46 and having found one very costly pearl, having gone, he sold all things as many as he had, and bought it.

Comments Matthew 13:45-46. In this parable, a man, a merchant, is the true Christian, and the very costly pearl is the faith in the Lord Jesus and the knowledge of the Word of God. A true Christian searches for the truth and finds it, and by the grace of God, he receives faith and knowledge that he treasures greatly. He looks forward to using his faith, does not hide it, and wants people to know about the great treasure he has found. He is willing to lose all his earthly treasures to keep his heavenly treasure. Comparing the parable of the very costly pearl with the parable of the hidden treasure, we see two different kinds of people. The Lord gives a chance to both of them. One chooses to value the treasure he finds, while the other chooses to cover up the treasure he finds.

47 Again, the kingdom of the heavens is like a fishing-net, that was cast into the sea, and gathered of every kind,

Comments Matthew 13:47. The fishing-net is the love of the Lord. The Lord has thrown out His love to all mankind. He wants everyone from every faith to come back to the Lord and become His people. But we are like rebellious children. We feel the love of the Lord and want to take all the goods of His earth, but do not want to come to recognize the One who gives the goods. Humans just take but do not come to worship the One who created them.

48 which, when it was filled, having drawn up on the seashore and having sat down, they collected the good into vessels, and the bad they cast out.

Comments Matthew 13:48. Until the end times, the Lord gives His love to people, but then, at the end times, the Lord will take those who do not come to Him and will throw them away from Him. There will not be many coming, but when the Lord chooses the "good" into His kingdom, then all the others will know that it is too late. The Lord continues to call people into His kingdom until the end times. The net will never be overfilled, and how many come, all have a place prepared for them in the kingdom of heaven.

49 Thus will it be in the completion of the age: the angels will go out, and separate the evil from the midst of the innocent,

50 and will cast them into the furnace of the fire; there will be the weeping and the gnashing of the teeth.

51 Have you understood all these? They say to Him, Yes.

52 And He said to them, Because of this, every scribe disciplined into the kingdom of the heavens is like a man, a master of a house, who brings out of his treasure things new and old.

Comments Matthew 13:52. This parable refers to a true disciple of the Lord Jesus Christ, who is like a scribe who is trained for the kingdom of the heavens. A true disciple of the Lord Jesus is taught by the Bible through the Holy Spirit for a complete understanding of the link between the Old Testament law and the New Testament grace, which is in the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son, the Lord Jesus, and God the Holy Spirit).

The blind faith of the Old Testament and the free will faith of the New Testament, the old one controlled by the obedience to the law, and the new one controlled by the grace and faith in the Lord Jesus. The Lord Jesus is the Lord of the obedience to the point of dying on the cross. He is the last sacrificial lamb for the Father; that is why the old law ended with the Lord Jesus' death on the cross. At the same time, when the old law ended, the new law started through the blood of the Lord Jesus that He shed for the old law. The old law is wiped clean by the blood of the perfect sacrifice; that is the first step to the new law. Think of the feet of the Lord Jesus; one foot was in the old law, and He made a step into the new law with the other foot, so through Him, we are able to cross from sacrifice to grace (see [Acts 15:9-11](#), [Hebrews 8:6-13](#)).

53 And it came to pass, when Jesus had finished these parables, He departed from there.

54 And having come into His own region, He taught them in their synagogue, so that they were astonished, and said, From where to this, this wisdom, and the miraculous powers?

55 Is not this the carpenter's Son? Is not His mother called Mary? And His brothers, James, and Joseph, and Simon, and Judas?

56 And His sisters, are not all with us? From where then to this, all these things?

Comments Matthew 13:54-56. This passage shows the way the people in the Lord Jesus' hometown think of Him. For them, in their eyes, the Lord Jesus was just a simple man. They used the earthly family of the Lord Jesus to judge Him. His mother, father, and His siblings all made mistakes the same way as everybody, so the people could not see the Deity of the Lord Jesus as the Son

of God. In these people's eyes, if He is the Son of God, Mary cannot have other children, and the Lord Jesus' siblings become the main issue.

Since they have seen Mary pregnant by Joseph and having other children after the Lord Jesus, they cannot accept that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God. They use the Lord Jesus' earthly family to make people not believe in the virgin birth. Their logic is that if Mary had a child with the Holy Spirit, then Joseph could not touch her and have children with her. The holiness of the virgin birth becomes impossible for them since Mary had other children with Joseph. Mary is not holy but a blessed woman; she is blessed because the Lord chose her to carry the Lord Jesus in her womb, but she is just a human and lived as a human. After giving birth to the Lord Jesus, she had a normal human life, as every woman should have, and she had to do her duty as a wife to Joseph.

You cannot worship her; she was a blessed woman, but not more than that (see [Luke 1:48](#)). She couldn't and can't perform any miracles, and there is no record in the Bible that she ever performed any miracles. The people in her hometown saw her having more children, but God had only one Son, and it is written that the Lord Jesus is the only begotten Son of God (see [John 3:16](#), and 1 [John 4:9](#)).

57 And they were stumbled at Him. But Jesus said to them, A prophet is not without honor, except in the region, and in His household.

Comments Matthew 13:57. Even if they could not find any fault in the Lord Jesus, but the fault they picked out to be the offence in Him was His earthly family. No human is perfect; every mistake the Lord Jesus' earthly family made was what they used to discredit His work. They received the miracles the Lord Jesus did, but they did not receive His teachings. All the living Word of God spoken to them by the Lord Jesus was filtered through the deeds of His earthly family. He was not accepted in His hometown because of the imperfection of His earthly family.

58 And He did not do many miracles there because of their unbelief.

Comments Matthew 13:58. In the Lord Jesus' hometown, there was only negative talk about Him, so the Lord Jesus did not do many miracles because of the doubt people had about His Deity.

1) The Lord Jesus speaks in parables to us in order to make a selection between the ones who come to Him with a clean and sincere heart and those who come to find mistakes and accuse His work. 2) Heaven for us should be the Lord Jesus Himself: believing in the Trinity of God and the grace of God to forgive our sins; also, we need to search and find a way to serve the Lord Jesus. 3) We are to believe that the Lord Jesus is the only begotten Son of God and is born of the Virgin Mary. According to the Bible, Mary is not holy; she is only a blessed woman; therefore, she cannot perform miracles for us. There is no record in the Bible that she ever performed any miracles.

Chapter 14

SUMMARY

In this chapter, the Lord shows His mercy and His compassion towards the suffering of people and towards His disciples. He heals the sick, feeds the hungry, saves the disciples from the sea storm, and receives John's disciples. 1) Five thousand are fed in a desolate place. The word about the Lord Jesus spread all over, and people followed Him, even in this desolate place. When the Lord saw them, He had compassion and mercy on them, healed their sick, and fed them. He miraculously multiplied five loaves of bread and two fish to feed this large crowd of five thousand men, plus their women and children. Here, the Lord Jesus shows that He is the Lord over life on this earth as well. He multiplies food, which is the source of life on earth. Also, the Lord Jesus shows His disciples that He communicates with the Father for everything He does, and He always seeks the Father's will. And, all of this is the Father's will, to multiply the bread and the fish, to save the disciples, and even to talk to the disciples. 2) The Lord Jesus walks on the water to save His disciples. The miracle of the Lord Jesus walking on the sea demonstrates that He is more than human; He is the Lord over the winds and the sea. This miracle builds the confidence of the disciples that, indeed, He is the Son of God. Throughout the development of this event, we see that doubt and fear are strong enemies of the faith. In this situation, the disciples experienced both doubt and fear shortly after witnessing the miracle of feeding the five thousand. Nevertheless, Peter was commanded to walk on the water to conquer his doubt, but fear of the unseen came upon him while he, himself, was walking miraculously on the water. Peter's example is important to all of us. When trouble comes our way like a windstorm and fear of the unseen world grips our souls, we need to call to the Lord as Peter did, "Lord save me," and the Lord will come immediately as He did for Peter. 3) The Lord Jesus heals the sick at Gennesaret. Gennesaret was a small and poor town, and the Lord Jesus came to help those who were afflicted. People recognized Him and spread the word about His coming. Again, people from all over the region came to be healed. The Lord Jesus healed the sick to help people grow in faith and gain a firm knowledge about who He is. 4) John's disciples come to the Lord Jesus. People at that time had a flawed understanding of who the Lord Jesus is and who John is. For us, it is important to note that John never performed any miracles. He was just the messenger of the Lord,

and he preached repentance. The Lord Jesus is the light and the One that John preached about, but people didn't link John's teachings to the Lord Jesus. Eventually, after John's death, some of his disciples started to follow the Lord Jesus.

1 At that time Herod the tetrarch heard the rumor about Jesus,

2 and said to his servants, This is John the Baptist; he is risen from the dead and because of this, the miraculous powers are working in him.

Comments Matthew 14:1-2. This passage of Scripture shows a comparison that people made at that time between the Lord Jesus and John the Baptist (see verses 1 and 5). John did not do any miracles. John preached repentance, telling people to wait for the One who would come after him. The Lord Jesus performed miracles, and people were talking about Him. But they did not link John's teachings to the Lord Jesus; their eyes were darkened, and they could not see the light.

3 For Herod had laid hold on John, he bound and put him in prison on account of Herodias, his brother Philip's wife.

4 For John said to him, It is not lawful for you to have her.

5 And wishing to kill him, he feared the multitude, because they held him as a prophet.

Comments Matthew 14:3-5. Even though John was considered a prophet, there was no value for his life because the word of people at that time had more power than the Word of God. It is the same today; many people do not value their lives. People often fear the word of other people rather than the Word of God, and many do not go to church because of fear of people judging them, instead of fearing God's judgment.

6 Now the birthday of Herod having been kept, the daughter of Herodias danced in the midst, and pleased Herod.

7 Wherefore he promised with an oath to give her whatever if she might ask.

8 And having been led forward by her mother, she says, Give me here on a platter the head of John the Baptist.

9 And the king was grieved; because of the oaths, and of those reclining with him, he commanded it to be given;

10 and he having sent, beheaded John in the prison.

11 And his head was brought on a board, and given to the girl, and she brought it to her mother.

12 And his disciples came, took up the body, and buried him; and having come they told Jesus.

Comments Matthew 14:12. The death of John was a turning point for some of John's disciples to come and follow the Lord Jesus. Because of John's teaching about the One (the Lord Jesus) who would come after him, some of John's disciples, whose hearts were open, became the Lord Jesus' followers.

13 And Jesus, having heard, withdrew from there by a boat to a desolate place by Himself. And the multitudes, having heard, followed Him on foot from the cities.

Comments Matthew 14:13. When the Lord Jesus heard about John's death, it made Him feel sad for His own disciples since His time to depart was approaching. The love the Lord has for His disciples makes the Lord feel sad to leave them. His concern is not for Himself but for His disciples. He does not worry for Himself but for those that belong to Him.

"And the multitudes, having heard, ..." People heard about the Lord Jesus' healing miracles, and they followed the Lord Jesus only to see the miracles He was doing. Hearing about the miracles the Lord Jesus is doing makes them curious but not believing. They follow because they want to see with their own eyes.

14 And He came forth, saw a great multitude, and felt compassion toward them, and healed their sick.

Comments Matthew 14:14. As the Word of God tells us, people walked from towns to follow the Lord Jesus, who Himself went by boat. When the Lord went ashore and saw the people, He had compassion toward them. Some were coming from far away, some were old, some were sick, and the Lord could see that many were hungry, tired, and weak. So, the Lord Jesus had compassion toward them, and He healed those who were sick.

15 And evening having come, the disciples came to Him, saying, The place is desolate, and the time is already passed; dismiss the multitudes, that having gone into the villages, they might buy for themselves food.

Comments Matthew 14:15. The Lord did not have money to buy food for the people, and that is why the disciples asked Him to send the people away to buy food for themselves. But the amount of people following the Lord was large

and there was not enough food in that area for all of them, even if they had money.

16 But Jesus said to them, They have no need to go away; you give them to eat.

17 And they say to Him, We have not here except five loaves, and two fishes.

18 And He said, Bring them here to Me.

Comments Matthew 14:16-18. In this passage, the Lord Jesus wants the disciples to come and gain faith. This faith experience is for their own good. When the time comes, the disciples will remember that they have seen the Lord multiply the little food to feed this large amount of people who came to follow the Lord Jesus. The Lord showed them that by believing all things are possible.

19 And having commanded the multitudes to lay down on the grass, having taken the five loaves and the two fishes, having looked up to the heaven, He blessed; and having broken, He gave the loaves to the disciples, and the disciples to the multitudes.

Comments Matthew 14:19. "... having looked up to the heaven, He blessed." In this passage, the Lord Jesus wants His disciples to notice the communication between Him and the Father. Always, the Lord Jesus seeks first the Father's advice and the Father's will, and in this situation, by the Father's will, the food is multiplied. The Lord Jesus always does according to the Father's will for big and small things. The Lord Jesus can multiply the food by Himself, but He seeks first the Father's will.

"And having broken, He gave the loaves to the disciples ..." It is believed that when the Lord Jesus broke the loaves, the small pieces He broke became new loaves in His hands. He placed the multiplied loaves in baskets in front of Him, and the disciples came, took the baskets, and distributed the bread to the people. In the same way, He multiplied the fish.

20 And they all ate and were filled; and they took up that being over and above of the broken pieces, twelve baskets full.

Comments Matthew 14:20. The key word of this verse is "filled" or "satisfied". When people eat until that point, in their hearts, they feel they have nothing else they need. Many started to follow the Lord Jesus for the food. They followed their human nature, which we could call "easy to get." In humans, the main concern is the food for the belly, not the food for the soul.

This is the weak point of us humans; our bellies can order us to do things. If there is food, there will be people to follow.

21 And those eating were about five thousand men, besides women and children.

Comments Matthew 14:21. The amount of people who followed the Lord in this place was very large. So, the word spread quickly that if you follow the Lord Jesus, you will get free food. And many followed the Lord for the wrong reason (see [John 6:25-27](#)).

22 And at once He urged the disciples to embark into the boat, and to go before Him to the other side, until He would dismiss the multitudes.

Comments Matthew 14:22. When the Lord dismissed the people, He did not just say, "Go, it is over." The Lord blessed them and reminded them to remember what He taught them and not to let His Word of God remain empty. They did not have the Bible as we do today, so the Lord encouraged them to talk together. By reading the Bible, the Word of God becomes alive for us. In the same way, by bringing the Word to talk together, the Word of God becomes alive.

23 And having dismissed the multitudes, He went up on the mountain by Himself to pray; when evening came, He was there alone.

Comments Matthew 14:23. In this passage, the Lord Jesus has shown to all people that with all the busy days people have, every day we need to have time alone with the Father to be far from all that makes the mind not be one with the Father. Only in prayer can the mind be one with the Father, and the Father needs to be in the center of our lives. We need to think of nothing, not even of ourselves, but the Father alone, because all things, even our own souls, belong to the Father, as He created all things. As it is shown here, even the Lord Jesus Himself needed to be alone with the Father. So, ask yourself, when did you have that you, all of you, belonged to the Father alone?

24 And the boat, now many stadia from the land, was being tossed by the waves, for the wind was contrary.

Comments Matthew 14:24. In this verse, there is a hidden meaning regarding life in the human way. The wind against the boat is like the troubles that come against our lives.

25 Now in the fourth watch of the night, He came to them, walking on the sea.

Comments Matthew 14:25. Similarly, in this verse, there is a hidden meaning. If you do not give up and if you try, as the boat goes against the wind, in life, if you do not give up and look for the Lord to help, He will come and save you. No trouble is too big for the Lord; the Lord can walk on it as He walked on the water. Above all troubles, you can feel the Lord.

26 And the disciples, having seen Him walking on the sea, were troubled, saying, It is a ghost! And they cried out from fear.

Comments Matthew 14:26. People, when they see the Lord Jesus walking on the water, can only think that it is impossible. The Lord Jesus' own disciples, who had seen His power, still doubted how a human can walk on the water. The first thing that comes to mind is doubt; no human can walk on the water. Even seeing miracles in front of us, doubt is the first problem for everyone.

27 Now at once Jesus spoke to them, saying, Take courage! It is I, fear not.

Comments Matthew 14:27. The Lord Jesus answered fast to ensure the disciples did not build much doubt. They needed His firm answer for what will come ahead of them. The walking on water happened to strengthen their faith and make them think that the Lord Jesus is more than a human. They needed this light.

28 Now answering Him, Peter said, Lord, if be Thou, command me to come to Thee upon the waters.

Comments Matthew 14:28. In this passage, although Peter may have doubted his eyes but did not doubt the power of the Lord Jesus. The eyes can be deceived, but the heart is the link to the truth. Peter's walking on the water proved to the disciples that the Lord was indeed not in the spirit. They saw Peter walking on the water for a while as well. Peter walked too, not only the Lord.

29 And He said, Come. And having went down from the boat, Peter walked upon the waters and came to Jesus.

Comments Matthew 14:29. This was not just a command alone; it was also an invitation from the Lord for the disciples to have faith and believe in Him. Do not leave room for doubt. The proof of what can be done by faith is shown in Peter's action. That is what a normal human can do if you believe: you can walk on the water, not only the Lord Himself, but you can also. The power of faith is strong.

30 Now seeing the wind, he was terrified, and beginning to sink, he cried out, saying, Lord, save me.

Comments Matthew 14:30. Normally, if there are no troubles, we do not come to the Lord. When Peter saw trouble, the first thing he did, he cried out to the Lord. But we need to take note that Peter said, "Lord save me," which has a deeper meaning than saying, "Lord help me." As Peter walked on water, he did not see trouble, but the wind and the waves became the problem, and his doubt came and made him sink. Doubt is in our human nature. In this passage, Peter doubted even when he himself was walking on water. But here, Peter showed us that the One to call upon when we have problems is the Lord Jesus. Everyone can come to the Lord when problems arise.

31 And immediately Jesus stretched forth the hand, took hold of him, and says to him, little faith, why did you doubt?

Comments Matthew 14:31. "Immediately Jesus stretched forth the hand ..." Here, we have another confirmation that there is no space and time for the Lord Jesus. In Peter's eyes, the distance between him and the Lord was far. But when he asked to be saved, the Lord was right away in front of him. The Lord Jesus walked the distance on the water at the beginning, but when Peter cried out, the Lord folded (bent) the space and time and reached immediately to Peter and gave His hand to save him.

"Little faith, why did you doubt?" This shows that the Lord Jesus can see through the hearts and souls of people. What is in our heart and soul, the Lord can read everything. The heart and the soul of man are like an open book for the Lord.

32 And they having gone up into the boat, the wind ceased.

Comments Matthew 14:32. In this verse it shows that the Lord Jesus is the Lord of all. He is not only the Lord over the humans, but also, He is the Lord above the winds and the waves of the sea. All things are created through Him. He is the Master of all. The Lord took Peter by the hand, lifted him up and they both walked together on the water back to the boat. And, when they entered into the boat the wind ceased, and the waves calmed down.

33 And those in the boat worshipped Him, saying, Truly, Thou are the Son of God!

Comments Matthew 14:33. The Lord allowed this sea storm tribulation to come upon the disciples so their faith would be strengthened. The disciples needed to see the Lord Jesus walking on water and calming the storm. They

were all humans, and these miracles convinced them that, indeed, the Lord Jesus is the Son of God. This belief prepared them for what they would be facing in the future.

34 And having crossed over, they came to the land, to Gennesaret.

Comments Matthew 14:34. Here, Gennesaret refers to a small town. This shows that the Lord has compassion for people in a small community. The Lord's love and compassion are not for big towns only. This was a poor area, and the Lord went into this kind of area not to look for the rich but for the poor and hopeless. Even today, the Lord supports missionaries to go first to the needy areas, not only to places that have everything.

35 And the people of that place having recognized Him, sent into all that surrounding region, and brought to Him all those being sick,

Comments Matthew 14:35. "And the people of that place having recognized Him." It is believed that prior to this event, the Lord Jesus had been in the city of Gennesaret, taught in their synagogue, and performed miracles. That is why people knew Him well. Also, some of the men from Gennesaret had seen the Lord Jesus in other towns, and some had heard about His miraculous healings (see also [Luke 7:16-17](#)).

36 and they begged Him that they might only touch the fringe of His garment; and as many as touched were cured.

Comments Matthew 14:35-36. "... and as many as touched were cured." The way that messages were carried in those times was by word of mouth. People talking spread faster than the wind. What the Lord has done cannot be hidden. Many who needed help searched for the Lord Jesus. The word had been spread out that if you only touch His garment or walk into His steps, you will be healed. They all considered the Lord Jesus to be a mighty prophet.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

- 1) Doubt and fear are the enemies of our faith. Troubles will come, but when they come, we need to know that the Lord Jesus is the One to call upon for help. Peter called upon the Lord to save him and said, "Lord save me," we should do the same.
- 2) The Lord Jesus is the Lord of all, and He is the Son of God. We need to think of

the world to come, not the world we are in. The world we are in will perish, and all things that are in it will age, but the world to come is eternal. Come to the Lord Jesus for eternal life, not for the perishing life. 3) It is important to know that John was the messenger of the Lord, and he was sent to preach repentance, and that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God, and He is the One that brings us to the Father and gives us salvation. 4) The Lord showed mercy and compassion to the needy people of Gennesaret. It is the same today; the Lord supports missionaries to go to the poorer regions first and then to the wealthier places.

Chapter 15

SUMMARY

This chapter highlights the contrast between the proud and the humble: the proud in themselves, the Pharisees and the scribes, who call themselves righteous, versus the humble ones, the poor, the oppressed, and the Canaanite woman, who accept that they are nobody. We see two extremes: on one end, the Pharisees and scribes, who are the leaders of the house of Israel, accuse the Lord Jesus of many things, and on the other end, a simple Canaanite woman who is not part of the house of Israel but comes and acknowledges the Lord Jesus as the Son of God and begs Him for help. Here, we see that the Lord grants mercy to anyone who has a humble heart and simple faith in the Lord. The Lord Jesus has something important to say and show to each group of people in this chapter. 1) The Pharisees and scribes. The Lord Jesus confronts the Pharisees and scribes for breaking the commandments of God and calls them hypocrites and blind guides, saying, "You have made void the commandment of God because of your tradition." 2) The disciples. The Lord Jesus teaches His disciples at every opportunity. He plainly tells His disciples that the Pharisees and scribes are blind leaders, and they should leave them alone and not follow them: "Let them alone; they are blind guides." 3) Multitudes of poor and suffering people. The Lord Jesus and the disciples minister to large crowds. The Lord Jesus shows His mercy and compassion on them by healing and feeding them: "I have compassion on the multitude, because they continue with Me already three days and have nothing to eat; and I am not willing to send them away not eating, lest they faint on the way." 4) The Canaanite woman. This woman shows great faith and is humble in her heart and spirit. In conversing with her, the Lord Jesus says, "I was not sent except to the lost sheep of the house of Israel," implying that He went to this region to call His lost sheep. However, the Lord also shows that His love is extended to the Gentiles, for the few honest hearts who glorify the Lord. Thus, the Gentiles have been included in His mission.

1 Then there come to Jesus from Jerusalem Pharisees and scribes, saying,

Comments Matthew 15:1. The evil tried to stop the Lord's plan, and they used whoever was willing to do the work for them. Here, they wanted to

disturb the work of the Lord, and they used the Pharisees and the scribes for this task.

2 Why do Thy disciples transgress the tradition of the elders? For they do not wash the hands when they eat bread.

Comments Matthew 15:2. The Pharisees and the scribes used traditions to control people. That has been the way of teaching since previous generations, which they must keep. Here, we see that the traditions of man control the order of God. The man's commandments or God's commandments: these people (Pharisees and Scribes) intentionally used man's traditions, proclaiming them as God's given commandments. They used man's order above God's order just to please men, not God. This was wrong to do, and it goes from generation to generation. That is why the Lord Jesus came to abolish the Old Law.

3 And answering He said to them, Why do you also transgress the commandment of God on account of your tradition?

4 For God said, Honor your father and your mother; and the one speaking evil of father and mother must end in death.

Comments Matthew 15:3-4. Here, the Lord Jesus quotes from the book of Exodus: [Exodus 20:12. Honor your father and your mother, that your days may be long in the land which Jehovah your God gives you. Exodus 21:17. And he that curses his father or his mother, shall surely be put to death.]

People look at their father and mother as someone who will never harm them because they know their parents love and care for them. Then, the first ones whom they take advantage of and want to mistreat are the parents. But when we are babies, our parents are the ones who take care of us. So, when our parents are old, it is our duty to take care of them. This is the way the Lord God structured human life, which is why it is important to honor our parents, and because the Lord God gave this commandment. It is the same towards God. Because the Lord's love and mercy are great, and He is slow to anger, people take advantage of His love and disobey His commandments.

5 However, you say, whoever may say to the father or the mother, That by which you might be profited by me is given to God;

6 he might not honor his father. And you have made void the commandment of God because of your tradition.

Comments Matthew 15:5-6. This would be a promise by anyone to give, where the scribes and Pharisees would follow on it, and they would have a portion from the promise. If the person who made the promise did not want to be kicked out of the synagogue, he must fulfill his promise; but this was not God's doing; it was man's doing. If you promise God something, the Lord will work into your heart to fulfill your promise. Then, you will give from your heart to God, and you will also honor your parents. But when they did not want to honor their parents, they used God as a way out of honoring their parents. Instead of helping their parents, they used God to take that benefit for themselves. By devoting the portion to God, they thought they honored God, and at the same time, they profited themselves.

But, if you cannot honor your parents who love you on this earth, and you can see, then how can you honor God, whom you do not see? The Bible shows in other places that if you do not honor the ones that love you and you can see on this earth, then God is nothing for you (see, for example, 1 [John 4:20-21](#)). So, do not provide help to the parents just for show off and to be praised by people; there is no reward in heaven for doing this; honoring God by show off is an empty benefit.

7 Hypocrites! Rightly Isaiah prophesied concerning you, saying,

8 This people honor Me with the lips; However, their heart is kept far from Me.

9 But in vain they worship Me, Teaching instructions the precepts of men.

Comments Matthew 15:3-9. This passage has a deeper meaning. The portion that you think would bring benefit to you by giving it to God, if, in fact, you would give it for helping your parents, that portion would be considered in God's eyes as given to God, since it is God's commandment to honor your parents. They used God to dishonor their parents, which was the opposite of what God is teaching. God gave this commandment to honor your parents. But they reasoned that if they offer the portion to God instead, they would benefit for themselves as well, but if they give the portion to their parents, they don't benefit since the parents will use this gift, which is false.

10 And having call to Him the multitude, He said to them, Hear, and understand:

11 Not that which enters into the mouth defiles the man; but that which proceeds out of the mouth, this defiles the man.

Comments Matthew 15:11. See verses 16 to 20.

12 Then came the disciples saying to Him, Do Thou know that the Pharisees were offended, having heard the saying?

13 But He answered saying, Every plant which My Heavenly Father planted not shall be rooted up.

Comments Matthew 15:13. "Every plant which My Heavenly Father planted not shall be rooted up" refers to those souls that have given themselves to the darkness. These are disobedient and misled souls who choose to follow the darkness rather than the light, and this will show through their deeds. But the Lord gives every soul a chance for repentance on this earth through His Word because the Word is the true light, and this is the last chance for every soul. Remember that in the end times, the Word of God will judge them.

14 Let them alone; they are blind guides. And if the blind lead the blind, both will fall into a pit.

Comments Matthew 15:14. "Blind guides" here refers to Pharisees and scribes. For these days, the blind guides refer to those leaders of the church who do not ask for the guidance of the Holy Spirit to lead the people but use human doctrine to guide the house of God astray (see, for example, 2 Peter 3:16).

"The blind leads the blind." For these days, the blind people who are led refer to the people who come to the church to look for excitement, but not to worship the Lord from their hearts.

"Pit" or "ditch" refers to the palm of the evil one. In the spiritual world, the blind people refer to those souls that choose to follow the fallen angels instead of the true light of God.

15 Then answering Peter said to Him, Explain to us the parable.

16 And He said, Are you also still without understanding?

17 Perceive you not, that everything entering into the mouth passes into the belly, and is cast out into the draught?

18 However, the things going forth out of the mouth come forth out of the heart; and these defile the man.

19 For out of the heart come forth evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, slander.

20 These are what defile the person; but to eat with unwashed hands does not defile the person.

21 And Jesus went out from there, withdrawing into the district of Tyre and Sidon.

Comments Matthew 15:21. The Lord goes to this region to look for His people (see verse 24), who were trapped among the pagans. But even among pagans, there are souls that are seeking for the mercy of the Lord, and here we see the story of the Canaanite woman. Regardless of where they are, the Lord will go; even just for one soul, the Lord will go. The cry of the lost souls in the world was calling for the Lord Jesus. The Lord Jesus came into the world for this reason: to save the lost. The Canaanite woman had a good heart toward the name of the Lord, and she went and spread the news about the Lord. The lost sheep of Israel in this region could hear her story and believe in the coming of the Lord, and separate themselves out.

22 And behold, a Canaanite woman from that region, having come out, was crying, saying, Have mercy on me, Lord, Son of David; my daughter is grievously possessed by a demon.

Comments Matthew 15:22. This woman is humble with her heart and her spirit, not just with the action. She had not met the Lord until now, but she had heard about the Lord, and her heart was already convicted; she readily believed what she heard; she had blind faith. Here, she did not come to ask but to beg for the mercy of the Lord, and mercy has been given to her because of her sincere heart. When reading about this Canaanite woman, we need to ask ourselves, "Do we love our children to pray and beg for mercy for them from the Lord as this Canaanite woman did, whatever the situation may be?"

23 And He did not answer her a word. And His disciples came begging Him, saying, Send her away; for she cries after us.

24 And answering He said, I was not sent except to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.

Comments Matthew 15:24. This verse tells the purpose of the Lord Jesus' travelling to the region of Tyre and Sidon. In this region, there were Jews as well, and the Lord went there to search for them. They were trapped in their own thoughts, which led them to put themselves down. They forgot to whom they belonged, and their minds became weak, and they started to fear the things humans made. Because they forgot who created them, so many have died in the dark of their thoughts. The Lord has given the duty to parents to

teach their children who they are, but the parents have failed them. The Lord's mercy has come for His children first, until the right time for the Gentiles will come. The number from the House of Israel must first be filled.

25 But having come, she worshipped Him, saying, Lord, help me!

Comments Matthew 15:25. This woman came with a heart that admitted, by kneeling and worshipping, who the Lord Jesus is. Kneeling and worshipping are signs of humbleness and acceptance of the authority of the Lord. She knelt down in humbleness and paid respect to her Lord, and that is why the mercy of the Lord had been poured on her.

26 And answering, He said, It is not proper to take the children's bread and throw it to the dogs.

Comments Matthew 15:26. "Children" here refers to the Jews. The Lord Jesus came for the Jews first, and the mercy of the Lord must be poured down on the Jews first. But also, all those whose hearts are open will receive a portion of His mercy.

"Bread" here refers to the Lord's mercy and grace. The grace of God has come down according to the promise of the Father to the Jews first. But the Lord Jesus Himself is an extension of love and mercy to the Gentiles as well, by the will of the Father, to save the whole world through Him.

"The dogs" here refers to the Gentile people; however, do not be offended that the Gentiles are referred to as "dogs" because the dogs eat straight from the master's table.

27 But she said, Yes, Lord; for even the dogs eat of the crumbs which fall from their masters' table.

Comments Matthew 15:27. In this passage, this woman was not offended; instead, she was submissive and humble. By acknowledging that the dogs eat "the crumbs which fall from their masters' table," she acknowledged the Lord Jesus as her Master and Lord and that she was willing to stay under the authority of the Lord.

28 Then answering, Jesus said to her, O woman, great is your faith! Be it to you even as you desire. And her daughter was healed from that hour.

Comments Matthew 15:28. The Canaanite woman is an example of humbleness, faithfulness, and love. She was not just humble in heart but in spirit as well. The humble in heart are the ones who come and expect to

receive worldly blessings from the Lord. The humble in spirit are the ones who are willing first to give love and worship to the Lord. So, she worshiped the Lord from her heart and expected healing for her daughter; she believed that the Lord could do the healing.

29 And having departed from there, Jesus went along the sea of Galilee; and having gone up on the mountain, He sat there.

30 And approached Him great multitudes, having with them lame, crippled, blind, mute, and many others, and they placed them down at His feet; and He healed them;

Comments Matthew 15:29-30. In this paragraph, it shows what people have heard about the Lord Jesus, and it shows that they believe that the Lord can do what they have been hearing. It was not easy for people to carry the sick to the Lord on the mountain, and the Lord had mercy on them.

31 insomuch that the multitude marveled, seeing mute speaking, crippled whole, and lame walking, and blind seeing; and they glorified the God of Israel.

Comments Matthew 15:30-31. Here, it is a confirmation for the majority of people; they heard about the Lord Jesus' miracles, but now a multitude of people have seen them. Now the word about the Lord Jesus will spread wider because not a few have seen, but many people have seen. The glory of God has been witnessed through the multitude of people, and the word will spread speedily that God has come down among humans. God does not sit on His throne watching, but God has come down and witnessed the suffering of people, and He will show mercy and carry all their suffering (see [Matthew 8:17](#)). However, they misunderstood the mission of the Lord Jesus on earth. The Lord Jesus did not come to take away their suffering but to give them the good news. The Lord Jesus takes part in their suffering and knows what humans go through. Humans will still face suffering, but in their hearts, they can be joyful that God knows about their suffering. We are to look for the world to come, not for this earthly world; come and join and be part of the next world, where all the suffering is gone.

32 Then Jesus having called His disciples, said, I have compassion on the multitude, because they continue with Me already three days and have nothing to eat; and I am not willing to send them away not eating, lest they faint on the way.

Comments Matthew 15:32. Q: Were the feedings of multitudes described in the Gospel of Matthew different events happening in different places? A: The logical answer is that there was a gap of time between the feeding miracles and

a gap of places. This miracle here is not in the same place and time as the one from Chapter 14. Only on a few occasions did the Lord Jesus stop longer in one place. The purpose of the Lord Jesus' coming to earth was to preach the Word of God, and the Word cannot be preached in one spot only. He traveled all the time. This here was a different place, a different area, but the Bible shows that the speed the human tongue can travel is faster than we can imagine. Before the Lord Jesus reached this place, the word about Him had already been there to make the hearts of people wait for Him. The Lord has come here to confirm and strengthen the good news that God has come among humans. Because the Holy Spirit had not been given yet, the Lord used the human tongue (word of mouth) to spread the good news.

"I am not willing to send them away not eating ..." This passage clearly shows the compassion and mercy the Lord has for people. The Lord's mercy is always there for those who follow Him (including us). He was unwilling to send the people away until they had something to eat.

33 And the disciples say to Him, From where to us so many loaves in a desert place, as to feed so great a multitude?

Comments Matthew 15:33. Q: How was it possible that the disciples forgot about the previous feeding miracle? A: Doubt is a human weakness, and when you put too many people together, if one has doubt, then someone else will start to have doubt as well. The surroundings played tricks on the eyes. When the surroundings change, fear and doubt come. Also, when miracles come often, it makes the human heart believe that it is so easy to get whatever the heart wants, even if the need is not there. Then, laziness plays in the human heart, and doubt will come. Laziness makes us ask things from the Lord that He will not do, and then we develop doubt when a miracle situation is really there. It is hard for us humans to believe the miracle of multiplying a bit of food to feed such a multitude of people, so doubt comes first. Most likely, the disciples expected the Lord to change something else, such as rocks, into food, rather than multiply food from food.

34 And Jesus says to them, How many loaves do you have? And they said, Seven, and a few small fishes.

Comments Matthew 15:34. Q: One might ask why the Lord needed the loaves and the fish. A: The fact that the Lord used bread and fish in different amounts each time He performed the multiplication of food miracles does not have any hidden or deep meaning. This miracle was simply a miracle of the

multiplication of food, and the Lord needed food to multiply it. Bread and fish were common foods and clean by the law of God; that is why the Lord multiplied these elements to be food to feed the multitudes. The amount of bread and fish does not matter to the Lord in order to multiply the food. The food multiplication miracles were done for the disciples and the chosen ones among the people to show them that the Lord Jesus is the Lord over life on earth as well, and to strengthen their faith. These miracles will become the talk among them and will lift up their faith in times of trouble when the Lord Jesus will not be physically with them.

35 And He commanded the multitude to sit down on the ground;

36 having taken the seven loaves and the fishes and having given thanks, He broke, and gave to the disciples, and the disciples to the multitudes.

Comments Matthew 15:34-36. Here, in this place, the Lord multiplied the bread and the fish and fed the multitude of people in the same way as He did in Matthew 14 (see [Comments Matthew 14:19](#)). The small pieces of bread and fish the Lord Jesus broke became whole new loaves and whole new fishes in His hands. Then the Lord Jesus placed them in the baskets in front of Him, and the disciples took the baskets filled with food and distributed the food to the people who were sitting down on the ground.

"And having given thanks." The Lord Jesus is God of all things. All things were created through Him, but still, the Lord Jesus gives thanks to the Father for giving all things to humans and for Himself to be on earth. The Lord has shown His disciples that He always gives thanks to the Father, who is the Creator of all things. Our God is God of Three in One: God the Father, God the Son (Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit.

37 And all ate and were satisfied; and they took up that being over and above of the broken pieces, seven baskets full.

Comments Matthew 15:37. "Were satisfied." Satisfied or filled is eating until you cannot eat anymore (see [Comments Matthew 14:20](#)).

"Seven baskets full." Here, we have simply seven baskets of leftover food. There is no hidden meaning for the number seven here or twelve in Chapter 14. People use these numbers to make a doctrine. However, these baskets are simply leftover food. The Lord gave enough food for all who were there, and the leftover food just shows the abundance of food that the Lord multiplied.

38 And those eating were four thousand men, besides women and children.

Comments Matthew 15:38. The meaning here is in the verse itself. But we should try to make a mental picture of the large amount of people that the Lord ministered to during these three days. We should think about how hard it was for the Lord and the disciples to go around four thousand plus people, pray, heal, and teach them. The Lord and the disciples probably had no sleep, no time to eat, and no rest.

39 And having dismissed the multitudes, He entered into the boat and came to the region of Magadan.

Comments Matthew 15:39. The Lord Jesus did not just say goodbye to the people. The Lord reminded them to remember what they had seen and heard in these few days, and to cherish the time they had spent with the Lord.

"... and came to the region of Magadan (or Magdala)." This verse shows that the Lord kept going, and that is the purpose for which the Lord came to earth. He will keep going to places where people have not traveled to give everybody the light. That is the purpose for Him to come to earth, to give the light and show the way to all humans.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) Glorify the Father and honor Him from your heart, not just with your lips or for the sake of traditions. 2) Do not be willing to work against the Lord Jesus; pray and watch so you do not follow the doctrines of men, as there are many false teachings in the world. 3) Pray at all times, repent, and watch your heart so you do not become defiled; always go back to the teachings of the Bible. 4) Showing compassion for the poor and suffering is the heart of our Lord Jesus. 5) Love your children and pray honestly for them with a humble heart and spirit, and the mercy of the Lord will be given to you. 6) Pray so you understand when it is time for miracles and when it is not. Check your heart for the mercy of the Lord, because the Lord will speak first in your heart when it is time for a miracle to come.

Chapter 16

SUMMARY

In this chapter, the Lord Jesus interacts with the Pharisees and Sadducees, teaches His disciples, and asks them the ultimate question that each Christian should ask, "But who do you say Me to be?" The chapter concludes with the Lord Jesus teaching about the importance of life in the world to come. Four major points can be summarized in this chapter. 1) Humans cannot interpret the signs of the times; only God can. The only sign given to that generation and us is the Lord Jesus' death on the cross and resurrection in the body. As Jonah was kept in the dark for three days, the Lord Jesus will be in the dark for three days, where He will minister to the lost souls of the Jews. 2) Be aware of traditions. The Lord Jesus warns us not to mingle the teachings of the Word of Life with those of humans, so that our faith will not become contaminated. 3) The Lord Jesus is "the Christ, the Son of the Living God." The Father reveals for the first time to the human mind the true light about the Lord Jesus that He is "the Christ, the Son of the Living God." Peter, unlike John the Baptist, followed the Lord Jesus, and he was the first among the disciples to receive this revelation. From this point on, this light will be shared with others. 4) The Lord Jesus promises the Bible to the church. The Lord Jesus will give to the church the Bible, which is the key to the Kingdom of Heaven. His church is built on the truth the Father revealed to Peter. This truth is the rock foundation of the church, "and the gates of Hades will not prevail against it." The rock is the truth about the Lord Jesus that He is "the Christ, the Son of the Living God."

1 And the Pharisees and Sadducees having approached, tempting, asked Him to show them a sign from heaven.

Comments Matthew 16:1. This verse is simply about believing or not believing; there is nothing more to it than this. If you believe there is no further need to see any miracles in front of your eyes. Believing is by the heart and not by the eyes. Faith comes by the heart first, not by the eyes. The Pharisees and Sadducees wanted to test the Lord Jesus, to show people that the Lord Jesus is nobody, that they are the only ones who can interpret the times, and that only they alone can understand what God is doing.

2 And answering, He said to them, When it is evening, you say, Fair weather, for the sky is red.

3 And in the morning, A storm today, for the sky is red, gloomy. Indeed, you know how to discern the appearance of the sky, but the signs of the times you are not able.

Comments Matthew 16:2-3. Humans always make guesses; they always use human interpretation, as that is God's doing. For example, we interpret the meaning of the red sky, but who made that red sky? We make an interpretation of why the sky is red, but we forget that the Lord is the one who made it red. We forget to think about who made all things. First, we must acknowledge the Creator's hand in everything.

"... but the signs of the times you are not able." This saying simply tells us that humans cannot interpret the signs of the times since only the Lord can. We do not need a sign, and we should not waste our time interpreting because the times are changing according to the Father's will.

4 An evil and adulterous generation seeks a sign; but a sign will not be given to it, if not the sign of Jonah. And having left them, He departed.

Comments Matthew 16:4. "An evil and adulterous generation ..." This word is a fitting word for them. They have seen the miracles the Lord Jesus has done so far, but they still ask for a sign. The Pharisees and Sadducees could not understand the meaning of the Lord Jesus being among humans, so they asked for a sign from heaven. They are darkened and blind; another generation has not seen the miracles, yet they believe, so their generation has a greater sin. Even for us, we read about the miracles the Lord has done, which we have not seen, but the Word of God has spoken to us, and we believe.

"... but a sign will not be given to it, if not the sign of Jonah." As the prophet Jonah was kept in the dark for three days, the Lord Jesus will be kept in the dark of the earth for three days. But, in that time, the Lord's mercy was extended to the dark side; it is written in the Bible that the dark has heard the Lord Jesus' voice (see 1 Peter 3:18-20; Ephesians 4:8-9).

The Bible never talks about Hades in detail because it is not for us to know these things in detail. The Lord gave a chance to those in the darkness (in Hades) to be saved; to those souls that were on earth before the Lord came to earth, who did not have a chance to hear the good news of the Gospel. During those three days when the Lord Jesus was in the grave, He Himself ministered to those lost souls. The Lord Jesus ministered only to the lost souls of His

chosen people. He did not go there to make disciples; He just went to bring the lost souls into Abraham's bosom place; the souls that never had a chance to be saved before. At the same time, during these three days, the Lord Jesus also went to Abraham's bosom place, a place of waiting for those who believed in God but didn't have a chance to hear the good news. Even these souls need to hear the good news because there is only one way to be saved: through faith in the Lord Jesus.

Abraham's bosom place is a place of waiting for the souls that have faith in God and have departed from earth before the coming of the Lord Jesus. The souls of the believers who die in the Lord Jesus also have their own place of waiting.

5 And the disciples having come to the other side, they forgot to take bread.

6 And Jesus said to them, Watch and beware of the leaven of the Pharisees and Sadducees.

7 And they debated among themselves, saying, Because we took no bread.

8 But Jesus, perceiving it, said, Little faith, why do you reason among yourselves because you have no bread?

9 Do you not yet understand, nor remember the five loaves of the five thousand, and how many baskets you gathered?

10 Nor the seven loaves of the four thousand, and how many baskets you gathered?

11 How do you not understand that I did not speak to you concerning bread?

Moreover, beware of the leaven of the Pharisees and Sadducees.

Comments Matthew 16:5-11. There is no hidden meaning in the disciples' answer. The disciples did not think further about the words the Lord Jesus spoke; they were just thinking about them, forgetting to bring bread. The disciples were simple people, with simple minds, but pure hearts.

12 Then they understood that He did not say to beware of the leaven of bread, but of the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees.

Comments Matthew 16:12. Here, the Lord is teaching us to be aware of traditions; as life goes on, the tradition-based lifestyle teaching becomes mingled with human traditions and not at the same level as the teaching of old times (according to the teaching received by the prophets). Do not mingle the teaching of humans with the teaching of the Word of Life. If you mingle the

old teaching (received by the prophets), the first leaf that comes out in your faith is not opened but curled, and your understanding will not grow.

13 Now, when Jesus came into the district of Caesarea Philippi, He asked His disciples, saying, Who do people say that the Son of Man to be?

Comments Matthew 16:13. In verses 13 to 15, the Lord Jesus asks His disciples two questions. The Lord asks them these questions to make the disciples think about who the Lord Jesus is in their hearts. Until this point, His disciples had never given a thought to who they called Lord and Teacher or what He really meant to them. In the same way, the Lord also wants to ask us Christians the same question: Who is the Lord Jesus for us? This question is a test of faith not only for the disciples at that time but also for all those who believe and follow today. As the Bible tells us, we are not servants but brothers and sisters in the Lord, and we have the same Father and only One Father. Let's not forget who we are! Don't forget who you are in the Lord's eyes! And do not take the name of the Lord in vain!

14 And they said, Some indeed John the Baptist; but others, Elijah; but others, Jeremiah, or one of the prophets.

Comments Matthew 16:14. This verse shows that the Holy Spirit has not yet been given. People could still recognize the power, authority, and holiness of the Lord Jesus, but they couldn't recognize the Lord Jesus as the Son of God. But the time was near, and the Holy Spirit would soon be magnified because the hearts of people began to seek the truth.

15 He says to them, But who do you say Me to be?

16 Now Simon Peter answering said, Thou are the Christ, the Son of the Living God.

Comments Matthew 16:15-16. The true light about Christ has been revealed starting with one disciple, and that light will be shared to others. Because of his heart, the truth has been revealed to Peter. That is what the Father is looking for, a clean heart that is willing to obey and glorify God: that is a gift. By the mercy of the Father, the knowledge and understanding about Christ have been given at this time to only one of the disciples. Because of the heart, the truth has been revealed to Peter.

17 Then, Jesus answering said to him, Blessed are you, Simon Bar-Jonah! For flesh and blood has not revealed it to you, but My Father in the heavens.

Comments Matthew 16:17. This verse is for us to link Peter with the prophet Jonah himself. As Jonah in the belly of the fish has experienced rebirth to save his life, Peter has experienced a new birth at this time. Peter has been reborn by the living Word of the Lord. This new birth is the starting point for revealing the kingdom of heaven to humans, when the Father revealed the Son, the Lord Jesus, through the human mind. It is a sign to show the believers that the Father's mercy has come down; humans will be blessed with the Holy Spirit. This blessing is proof and confirmation of how much the Father loves humans. Simon Bar-Jonah refers to those who know and recognize their sins by the spirit of the person, not by the flesh. Simon Bar-Jonah refers to the spiritual world: Jonah was in the dark, but his spirit saw the light; so Peter did exactly the same. Peter was darkened in the mind, but by the Lord's mercy, he received the true light. To understand by the spirit, you do not see what you are doing, but you know in the heart what you are doing; use the heart to justify, not the eye.

18 Moreover, I also say to you, that you are Peter, and upon this rock I will build My church; and the gates of Hades will not prevail against it.

Comments Matthew 16:18. This verse refers to the believer's faith.

"You are Peter, and upon this rock" indicates that Peter is the first one to whom the Father revealed who the Lord Jesus is, and on this rock of knowledge, the church will be built on. After the Lord Jesus fulfilled the Father's will, this knowledge that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God will keep going on, and it will build more people's faith in the Son of God, the Holy One. At this time, Peter's faith had been established; he could die for what he believed.

"Upon this rock" refers to the truth that Peter received. The rock is the truth about the Lord Jesus that He is "the Christ, the Son of the Living God."

"I will build My church" means that the Lord Jesus will build His church on the truth that Peter received, which is the rock, the foundation of the church.

"And the gates of Hades will not prevail against it" means that the gates of hell have no power to stop the Lord Jesus from building His church. The Lord Jesus opened the gate of the heavens (see [Matthew 3:16](#)) and put the seal of His blood on the gates of hell when He was there (at the gates) during the three days (see 1 Peter 3:18-20). The Lord Jesus put the seal on the gates of hell, which is the blood of the Lord Jesus, and it is a forbidden seal; no evil can touch this seal or remove it (see Exodus 12:13). All His children have the

salvation seal of the Lamb of God on them. The gates of Hades will never open for those who have the salvation seal of the Lamb of God on them. The salvation seal is put on a believer's heart when the person believes and gives his heart to the Lord Jesus, and then goes and is baptized in the water (complete baptism: heart and water, meaning soul and body). The believer's responsibility is to keep this seal by staying in faith, studying the Word of God, and keeping the Word in the heart until the end of life on this earth. If you have the Word of God in your heart, you have a shield of protection.

Additional Comments on Water Baptism and the Baptism in the Holy Spirit

Regardless of which comes first, the baptism in the Holy Spirit or water baptism, all believers must be baptized in water to complete the transformation of a person in the body and the spirit. The sign of the Holy Spirit's baptism must show according to the Bible, and we know in our spirit about this act (see [Acts 2:2-4](#)). The miraculous gift of speaking in tongues is the confirmation that the human spirit has joined the salvation seal. Speaking out loud, one word or a few words, in a tongue is the sign of the Holy Spirit baptism (see [Comments John 1:33](#)). Speaking more in tongues is a gift that comes after, and everyone can get this gift of speaking in tongues by praying and asking for the gift from the Lord. This miraculous gift of tongues is given to everyone; just listen to the very small voice inside your heart. Many are being baptized in water but ignore the small voice of the Lord; it's not that the Holy Spirit doesn't come to them. He comes to each heart with a small voice, but many have refused to listen, which is why not many people speak in tongues. However, a true believer must believe in the water baptism and the Holy Spirit baptism (see [Comments John 3:5](#), and [Comments John 1:33](#)).

Based on these comments, after a believer receives the Holy Spirit, the evil one cannot make the believer reject the Lord, but they can still trick the believer. They can make you believe that the Lord left you, and then you yourself reject the Lord or become angry with the Lord; then you can grieve the Holy Spirit (see [Ephesians 4:30](#)). But remember, the Bible is clear in telling us that the Lord will never leave us nor forsake us (see [Deuteronomy 31:6-8](#), [Hebrews 13:5-6](#), [Psalm 55:22](#)). By the will of the Lord, the gates of hell will never open for a person that has the faith (salvation) seal. Therefore, keep in mind that the Lord always gives a way out for everybody, and He will judge by the heart of the person.

As a note, the criminal on the cross did not receive the salvation seal by baptism in water, but he received the salvation seal of the Lord Jesus' Word on his soul. The Lord baptized him by His Word (see [Luke 23:43](#)).

19 I will give to you the keys of the kingdom of the heavens; and whatever you might bind on the earth will be bound in the heavens; and whatever you might loose on the earth will be loosed in the heavens.

Comments Matthew 16:19. The saying "I will give to you the keys of the kingdom of the heavens" tells us that the Lord Jesus gives the keys of the kingdom of heaven to the church of God. The key is this: the Bible is the key to the kingdom of God.

"Whatever you might bind on the earth will be bound in the heavens." The churches of this earth make rules (agreements) for themselves, but there is a Holy Church in the heavens (elect angels) that is gathering in the Holy Temple by the will of the Father. Those who are gathering in the Holy Temple receive orders straight from the Father. Those will be binding some work that has been done on earth, and it will be bound in heaven as well. It "has been done" because the work is not finished yet; it is still going on. The work up in the Holy Temple will never end until the Lord returns. However, only the Bible can bind things on earth and be bound in heaven. The rules of the Bible bind people on earth and in heaven. We have One Lord and God and worship only One God; the church on earth and the church in the heavens have the same God and abide by the Word of God that is written in the Bible. The Bible contains all the rules for our lives, and it is the rule for life on earth and the life in the heavens: this is the Holy Word.

"Bind" refers to agreements or rules. Making an agreement in the name of the Lord, it will be bound on earth and heaven as well, but that agreement must always go with the Bible to be bound in both places. If it is against the Bible, that agreement is not from the Lord. Every rule set up to control the people in the church must be based on the Bible's rules and orders. But people come in the name of the Lord, but not with the Lord. Watch out: many churches create rules by using the name of the Lord, but not with the Lord. Examples of binding would be things we have seen, such as the prayer chain. The prayer chain keeps people praying one after another and enforces unity in the church; the Bible has unity. Also, the fast for offering praise to the Lord gathers people together to make a fast for one purpose: unity in praising the Lord. When there is such an agreement in a church on earth, then the angels in the Holy Church

will follow and bring this offering directly to the Father. Each promise (agreement) has its own smell and look, which the Father enjoys, and the Father will bind it in the heavens. The Father will not just look over it but feel it, and the Father will bind it in the heavens for that action; it comes up to the Father as an offering.

"Loosed" in this context means it is loosed from human rules. For example, in some places, women cannot wear certain colors. The Lord never set such rules about colors. The dress is to cover the body; the color has no meaning. This is a freedom the Lord gives to people. Loosen this on earth, and it will be loosed in heaven as well.

20 Then instructed He the disciples that they should say to no one that He is the Christ.

Comments Matthew 16:20. The apostles were not allowed to tell who the Lord Jesus was, so the things that were to happen to Him would happen. If the word were to spread about this revelation, this could alter some of the events that were to happen to the Lord Jesus, such as the mocking and spitting on His face, which was the portion the Lord Jesus had to receive.

21 From that time began Jesus to show to His disciples that He must go away to Jerusalem, and to suffer much from the elders and chief priests and scribes, and to be killed, and on the third day to be raised.

Comments Matthew 16:21. It is easy for the human mind to have doubts even when things are in front of their eyes. The Lord Jesus wants to prepare the disciples' minds and hearts to be ready for the things to come. Because the Lord knows what His disciples will be facing, the Lord has done and said many things to them to confirm their faith. Many of them will face challenges, but during this time, for the last period on earth, while the Lord Jesus is still with them, He will strengthen their faith.

22 And having taken Him aside, Peter began to rebuke Him, saying, Far be it from Thee, Lord; this will never be to Thee.

Comments Matthew 16:22. Fear has seized Peter; he let fear affect his faith. And just for a moment, this happened to all of them. Do not let fear have power over you; remember that the evils can play with your feelings, but fear has no power. Always remember to whom you belong, rebuke fear in the name of the Lord Jesus, and do not let fear play with your feelings.

23 And having turned, He said to Peter, Get behind Me, Satan! You are an offense to Me; for you do not have in mind the things of God, but the things of men.

Comments Matthew 16:23. This plainly means only that Satan works with our weaknesses and tries to cover us. Our own weakness makes us have a weak point to be attacked. Fear led Peter to be trapped, but this rebuke from the Lord Jesus helped Peter. Chase fear away in the name of the Lord Jesus; the rebuke from the Lord Jesus has saved Peter.

24 Then Jesus said to His disciples, If anyone desires to come after Me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow Me.

Comments Matthew 16:24. Take this verse accordingly, as it is written. Deny the comforts you have and do the work for the Lord. Some may not be called to do specific things, but studying the Word of God is following the Lord. Here, the Lord did not ask us to deny our family, but only to deny ourselves. The family is a responsibility the Lord gives as well.

"Let him deny himself" plainly says that by accepting the Lord Jesus, we are not free anymore. We belong to the Lord, and we are not supposed to do things that are against the Word of God, but we are to follow every word completely.

"Take up his cross" means to carry the call that the Lord has put as a burden on your heart to do. Some may have small burdens, while others may have more significant burdens in something to do for the Lord. The Lord knows the ability of each person, and He will never give more than we can carry. The heart to follow the call is the key to working for the Lord.

25 For whoever might desire to save his life will lose it; however, whoever might lose his life on account of Me, will find it.

Comments Matthew 16:25. Verses 25-28 talk about faith from two points of view: earthly and the world to come. They remind us that it is not about the life on this earth to lose it, but the eternal life to come. For this earth, if you look for fulfillment in this life, you lose the life in the Lord Jesus' world. This earthly world is nothing; if you tighten your heart around the things of this world and are greedy for the things of this world, your connection to the next world becomes thinner. The Bible is the guide in this world and for the world to come. Always go back to the Bible to fulfill the life in this world. Use the Bible as a guide, and you will save yourself in the end. On this earth, just take what is necessary because nothing in this earthly life lasts.

"Will lose it" in the first part of the verse refers to denying the faith even when your life is not threatened. Some deny the One who created us for convenience and to be accepted among people.

26 For what will it profit a man, if he gains the whole world, but loses his life? Or what will a man give in exchange for his life?

Comments Matthew 16:26. The Lord wants our souls to be saved. On this earth, we praise the Lord by our mouths, but in the world to come, our souls will go and glorify the Lord. That voice the Father wants to hear, the soul that glorifies the Father. The soul belongs to the Father, and He doesn't want to lose any soul in the lake of fire. Life on this earth is like having two pots; if you try to keep one, it goes against the other one.

27 For the Son of Man is about to come in the glory of His Father with His angels; and then He will give to each according to his deeds.

Comments Matthew 16:27. Take notice in this verse that the Lord Jesus will come in His Father's glory, not in His own glory. The Lord Jesus never puts Himself above His Father. Our God is Three in One, but the Father is the first. Even the Lord Jesus Himself first glorifies the Father. So, we should do the same, glorify the Father, the Lord Jesus, and the Holy Spirit, but put the Father first.

"For the Son of Man is about to come in the glory of His Father with His angels" refers to the second coming of our Lord Jesus on earth. The whole world will see Him, at the same time, with His personal army of angels, when He will take over the whole world.

"And then He will give to each according to his deeds." This also refers to the second coming of the Lord Jesus. The "give (render)" here is not a judgment; it is the time when the Lord looks to each individual at what they have been doing during their life on earth and what it can be counted for eternal life. If there is something to be counted forward, the Lord Jesus will use that portion to comfort that person while they wait for the judgment day.

28 Truly I say to you, there are some of those standing here, who will not taste of death, until they see the Son of Man coming in His kingdom.

Comments Matthew 16:28. See [Comments Mark 9:1](#).

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) Believe the Word of God about the Lord Jesus' death and resurrection out of the dead with all your heart and do not seek a miraculous sign from Him. 2) Base your faith on the Bible, not on the traditions of men. 3) Ask yourself the question that the Lord Jesus asked the disciples: "But who do you say Me to be?" 4) Follow the Lord Jesus by denying the comforts you have, and do the work for the Lord; carry the call that the Lord has put as a burden on your heart to do, which could be as simple as reading the Bible, praying, and glorifying the Lord in all things. 5) Do not deny the Lord Jesus for convenience and to be accepted by people; this earthly world is nothing, but the world to come is everything.

Chapter 17

SUMMARY

In this chapter, the Lord Jesus interacts with the disciples, Moses and Elijah, the Father, the crowd, a man and his son, and some tax collectors. The events of the chapter take place in various locations, including a high mountain, a place where the crowd gathered to wait for the Lord Jesus, Galilee, Capernaum, and a house in Capernaum. The main points of the chapter are the Lord Jesus's transfiguration and His telling the disciples about His death and resurrection. Everything in this chapter directly or indirectly supports the teachings related to the transfiguration and resurrection of the Lord Jesus. 1) The transfiguration of the Lord Jesus. This unique transfiguration happened only to the Lord Jesus; it is as important as the virgin birth of the Lord Jesus. The voice of the Father speaks out of the cloud during the transfiguration, saying, "This is My Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; listen to Him." Therefore, by the will of the Father and His testimony, the heavenly body of the Lord Jesus appeared to three disciples, Peter, James, and John, so we can believe that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God and He is above the Old Testament prophets. It is essential to believe that the transfiguration was real, and that the real heavenly body of the Lord Jesus overshadowed His human body so the disciples could see His glory and testify to everyone. 2) Death and resurrection. After the transfiguration, the Lord Jesus talks to the disciples about His death and resurrection on the third day. The disciples needed to believe in the bodily resurrection and connect all this with the transfiguration. 3) The healing of a boy. The boy's sickness and healing can be applied symbolically to the world. The world itself is like this boy; it has sickness and is set for punishment and cleansing through fire (see 2 Peter 3:7-10; 2 Thessalonians 1:7). But the Lord's mercy gives a chance to all people to repent through the baptism of water and come to the foot of the cross and be healed (see Matthew 8:17, Isaiah 53:3-9). We need to come to the Lord Jesus like the father of the boy did, with blind faith in Him and believing that all things are possible. 4) The teacher's tax. The Lord Jesus uses the tax situation from Capernaum to teach His disciples that God the Father is the King of the earth (see Matthew 5:35, Isaiah 66:1, Psalm 24:1-2).

1 And after six days Jesus takes with Him Peter, and James, and John his brother, and brings them up into a high mountain by themselves.

Comments Matthew 17:1. These three disciples have been called up here for a reason. It is not that they are special, but each one has a duty in a different way from the others, and these ones needed to see the transfiguration of the Lord Jesus.

2 And He was transfigured before them; and His face shone as the sun, and His outer garments became white as the light.

Comments Matthew 17:2. This transfiguration was the transfiguration of the human body to show the heavenly body of the Lord Jesus, the body that only heavenly beings have. Imagine two bodies overlapped as one, the human body and the heavenly body within; no one else on earth can have this. The Bible tells us that there are two kinds of bodies: the earthly body, made from the dust of the ground, and the heavenly body, made of substance beyond human knowledge and understanding. The heavenly body of the Lord Jesus cannot be touched by human flesh; you can see it, but you can't touch it because it has too much power for human flesh to touch. The heavenly body of the Lord Jesus was with the Father until this point of the transfiguration, and for just a short time, the Lord Jesus' heavenly body came to overshadow the human body, and then returned back to the Father.

It is important to note that the human body of the Lord Jesus was not changed or transformed in any way during this transfiguration because of the cross. The Lord Jesus must be completely, one hundred percent, human from birth until the cross in order to fulfill His mission on earth. The transfiguration of the Lord Jesus was by the will of the Father to show to the disciples; it is a mercy from the Father for the disciples' sake. This transfiguration was the Father's will for humans that they would see the heavenly body of the Lord Jesus and believe.

3 And behold, there appeared to them Moses and Elijah talking with Him.

Comments Matthew 17:3. In the Bible, we see that Moses was the friend of God (Exodus 33:11) and Elijah was the servant of God (1 Kings 18:36). These two were chosen by God the Father to meet with the Lord Jesus; each one has a specialty in a different way. The Bible doesn't tell us what they talked about, and we should not speculate, but understand that it is not the Father's will for us to know the nature of the meeting.

4 And Peter answering, said to Jesus, Lord, it is good for us to be here; if Thou wilt, I will make here three tents; one for Thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elijah.

Comments Matthew 17:4. This verse shows the character of Peter: he loved the Lord and always wanted to please the Lord. Peter wanted to do what he could to please the Lord, and that is one of the reasons the Lord chose him.

5 While he was yet speaking, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them; and behold, a Voice out of the cloud, saying, This is My Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; listen to Him!

Comments Matthew 17:5. "... behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them." The Bible is clear that no one has seen the Father. This passage is another proof of this fact: even the disciples had not seen the Father; they only heard His voice coming from the bright cloud.

6 And having heard it, the disciples fell on their face, and were extremely terrified.

7 And Jesus having come, and having touched them, He said, Arise, and be not afraid.

Comments Matthew 17:6-7. In these verses, we see that the voice of the Father has a power that terrifies the disciples. Even the disciples who were close to the Lord Jesus had fear; imagine, among other humans, how much more fear there would be if they heard the voice of the Father from the heavens. That is why the Father never makes Himself known to humans: there is fear at His appearance. However, the Father does not want us to have this type of fear; instead, He wants us to glorify Him.

8 And lifting up their eyes, they saw no one, except Jesus Himself alone.

9 And as they were coming down from the mountain, Jesus commanded them, saying, Tell the vision to no one, until the Son of Man be risen from the dead.

Comments Matthew 17:8-9. "And lifting up their eyes ... tell the vision to no one ..." It was a vision for the disciples to see Moses and Elijah; these two could not physically come down at this time. Moses and Elijah, in this context, had no substance in them. When you see something that has no substance, it is a vision. These two cannot come in substance; it was just a vision for the disciples' eyes. However, the Lord Jesus had a conversation with them, but there was no physical contact. Between the Lord Jesus and the disciples, it is not the same; the disciples see only a vision, but for the Lord Jesus, time and space have no meaning; so the Lord Jesus talked directly with Moses and Elijah, as the disciples saw in the vision. Nevertheless, the transfiguration of

the Lord Jesus is not a vision; it is real, and it is important to believe it is real (see [Comments Matthew 17:2](#)).

Q: What was the meaning for the disciples to see the Lord Jesus talking with Moses and Elijah? A: The purpose of this vision and the transfiguration was to make sure that the disciples know who the Lord Jesus is and that He is above all, including Moses and Elijah, who were important Old Testament people.

10 And the disciples asked Him, saying, Why then do the scribes say that Elijah it behooves to come first?

Comments Matthew 17:10. All the disciples were taught from a young age in the synagogue by the Scribes and Pharisees; they were taught the doctrines, the rules, and the knowledge of the traditions. Now, the Lord Jesus comes and teaches them the true rules of the Lord, which contradict many teachings from their traditions. The vision created confusion in their knowledge since Moses and Elijah came to glorify the Lord Jesus. So, how would the people take this? They have been taught their whole lives who is above whom, and now, in this vision, we see Moses and Elijah come to pay their respects to the Lord Jesus, which made them question who the Lord Jesus is. People couldn't accept this, since these two had high levels according to the teachings they had received, and that is why the Lord advised them not to tell anyone the vision until after His resurrection.

11 And answering, He said, Elijah indeed comes, and will restore all things;

12 however, I say to you that Elijah has come already, and they knew him not but did to him whatever they desired. In this way, the Son of Man also is about to suffer from them.

13 Then understood the disciples that He spoke to them about John the Baptist.

Comments Matthew 17:11-13. In these verses, the Lord refers to the humbleness in men. Humbleness to the point of accepting their sins and asking for forgiveness. Obey the Law and listen to the voice of the Lord; most people have ignored the voice of the Lord.

14 And they having come to the multitude, came to Him a man, kneeling to Him,

Comments Matthew 17:14. This is an example that clearly shows blind faith; faith by hearing had taken over this man. Even though he saw that the Lord Jesus' disciples failed his faith, his faith in the Lord Jesus was greater than the failure of His disciples. For this faith, the Lord Jesus healed his son.

15 and saying, Lord, have mercy on my son, for he is epileptic, and suffers grievously; for often he falls into the fire, and often into the water.

16 And I brought him to Thy disciples, and they could not cure him.

Comments Matthew 17:15-16. The man describes the boy's sickness, but notice his faith and the words he used: "Have mercy on my son." With a great need for help, this man was willing to humble himself and come and beg for mercy from the Lord Jesus, not asking, but begging. The mercy of the Lord is granted upon the faith you have. If you have faith, the mercy from the Lord will be granted.

The healing of this boy also has a hidden meaning. The world itself is like this boy; it has sickness and is set for punishment and cleansing through fire (see 2 Peter 3:7-10; 2 Thessalonians 1:7). But the Lord's mercy gives a chance to all people to repent through the baptism of water and come to the foot of the cross. The Lord's mercy and help are waiting: come! Just as the Lord healed this boy, He can also heal and save everyone from falling into the destructive fire that will come upon the world.

17 Now answering, Jesus said, O faithless and perverted generation, how long will I be with you? How long will I hold up with you? Bring him here to Me.

Comments Matthew 17:17. This rebuke is a rebuke addressed toward the disciples. They had been with the Lord Jesus, but what they saw and heard did not stick in them.

18 And Jesus rebuked him; and the demon went out from him, and the boy was cured from that hour.

Comments Matthew 17:18. This verse declares the Lord Jesus' authority over the unseen world, for the unseen world is under His feet; by His command, all things will obey.

19 Then the disciples came to Jesus in private, saying, Why were we not able to cast it out?

Comments Matthew 17:19. This verse shows that the common failure in humans is doubt and putting themselves down before doing anything. But, before you do something, believe that all things are possible under the name of the Lord Jesus. By faith, it is not you who does it, but the Lord Himself.

20 And He says to them, Because of your little faith. For truly I say to you, If you have faith as a grain of mustard seed, you will say to this mountain, Remove away from here to there; and it will remove; and nothing will be impossible to you.

Comments Matthew 17:20. This verse is used for encouragement; all humans have small faith, and this verse encourages those who have small faith but believe in the Lord Jesus. Faith starts with the question, "Do you believe there is a God?" Some may not believe everything in the Bible, but within themselves, they believe that there is a God. The Lord does not give to all to have the same way of believing; it is a gift to have faith. Faith is not measurable by quantity; it is a gift, and it is by knowing in the heart. Size and quantity are not the same and don't measure the same way. The mustard seed in this verse represents the size of faith, not quantity. We cannot say we have a pound of faith, but we can say we have little or big faith.

21 However, this kind does not go out except by prayer and fasting.

Comments Matthew 17:21. We believe that this verse was part of the original manuscript written by Matthew. The verse is important for all believers; prayer and fasting symbolize faith and humbling yourself before the Lord. People try to omit this way, but true believers should recognize the importance of humbling themselves both by action and heart. The heart has to be humbled; humble by action alone, for people to see, is not enough.

22 Now while they stayed in Galilee, Jesus said to them, The Son of Man is about to be betrayed into the hands of people;

23 and they will kill Him, and the third day He will be raised up. And they were extremely grieved.

Comments Matthew 17:22-23. The Lord often reminded the disciples about His death and resurrection because He knew that their faith would be tested after His departure, and He wanted to prepare them for the things to come.

24 And they having come to Capernaum, those receiving the half-shekel came to Peter, and said, Does not Your Teacher fulfill the half-shekel?

Comments Matthew 17:24. As they entered this town, the disciples called the Lord Jesus a "Teacher." The town had its own rule: a teacher tax was to be imposed, so they asked the Lord Jesus to pay a teacher's tax. It is believed that this was not a temple tax at all, but a city tax imposed by the rulers of that place. This tax was not a tax that was used for taking care of the temple of the Lord, but it was an extra tax imposed on those who would teach and was

collected for the rulers of that place. It was a tax by force, not by the will of the people.

This system was for people, not for God; the Lord does not take by force but by the willingness of the person to give. In those days and similarly in these days, many people use the name of the Lord to make a profit for themselves. The temple tax itself was collected when one entered the temple, and there was a box in the front (see 2 Kings 12:4-16; Mark 12:41-42). As people walked in, the Lord put in the people's hearts who and how much to drop in the box. The purpose of the box system was to prevent anyone from boasting about how much they had put in. Additionally, it is worth noting that the temple of the Lord was located in Jerusalem, not in Capernaum.

25 He says, Yes. And having come into the house, Jesus spoke first to him, saying, What do you think, Simon? The kings of the earth, from whom do they take toll or tribute? From their sons, or from strangers?

Comments Matthew 17:25. The answer "Yes" here means that Peter is saying that the Lord Jesus is not paying the tax. In Simon's eyes, the Lord Jesus does not need to pay the tax regardless of whether He accepts their rules or not; the Lord Jesus is a Holy Teacher and does not need to pay human taxes.

26 And when he said, From strangers, Jesus said to him, Therefore the sons are free.

27 However, in order that We might not cause them to stumble, having gone to the sea, cast a fishhook, and take up the first fish coming up; and having opened its mouth, you will find a shekel; take that, give it to them for Me and you.

Comments Matthew 17:25-27. Here, the Lord wants to point out to the disciples that you cannot lie. According to the Bible, Peter lied, as the Lord Jesus was prepared to pay the tax; he should have consulted the Lord Jesus before giving his answer. Lying is a human way to get out of a confrontation, but the Lord doesn't want His children to get out of trouble by lying. So, the Lord paid the tax for Himself and Peter. Peter was part of the teaching; people would come to Peter, and Peter would go to the Lord Jesus. Peter acted as a middleman for referring information to people, so he was also considered a teacher. Humans have made many rules, both then and now, and enforce them on people.

"Having gone to the sea, cast a fishhook ..." Here, we need to keep in mind that the Lord Jesus owns the sea and the fish in it. The fish belongs to the Lord, not that the fish gives money to the Lord. This fish could die if it swallowed the

money. The Lord did not take the money from the fish, nor did the fish give the money to the Lord. This action in this verse shows the mercy of the Lord upon the fish.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) We must believe that the transfiguration of the Lord Jesus was real. His human body was not transformed in any way during the transfiguration because of the cross. 2) The death on the cross and the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus on the third day are significant since the Lord has talked about these numerous times with the disciples. 3) With just a little faith in the Lord Jesus, all things are possible; pray with a joyful heart and fast with a humble spirit to come to meet the Lord and ask for help. 4) Do not lie to get out of a situation, but pray before you give an answer or engage in an activity. 5) Try not to offend people, try to keep peace, and at the same time, be truthful towards the Lord.

Chapter 18

SUMMARY

In this chapter, the Lord Jesus interacts with His disciples and one child. The events of this chapter take place in Galilee, at an unspecified location (not mentioned here). The main focus of the chapter is teaching about how to enter the kingdom of the heavens. There are no specific words to describe the kingdom of heaven, so the Lord Jesus teaches us through parables and comparisons to gain an understanding and find the way to enter the kingdom of heaven. We can summarize the parables and comparisons given in this chapter as follows. 1) Who is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven? The Lord illustrates this teaching through a comparison with a child. The Lord teaches us that we must have a humble heart like a child to enter the kingdom of heaven. 2) Temptation to sin. This teaching shows that part of entering heaven is being watchful and not sinning. The Lord teaches that the world tempts us to sin, and we need to cut activities from our lives that lead us to sin (compared here to feet and eyes). 3) The parable of the lost sheep: through this parable, the Lord continues to teach about heaven. He tells us not to despise anybody in this world because we do not know who is or who will be a part of heaven. 4) If your brother sins against you: in this teaching, the Lord tells us never to stop forgiving our brother if he sins against us. 5) The parable of the merciful king: through this parable, the Lord teaches us that there will be a judgment day when the Lord will settle accounts with all the people of the earth. The main point of the parable is that the heart is the first place used for judgment. He teaches that forgiving is an important deed that one needs to start from the heart. The Lord has shown great mercy to humans, so we should learn to show mercy to others. It is important to remember that the only way to escape the judgment day is to believe in the Lord Jesus and follow His teachings. Faith in the Lord Jesus and His teachings is the only way to enter heaven.

1 In that hour came the disciples to Jesus, saying, Who then is greatest in the kingdom of the heavens?

Comments Matthew 18:1. "In that hour came the disciples ..." Here, we should think that the Lord came on earth to teach people how to come to the Father, and for this purpose, the Lord always traveled. For this reason, we

believe that this event with the disciples did not occur in Capernaum (as a continuation of Chapter 17), but in a different location.

"Who then is greatest in the kingdom ..." This question is general among humans; everybody wants to be important. However, the question opens the way into jealousy, so all believers should watch out; think hard about this question.

2 And having called to Him a young child, He set him in the midst of them,

3 and said, Truly I say to you, Except you change, and become as young children, you will not enter into the kingdom of the heavens.

Comments Matthew 18:2-3. Here, in these verses, the Lord Jesus does not teach that we need to be childish; rather, these verses teach us to trust the Lord like children. Be innocent in faith and trusting in the Lord like children.

4 Therefore, whoever will humble himself as this young child this is the greatest in the kingdom of the heavens.

Comments Matthew 18:4. This word here refers to the world to come, when we will have the heavenly body that has been prepared for us; note that flesh and blood cannot enter the kingdom of the heavens. The greatest in this verse refers to those who have a chance to be face-to-face with the Father. When you are in the heavenly body, you will not only be in the presence of the throne but face-to-face with the Father, and you will receive orders straight from the Father; those are the greatest in the kingdom of the heavens. In human terms, they will be called the closest servants of the Father.

5 And whoever may receive one such young child in My name receives Me.

Comments Matthew 18:5. "Young child" here refers to a person with a clean heart who follows and believes the teaching of the Bible as the Word of God.

"Whoever may receive" refers to someone who accepts the one who comes in the name of the Lord, whom the Lord sent.

6 But whoever may cause one of these little ones who believe in Me to stumble, it is better for him that a great millstone may be hung around his neck, and he may be sunk in the depth of the sea.

Comments Matthew 18:6. "Little ones" here refers to persons with clean hearts who follow and believe the teachings of the Bible as the Word of God.

"Whoever may cause one of these little ones who believe in Me to stumble" refers to someone who comes and misinterprets the Bible using the name of the Lord, making these "little ones" misunderstand the Bible and creating doubt in them. Those persons have no worth in being born, as this verse says. They betray the Lord for various reasons. They misinterpret the Bible to bring glory to themselves, but the glory belongs to the Lord, not to those who use the Word of the Lord.

7 Woe to the world because of stumbling blocks! It is necessary for the stumbling blocks to come, but woe to the one by whom the stumbling block comes!

Comments Matthew 18:7. "Woe to the world because of stumbling blocks" or "woe to the world for temptations to sin." These temptations to sin spoken of in this verse are related directly to sin against the Lord. Because of believing in themselves, humans disregard the Creator who created all things. This sin is against God: the world did not think that all things come from God. Knowledge and technology also lead to temptations to sin. Technology relates to making life easier, but humans also use some technology to put themselves up.

For example, people try to create rain and then put themselves at the same level as God; the smart ones lift their fists and think that they themselves are gods. Humans can play with nature, but can they create one seed without the Lord's hand? They gather and transform seeds, but forget to think about the One who created the seeds. Also, they develop computers and many other smart devices, but many forget about the One who created all the materials used in all these things.

Q: Is the Lord against technology? A: No, the Lord is not against technology, even the most advanced technology, as long as technology is not used against the Lord.

The next temptation to come to the whole world is greed. The greed of all things, not just the things of this world, but the greed of the unseen things as well. Because the Lord calls some to do something, and those persons already think about the reward they will receive, that is greed. Humans need to feel important in this world and in the world to come. The sin of greed for the things of this world is a sin against God's work. This greed makes humans wish for things that are not made by the hand of the Lord (i.e., biological cloning, DNA engineering, stem-cell engineering, in-vitro fertilization, transgenderism, transhumanism, tattooing and body transformation, etc.) and

tempts them to think that they can be equal to God. To fight against greed, be content and thankful for what you have received; be content in all things. It doesn't matter how small our blessings may be; just be content and thankful with a true heart.

"It is necessary for the stumbling blocks to come." It is necessary for temptations to come because of the will of the Father to save humans. Temptations will help humans turn to the Lord. When they see that they alone cannot fight temptations, they will seek help from the Lord. The purpose of temptations to come is to save the obedient ones. This way works for those who listen and obey, but for those who do not, the Lord also works with them; however, they choose not to come (see 1 Corinthians 10:13). It is not that the latter do not feel guilty, but rather that they choose to enjoy the world.

"But woe to the one by whom the stumbling block comes!" Temptation cannot come upon everyone; temptation doesn't run by its own will. For those who do not stay in the Word of God, temptation has power over them. But, for those covered by the blood of the Lamb, it is their own fault that temptation comes upon them; they have the Lord as their shield to protect them, but they do not rely on Him. This woe is for those who are covered by the blood and yet ignore the Word of God. Many of them sin and blame the Lord for causing them to sin, but God does not cause anyone to sin (see James 1:13-18). There is no sin in God, so He cannot cause someone to sin.

8 And if your hand or your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off, and throw it from you, it is better for you to enter into life crippled or lame than having two hands or two feet to be cast into the eternal fire.

Comments Matthew 18:8. This verse has been a stumbling block for many believers throughout the ages. It is important to understand that the Lord will never ask us to harm our bodies. This body, the Lord created in His image. Why would the Lord ask us to destroy His creation? The nature of God is mercy. His love and mercy are beyond our understanding. The proof God has shown is in His Own Son: the Lord Jesus has proved the love of God for the whole human race. Therefore, the verse refers to some of our activities that are not needed in our lives because these activities are useless for this earth and for the earth to come. Think about your daily life, how many useless things we do; some can be considered as hands and feet; cut them off; use your heart to pray to be able to discern them. Therefore, hands and feet refer to activities we do throughout our life on earth; we use our feet to go here and there, and we use

our hands to do this and that. Pray with the heart for all daily activities, and if they are useless, cut them off.

9 And if your eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out, and throw it from you, it is better for you to enter into life having one eye than having two eyes to be cast into the hell of fire.

Comments Matthew 18:9. Here, the Lord does not mean that it is better to be born blind. The eyes are not easy to control, and the eyes feed the heart. Sometimes, we see things that we should not even look at, but it happens. When you see something, that thing will feed straight into your heart, so watch what you are looking at. There are many, many things the Lord created; use your eyes to see the blessings of the Lord. The world uses the word entertainment. Entertaining the flesh through your eyes weakens the soul because we cannot clearly feel our soul, as our attention is diverted to entertaining the eyes and the flesh. But let's entertain our souls; the Bible should be the entertainment of all Christians. Use the Bible to entertain your eyes with the Word, and that will strengthen your soul and spirit.

10 See that you do not despise one of these little ones; for I say to you, that in the heavens their angels always behold the face of My Father who is in the heavens.

Comments Matthew 18:10. "These little ones." The Lord always calls us His children. When we accept the Lord in our hearts, and we are baptized in water, we become children of God; we are the little ones of the Lord.

"See that you do not despise one ..." This addresses everyone who reads the Bible and comes to know and accept the Lord. We are not supposed to despise anybody in this world because we do not know who is or who will be "the little one." We have examples in the Bible where people have not been baptized in water but have accepted the Lord with a true heart. We cannot despise anybody since we do not know the hearts of people; only God knows them.

"For I say to you, ... their angels ..." This tells us that there is an angel assigned to each person who accepts in their souls God who created them; they become children of God when they accept God into their souls. The angels have their duty; they serve as messengers and ministering spirits for God (see Hebrews 1:14), but the Holy Spirit, by His presence, is a witness for both the Father and the Lord Jesus. Wherever the Holy Spirit is, He is a witness to the Father and the Lord Jesus; and the Holy Spirit is everywhere at the same time.

11 For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.

Comments Matthew 18:11. This verse is believed to be part of the original manuscript written by Matthew.

12 What do you think? If any man has a hundred sheep, and one of them may go astray, will he not leave the ninety-nine, and having gone on the mountains, seeks that which has gone astray?

Comments Matthew 18:12. This verse tells us that even if we see some true Christians entangled in bad situations that do not go against God, we need not despise them. We can define the "little ones" as those who read, believe, and follow the Word of God.

13 And if he should find it, truly I say to you that he rejoices over it more than over the ninety-nine which have not gone astray.

14 Thus it is not the will of your Father who is in the heavens, that one of these little ones should perish.

Comments Matthew 18:13-14. The "little ones" mentioned in verses 10 and 14 both come from the same fold but are not the same. In verse 10, "little ones" refers to the innocent little ones, while in verse 14, "little ones" (the lost sheep) refers to the ones who have been tricked but are still willing to follow the Lord after knowing that they have been tricked; tricked by doctrines that almost follow the Word of God, but you could find points in these doctrines that contradict the Word. They have been tricked, but they did not deny the Lord. They cannot turn back because they believe the Lord has abandoned them. But the Lord never abandons His children (see Hebrews 13:5); if they turn back, they will meet the Lord in the midst of the way.

15 And if your brother sins against you, go, reprove him between you and him alone. If he may hear you, you have gained your brother.

Comments Matthew 18:15. This verse applies to two kinds of brothers: the true brother and the brother in name. Before speaking with your brother, make sure you bring the situation to the Lord first. The Lord will work in your heart and your brother's heart to be able to resolve the problem. Also, when you meet the brother, ask him to join hands with you in prayer. The true brother must be treated as it is written in verses 15 to 17. For the brother in name, the action taken could end here at verse 15 because they will not listen even to God. However, you still need to point out his fault so that he cannot use it against you.

Q: How can we distinguish between the true brother and the one in name? A: We will recognize them right away. Before we talk, we should ask to come together in prayer. The Lord will speak to both hearts, and He will speak to our own heart to know if it is a true brother we are dealing with, and we will know in our hearts. When you pray together, do not listen to the words of the other brother; you will be confused. Just listen to the small, little voice of the Lord speaking into your heart. Remember, the Bible tells us about the false brothers who come in sheepskin, who can trick us.

16 However, if he may not hear you, take with you one or two more, that upon the mouth of two witnesses or three every word may be established.

17 But if he may refuse to hear them, tell it to the church. And if he may refuse to hear the church also, let him be to you as the Gentile and the tax collector.

Comments Matthew 18:16-17. In this case, do not treat this brother as an enemy, but treat him as a visitor; no hate between. The Lord doesn't want to see hate among humans. But never let the name of this person off the list to pray for; keep praying for this person. A true brother should listen to the church.

18 Truly I say to you, whatever things you may bind on earth will be bound in heaven; and whatever things you may loose on earth will be loosed in heaven.

Comments Matthew 18:18. See [Comments Matthew 16:19](#).

19 Again, truly, I say to you that if two of you may agree on the earth concerning any matter that they may ask, it will be done for them from My Father who is in the heavens.

Comments Matthew 18:19. Many have used this verse in the wrong way. The verse does not refer to the things that you agree on for your benefit and luxury in this world. Instead, it refers to faith and building up the faith of people around you; it refers only to faith, not to luxury on this earth.

20 For where two or three are gathered together in My name, there am I in the midst of them.

Comments Matthew 18:20. The main point in this verse is "in My name." Do not use the name of the Lord Jesus in vain; this verse only refers to building up the church of the community, not personal things.

21 Then Peter, having come, said to Him, Lord, how often will my brother sin against me, and I will forgive him? Until seven times?

22 Jesus says to him, I say not to you, Until seven times; but, until seventy times seven!

Comments Matthew 18:21-22. The real meaning of the number here is that it is beyond our count; all it means is that we should never stop forgiving.

23 Because of this, the kingdom of the heavens has become like to a man, a king, who desired to settle accounts with his servants.

Comments Matthew 18:23. "Because of this, the kingdom of the heavens has become like ..." There are no specific words to describe the kingdom of the heavens. The Lord Jesus tells parables to make it easier for the listeners to understand. He presents two things to compare with each other.

Note that not everything in this parable has a symbolic meaning that can be linked with some activity during Judgment Day.

Q: When will this parable be applied? A: This parable can be linked to the Judgment Day that will come upon humans; the principle presented will be applied at that time.

Q: To whom does this parable apply? A: The parable applies to two kinds of Christians, true Christians and Christians in name, and to the rest of the world. The Christians in name will be judged with the rest of the world on the Judgment Day, but the true Christians have been saved already; there will be no judgment on them at that time.

Q: What are the things about the kingdom of the heavens that we must learn from this parable? A: The parable teaches us three important things. First, it tells us that all things cannot happen unless the Lord of the heavens, the Father, agrees; it is upon the Father's decision to make things happen. Second, the Lord wants to see from us true humility and us begging for mercy from our hearts, so that we may receive forgiveness. And third, the principle of mercy shown in this parable will be applied on the Judgment Day. It is important to note that when the Bible mentions Judgment Day, it refers to an angel's long day, not to a human's twenty-four-hour day.

24 Then he, having begun to settle, one was brought to him, a debtor of ten thousand talents.

Comments Matthew 18:24. This verse has a deeper meaning than it may appear. To owe that much to the Lord of the heavens, the Father, the person must have lived a life unlawful to God. With a hardened heart, this servant

ignored the voice of the Lord within their heart. This is called ignorance and rebellion towards God; with their mouth, they speak blasphemy, and with a disrespectful heart, they bring sorrow to their soul. The amount owed to the Lord increases when you ignore the voice of the Lord.

25 But he, having nothing to pay, his lord commanded him to be sold, and the wife, and the children, and all as many as he had, and payment to be made.

Comments Matthew 18:25. This verse illustrates the consequences of the servant's actions: the suffering of watching, and the pain he feels because all his deeds have brought suffering to his entire family. When the Judgment Day comes, his eyes will see the suffering of his family because of the way of life he lived and led his family. He led his whole family to live the same way as he did, and all will be punished in the same way. We must note that the Lord does not judge the children for the sins of their parents unless they follow the same sinful life (see Ezekiel 18:20).

26 The servant, therefore, having fallen down, fell on his knee to him, saying, Have patience with me, and I will pay to you all.

27 Now the lord of that servant, having been moved with compassion, released him, and forgave him the debt.

Comments Matthew 18:26-27. The servant did not ask for forgiveness, but he recognized the authority and asked, begged for patience. He also made a promise to "repay all." By this, the servant admitted his own faults and willingly accepted the punishment, asking only for patience. His lord forgave him the debt, but the consequences of his actions would still follow.

28 However, that servant, having gone out, found one of his fellow servants, who owed him a hundred denarii, and having seized him, he choked him, saying, Pay what you owe.

29 So, his fellow servant, having fallen down, begged him, saying, Have patience with me, and I will pay you.

30 But he was not willing; rather having gone, he threw him into prison, until he should pay that which was owing.

Comments Matthew 18:28-30. These verses clearly show how humans relate to each other. The servant received forgiveness from his lord but did not show others the same forgiveness he received. We are the same way: we come asking for mercy and forgiveness from the Lord, but we do not do it to others.

31 Therefore, his fellow servants, having seen the things that were done, they were exceedingly grieved, and having come, told to their lord all that had taken place.

32 Then having called to him, his lord says to him, You evil servant, I forgave you all that debt, because you begged me;

33 did it not behoove you to have also shown mercy on your fellow servant, as I also had mercy on you?

Comments Matthew 18:31-33. When the Lord has shown mercy to you, because the Lord has great mercy to all humans, you should learn as well to show mercy to others.

34 And having been angry, his lord delivered him to the jailers until he should pay all that was owing.

35 Thus also My Heavenly Father will do to you, if you do not forgive each his brother from your hearts.

Comments Matthew 18:34-35. These verses refer to the Judgment Day. We will always want to know what is counted for to be judged and not judged on the Judgment Day. Take notice that the Lord will always point to the heart and not the mind; the heart is the first place to be used for judgment. We may not say what the heart thinks, and we believe that we are not guilty, but for the Lord, the heart's thoughts are louder than the mind's thoughts. He can hear the thoughts of the heart. For us to be safe, it is essential only to believe in the Lord Jesus, and this will lead us to the right place. Those who believe in the Lord Jesus and follow the Lord's teaching will have a place of waiting during the Judgment Day. The true believers in the Lord Jesus will also pass through their own judgment, but not at the same time as the rest.

"If you do not forgive each his brother from your hearts." The Lord Jesus addresses this parable to the disciples, but the principle it conveys applies to all people. We are all children of God; we are all created in His image. Some believe, and some do not believe in the God of the Bible, but to each one, the Lord gives in their hearts the knowledge of God, the Creator of all things, and all will be judged for that knowledge of God in them (see Romans 1).

1) Be aware of the teachings the Lord gives in this chapter. 2) Do not sin or promote sinful activities that can cause others to stumble. We should not even mention what others do in darkness (see Ephesians 5:11-12), so as not to cause others to judge, for only God can judge. Instead, when you expose the deeds of darkness, bring the Bible forward, open the passage, read from it to the people, and make sure not to criticize from your point of view, as you are not the judge. 3) If you are offended by your brother, tell him his faults, and remember that living in peace among brothers is important. 4) Watch out for comparing yourself with others and trying to be the greatest; jealousy can creep into your heart. 5) Pray always and watch your heart; the Lord can hear the thoughts of the heart, and the heart is the first place to be used for judgment.

Chapter 19

SUMMARY

In this chapter, the Lord Jesus interacts with various individuals, including Pharisees, children, a rich young man, and the disciples. There is a gap of time and places between the events presented in Chapter 18 in Galilee and the events reported in this chapter, which take place in the region of Judea beyond the Jordan. It is believed that the events in Chapter 19 took place in some unspecified locations within the region of Judea beyond the Jordan River, which is called Judea, even though geographically it was not within Judean borders. Many people living there were Jews, and many people in that region have been converted to Judaism. This chapter focuses on the Lord Jesus preaching and teaching the way to come to the Father to the lost sheep of Israel who were scattered among other nations in foreign lands. The Lord points to the way for all to come back to the Father to receive a chance to be called His children again. Then and now, the way is found by believing in the Lord Jesus and following His teachings. When the Lord Jesus started to minister in this region, crowds began to follow Him. In this chapter, our Lord presents three main teachings.

1) Teaching about divorce and marriage. The Lord created male and female, but humans do not want to accept that they are created for one another to become one flesh and not divorce. The two options presented in this chapter are to be together with someone in this way or to be alone.

2) Teachings about entering the kingdom of the heavens. The Lord Jesus uses the blessing of the children, the encounter with the young rich man, and the disciples to teach important lessons about the way to enter the kingdom of the heavens. The focus of these teachings is related to the heart and the actions of a person. In order, the Lord teaches the following:

- a) have an innocent heart in following the Lord's teaching;
- b) follow the commandments from your heart and practice them;
- c) the work has been done already by the Lord Jesus, so there is no more work to be done for salvation, we only need to believe and follow the Lord Jesus;
- d) abandon in your heart the inner attachment to riches and family and become free in hearing the purpose of the Lord for you;
- e) have your heart cleansed by the blood of the Lord Jesus.

3) Teachings about the new world to come. The new world (the regeneration) is the world that has the Lord Jesus sitting on His glorious throne, ruling His people, and it is beyond what the human mind can understand (see Comments Matthew 19:28).

1 And it came to pass when Jesus had finished these words, He departed from Galilee, and came to the region of Judaea beyond the Jordan;

Comments Matthew 19:1. The Lord went beyond the Jordan River to gather the lost sheep of Israel, which had spread out and lived among the natives of the land. The Lord went in there to gather them, calling them out to Him and gathering them together. The verse shows that the Lord came for all humans, no matter how difficult the world may be. He always traveled to give the good news to all the people. This was part of showing His love for people and opening the way for people to come to God.

Q: What happened on the route between Galilee and Judea beyond the Jordan?

A: Many things are missing that are not mentioned in this verse. There is a gap of time and a gap of places between the events reported in Chapter 18 in Galilee and the events reported in this chapter, which took place in Judea beyond the Jordan. The Lord stopped in many other places along the route between Galilee and Judea beyond the Jordan. His mission was to save the lost.

Q: Did Matthew 19:1 err in stating that Judea was beyond the Jordan? A: No, "and came into the region of Judea beyond the Jordan" is correct. It is believed that the region referred to in this chapter was called "Judea beyond the Jordan" due to the people living there. There were many Jews from Judea who settled there, and many natives of the land had converted to Judaism.

2 and great multitudes followed Him; and He healed them there.

Comments Matthew 19:2. The Lord showed His mercy by healing the people.

3 And the Pharisees came to Him, tempting Him, and saying, Is it lawful to divorce his wife for every cause?

Comments Matthew 19:3. "And the Pharisees came to Him." These are Pharisees from Judea beyond Jordan who grew up there, were taught there, and were mixed with the people of that region.

Q: Why did these Pharisees come up with this question to tempt the Lord? A: The question came about because of the way of life. The people of God had different rules of life because they were required to follow God's Law, as given through Moses, which differed from the laws of the people in that region. God's law makes them different and separate. They lived in the same region, but they had to follow a different law of life. If a Jewish man divorces a Jewish

woman and takes a woman of the region to replace the first wife, in that case, that man commits adultery unless the Jewish wife was unfaithful. Also, the right of the firstborn cannot be transferred to the child born through adultery; the right of the firstborn must be to the people of God (see Ezra 9:1-2; Ezra 10:10-11).

Q: Why is it that their question is viewed as a tempting question? A: Because of the answer the Lord gives, that is the temptation: they wanted to check the Lord Jesus' answer with the knowledge of the people taught in the land. The Lord has an answer, unlike the Pharisees, who claim to be taught but do not know the real meaning.

4 And answering, He said, Have you not read that He who made from the beginning made them male and female,

5 and said, On account of this will a man leave his father and mother, and will be united with his wife; and the two will become one flesh?

6 Therefore, they are no longer two, but one flesh. What therefore God has united together, let not man put apart.

7 They say to Him, Why then did Moses command to offer a bill of divorce, and to set her free?

Comments Matthew 19:4-7. In these verses, people come to be against the teaching "the two will become one flesh." They could not accept a man and a woman becoming one flesh, and this was because of the problem of authority and subordination: the woman was under the man. If they become one, they are equal. At that time, men could not accept becoming equal to women. The pride of men plays a big role in their lives, and equality is unacceptable, but men forget they are born through women (see 1 Corinthians 11:11-12).

8 He says to them, Moses for your hardness of heart allowed you to set free your wives; but from the beginning it has not been so.

Comments Matthew 19:8. The reason why Moses commanded one to give a certificate of divorce was to eliminate slave wives. As much as men have wealth in life, they collect more wives, and men's pride will ignite. When a man has more than one wife, one of them will be more favored and becomes above the others, and the lower ones are no better than slaves. If the unwanted wife did not get a certificate of divorce, in that case, there was nothing left for the life of that woman but to be a slave, but the Lord does not want any of His

children to become slaves. This law was to be used only among God's children (see Exodus 21:7-11).

9 And I say to you, that, Whoever may put away his wife, except for fornication, and may marry another, commits adultery; and he who marries her that is put away commits adultery.

10 The disciples say to Him, If the case of the man is so with the wife, it is better not to marry.

Comments Matthew 19:10. The disciples saw marriage as trouble; they implied that it would be better not to marry a Jewish woman to avoid complications.

11 And He said to them, Not all hold this word, but only those to whom it is given.

12 For there are eunuchs, who were so born from their mother's womb, and there are eunuchs, who were made eunuchs by men, and there are eunuchs, who made themselves eunuchs for the sake of the kingdom of the heavens. The one who is able to receive it, let him receive it.

Comments Matthew 19:11-12. "The one who is able to receive it, let him receive it." Some have received the gift of being born without the lust of the flesh. If they do not have that lust of the flesh feeling, it is a gift not to suffer; if they do have the feeling, let them get married.

13 Then were brought to Him little children, that He may lay the hands on them, and may pray; however, the disciples admonished them.

Comments Matthew 19:13. Q: Why did the disciples admonish the people?
A: The disciples admonished the people because they all felt the same way toward children, that they were not important for promoting the ministry. They all wanted the Lord Jesus to rest, but by bringing children, the Lord Jesus had no rest. The disciples did this out of love for the Lord.

14 And Jesus said, Permit the little children, and do not forbid them to come to Me; for of such belongs the kingdom of the heavens.

Comments Matthew 19:14. The Lord teaches that to enter the kingdom of the heavens, adults should have the same way of heart as little children do; the Lord is pointing out that we should accept the teaching and believe as little children do.

15 And He laid the hands on them. He departed from there,

16 and behold, one having come to Him, said, Teacher, what good shall I do, that I may have eternal life?

Comments Matthew 19:16. This passage tells us how some people think they can do some good deeds that are worth being counted as deserving to be in heaven. The perfect deed has been done already; the innocent Lamb of God has already shed His blood to cover the world of sin. For us, only one thing needs to be done: trust, believe, and accept the deed the Lord Jesus has done. Then, come to the foot of the cross under the blood of the Lord Jesus and repent, be baptized, and follow His teachings.

17 And He said to him, Why do you ask Me about what is good? One is good; but if you desire to enter into life, keep the commandments.

Comments Matthew 19:17. This teaching shows us the Trinity of God: God the Father, God the Son (Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit. The verse also proves that time has no meaning for the Lord because the Lord already knows what will happen to him (the young man). The Lord's answers will always point out to who He is.

18 He says to Him, Which? And Jesus said, You shall not murder, You shall not commit adultery, You shall not steal, You shall not bear false witness,

19 Honor the father and the mother and love your neighbor as yourself.

Comments Matthew 19:16-19. Notice how the conversation starts in these verses. The man did not come first to glorify God; his inner heart was shown in the question. He asked, "What good shall I do?" not "What can God do?" This question was very self-centered. Besides, in those times, all the commandments of God were taught from childhood. He learned the commandments but did not practice them, and then came to ask the question, "What good shall I do?" Many of us today do not learn the commandments. We have the Bible, but we do not read and meditate on the teachings of the Bible, and we end up making simple or big mistakes against the teachings of the Bible.

20 The young man says to Him, All these I have kept. What still do I lack?

Comments Matthew 19:20. "... What still do I lack?" The man's answer to the Lord shows that he, himself, has doubts about his salvation. If he had kept all the commandments, he would not doubt to enter eternal life. We, all believers, should ask ourselves if we keep all the teachings of the Bible and compare the answers.

21 Jesus said to him, If you desire to be perfect, go, sell what you possess, and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in the heavens; and come, follow Me.

Comments Matthew 19:21. This person, because of the riches of this world, had a hardened heart to follow the Lord completely. This verse is close to all of us because when we ourselves think we have things, our hearts do not completely rely on the Lord. If we cannot let go of the things of this world, the riches become a chain on our legs, and we can't walk far in faith as that chain gets heavier and heavier. We must see with our inner eyes (the eyes of the soul) and heart that the riches of this world mean nothing in the world to come.

22 Now the young man having heard the word, he went away grieving; for he was one having many possessions.

Comments Matthew 19:22. This verse shows what this man is about; the earthly riches captured his heart. Great sorrow takes hold of a person when the person must give up the riches of this world. This young man is an example for all to see; following the Lord Jesus and leaving the riches behind is not easy for anyone to do.

23 And Jesus said to His disciples, Truly I say to you, A rich person will enter into the kingdom of the heavens with difficulty.

24 And again I say to you, It is easier for a camel to go through a needle's eye, than for a rich person to enter into the kingdom of God.

Comments Matthew 19:23-24. Note that the Lord says that it is difficult for a rich person to enter into the kingdom of heaven, but not impossible. The root of difficulty is shown in the previous verses, and it relates to obedience. Greed and obedience go in parallel; when a person is greedy, it is hard to be obedient and follow the Lord Jesus.

25 Now having heard, the disciples were amazed greatly, saying, Who then can be saved?

Comments Matthew 19:25. Q: Why were the disciples amazed? A: It is the same nowadays, when you see a rich person, you believe that they are blessed by God. So, if those whom you believe are blessed by God cannot enter the kingdom of God, then who can enter? This realization is their amazement.

26 And Jesus looking on them said to them, With people this is impossible; however, with God all are possible.

27 Then answering Peter said to Him, Behold, we have left all, and followed Thee; what then will be to us?

Comments Matthew 19:27. All the disciples had left everything and followed the Lord Jesus, and all of them had this question in them: By following the Lord Jesus now, what do they get in return? This question is a common one, then and now. Peter's question came from worry; for the disciples at that time, it was harder to understand what they would get in return by following the Lord Jesus. They did not know about the resurrection yet, but those who come after will know about it from the Bible. The resurrection, which is the reason for people nowadays to follow the Lord Jesus, is different from the disciples' reason. We follow after the Lord Jesus because we expect life after death, but the disciples at that time followed by faith from teaching.

28 And Jesus said to them, Truly I say to you, that you who have followed Me, in the regeneration when the Son of Man will sit upon the throne of His glory, you also will sit on twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.

Comments Matthew 19:28. The new world (the regeneration) is the world that has the Lord Jesus sitting upon His glorious throne, ruling His people, and it is beyond what the human mind can understand. The new world here refers to a physical world that will appear to all people to see at the same time at the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth (see [John 14:1-4](#); [Matthew 25:31](#); [Luke 22:28-30](#); 2 Peter 3:10-13; Revelation 20:4-6). God the Father will literally open the sky so that all people living on earth at that time will see this new world where the Lord Jesus sits upon His glorious throne. The Father Himself does this action of opening the sky. The Father puts His hand through the sky and separates the sky to open it like a tunnel. The Holy Spirit, which dwells on the earth, will open the eyes of the chosen ones all at the same time to see the Lord Jesus sitting on His glorious throne (see [Acts 7:55-56](#)). All eyes will see this new world and the Lord Jesus' throne (see Revelation 19:11-16). "... you also will sit on twelve thrones" refers to the final twelve apostles that will sit on twelve thrones, ruling in the new world with the Lord Jesus.

29 And everyone that has left houses, or brothers, or sisters, or father, or mother, or children, or lands, for My name's sake, will receive a hundredfold, and will inherit eternal life.

Comments Matthew 19:29. You could use this verse to justify salvation by works, but this verse actually refers to the heart. The Lord Jesus has already

done the work, so there is no more work to be done for salvation; we only need to believe and follow Him. In this verse, the Lord does not mean that you abandon your family but that you abandon the inner attachment of the heart to your family to become free in hearing the purpose of the Lord for you. The person who does this will have a special calling or purpose to serve the Lord, but this will not mean abandoning their family. The family is one in the Lord; you can separate for a while for work purposes, but you do not abandon the family; it is never the Lord's will to separate completely (see 1 Timothy 5:8).

30 However, many first will be last, and last first.

Comments Matthew 19:30. The meaning of this verse can be linked to verse 29, referring to the cleanness of the heart. This verse refers to people who have a heart that is as clean as a newborn baby and think no wicked things inside of them; this kind of heart can be counted as following the teachings of the Bible. These people look as though they are the first to go to heaven, but there is one problem with their hearts: they have yet to open their hearts to accept the Lord Jesus. On the other hand, you have the hearts of mature persons that do not look clean, yet they have opened their hearts to the Lord, and their heart is cleansed by the blood of the Lord Jesus; these look as last, but in fact, are the first to go in the kingdom of the heavens (see [Matthew 21:31](#)). The heart of the mature person that is cleansed by the blood of the Lord Jesus that is the one to be first (see [Luke 18:9-14](#)).

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) Christians should not divorce; the only cause of divorce allowed by the Lord is when adultery is involved. 2) As in this chapter, if it is for a man who cannot be alone, he should marry. 3) We, as parents, should pray for our children and lay hands on them regularly. 4) There is no work we can do to be saved; the Lord Jesus has already done the work; we only need to believe in Him and follow His teachings. 5) Abandon your inner attachments to riches and family to become free in hearing the purpose of the Lord for you. 6) The family is one in the Lord; you can separate for a while for work purposes; however, you must not abandon the family completely, for it is never the Lord's will to ask anyone to separate from the family.

Chapter 20

SUMMARY

We should keep in mind that the Lord was traveling nonstop, and great crowds followed Him at all times. In Chapter 19, we find the Lord Jesus in the region of Judea beyond Jordan. In Chapter 20, the Lord is traveling back from Judea beyond the Jordan. Then, we see that "Jesus is going up to Jerusalem," and later, it says, "as they went out of Jericho." This chapter focuses on the love and mercy of the true Master, who is the Father, possessing the highest authority yet choosing to rule His people with love and mercy. Christians must worship the God of Three (the Father, the Son Jesus, and the Holy Spirit) in One, but we learn that the Father is first. All humans are born with the knowledge of who the Master is, and they must learn who the Master is and accept the decisions and authority of the Master. In this chapter, the Lord Jesus interacts with His disciples, the mother of the sons of Zebedee, the sons of Zebedee James and John, a crowd of people from Jericho, and two blind men. 1) The Lord Jesus tells the parable of the laborers in the vineyard. The parable teaches us that the Lord is fair, and He gives one Bible to the whole world. Our duty is to meditate on the Word of God. In heaven, there is no disagreement from below to above, and all must accept the authority of the Master. We must accept the "denarius" reward without grumbling. 2) The Lord Jesus foretells His crucifixion to the disciples. He tells them that His own people are the ones who will deliver Him to the outsiders to be crucified, but He will rise again on the third day. Here, we must remember that the Lord Jesus always glorifies the Father, even in His earthly sufferings. 3) The Lord Jesus addresses the request of the mother of the sons of Zebedee. He says that her request is subject to the highest authority, the Father. However, this does not contradict the God of Three; it simply shows us that the Father is above all and is first in all things. The Lord Jesus consults the Father for all His decisions, and He always follows the Father's advice. 4) The healing of the two blind men shows that persistence in prayer is the key to receiving the mercy of the Father. The Lord teaches us to do the same. If we need help, we must keep asking as the Bible tells us. If a person keeps asking, the Lord will show mercy.

1 For the kingdom of the heavens is like to a man, a master of a house, who went out early in the morning to hire laborers into his vineyard.

Comments Matthew 20:1. "For the kingdom of the heavens is like to a man, a master of a house." Put your mind back to the beginning. Think that all is from the Father; One in all, as the Bible tells us, and all in One. Everything that is talked about here in this parable is in the Father. He is the owner of all things (seen and unseen). Heaven, earth, and the universe are in Him; in Him alone, all things have been created (see [Acts 17:28](#); [Colossians 1:15-17](#)).

When the Bible states that "in Him" all things exist, think as simply as you have inside of you, small, little things; in the same manner, all things exist in God. Humans are like dust in the eyes of the Father because all things are in Him. The universe itself is in Him, and humans cannot imagine how big the Father is, but even if we are small, the Father loves all humans. He sent His own begotten Son, the Lord Jesus, to take the form of a human; this has shown the love of the Father, but no human thinks of Him, and they don't even thank Him. Also, the Father, when He created all things, at the same time He assigned duties and gave work to each individual; but when they go out and mingle with the world, the calling in their heart is hidden from them. Because of the worries of the world, the will of the Father in their hearts becomes hidden.

"A man, a master of a house." The house belongs to the master. The master controls the whole house. All the power and decisions belong to the master, and the whole household will do as the master commands.

"House" refers to the throne of God (see [Isaiah 66:1-2](#); [Acts 7:49](#)). Imagine heaven and the Lord sitting upon heaven with His foot resting upon the earth. Imagine the picture of the Lord with one foot on the earth, and where do you think His other foot shall be? The Bible is clear: you can't imagine the greatness of the throne of God and how big it should be. All things are under His power because He has created all things. And think further that only humans have been fashioned by His hand; everything else was created by His will.

"Vineyard" in this verse refers to the seen world.

"Laborers" refers to those who take the tithe money: those who live on the house of the Lord's money.

"Hire" means calling from the Lord.

"Early in the morning" relates to the point of conception. The Lord will assign the calling of the Lord at the point of conception. Even at the point of

conception, the Lord has foreseen the future of that soul. The Lord already knows that the soul will mingle with the world of the seen world and will let the call become hidden. The Lord places the call even before a person has been born (see Jeremiah 1:5; Psalm 139:13-16). The inner soul hears the voice of the Lord's calling. Within the parable, we have various groups of people who will respond to the voice of the Lord.

This parable is a stumbling block for many people. Humans think only about the world they can see. However, the Lord of heaven is Lord above all, the seen and the unseen world. His vineyard includes both worlds, the seen and the unseen. He goes to the unseen world and gives all souls the knowledge of God (He created all things); that knowledge of God is considered in the human world as a calling to be in the world of humans. The purpose and calling have been placed in the vineyard of the unseen. When the souls go out into the seen world, all have the calling within them, but when they mingle with the seen world, it makes the calling become dim. But it does not disappear; it is just dim. The Father sends the Holy Spirit to go out and work in each individual and help the individual find the inner call that has been placed within them. The chosen ones will find the path that has been put in them from the beginning.

2 Then having agreed with the laborers for a denarius a day, he sent them into his vineyard.

Comments Matthew 20:2. "Agreed" is when the person has made the commitment to follow the Lord. After agreeing on a denarius payment, the person gets the understanding from the Lord of what is to be done.

3 And having gone out about the third hour, he saw others standing in the marketplace idle;

Comments Matthew 20:3. "And having gone out about the third hour." The hours mentioned, the third, the sixth, and the ninth hour, are mentioned to let us know that God never stops working. Always, the Lord searches the hearts of all to find those who want to follow and find the will of the Lord for themselves.

"Standing in the marketplace idle." A person feels the call from the Lord in their heart, but lets the worries of the world stop the complete follow from within the heart, and lets their mind sway their heart, deterring the action that the Lord has put in their heart. Being idle towards the call of the Lord is to

develop thoughts that make the heart think that it is right to do whatever they believe is good for themselves, instead of following the call from the Lord.

"Marketplace" here refers to a certain point in time in the life of a person, when a person reaches a situation to make a choice regarding the path they take.

4 and he said to them, Go you also into the vineyard, and whatever if might be right, I will give you.

5 And they went. Again, then, having gone out about the sixth and the ninth hour, he did likewise.

Comments Matthew 20:5. The groups of people hired at the sixth hour and the ninth hour fall into the same category as the ones hired at the third hour.

6 Then, about the eleventh, having gone out, he found others standing, and he says to them, Why do you stand here all the day idle?

Comments Matthew 20:6. "Why do you stand here all the day idle?" This group of people is a separate group. These have ignored the call of the Lord and wandered. They feel sorry, but no one is ever going to want them. This group is the group of people who believe they do neither bad nor good to anyone and have the right to choose for themselves what they can do for themselves. But they end up wondering; they don't find a place to go, and end up standing idle in empty and dark places.

7 They say to him, Because no one has hired us. He says to them, Go you also into the vineyard, and whatever may be right, you will receive.

Comments Matthew 20:7. "Go you also into the vineyard." This saying shows that the Lord always gives second chances to everybody. As long as the person doesn't turn their back on the Lord and only sits idle in regards to the call but doesn't deny the existence of the Lord, the Lord will give second chances (see Hebrews 11:6).

8 Then evening having arrived, the lord of the vineyard says to his foreman, Call the laborers, and pay them the wage, beginning from the last to the first.

Comments Matthew 20:8. "Then evening having arrived." This compares the life of a person from the start until the end, and it marks the time to get the reward for what the person has been doing all day. The evening marks the time for the reward in the unseen world as a payment for the life that has been working for the Lord until the end of life (human life term on earth).

"Foreman" here refers to the Angel of the Lord.

Q: Why is the order of the payment starting from the last to the first? A: We humans have problems accepting authority, and it is in our human nature to think about what is fair or not. But the Lord is above all things fair or unfair; as the Bible tells us, the master has the right to do as he pleases. Here, the real purpose of taking the last first is to learn and accept the authority of the master. If we love the Lord from our hearts, we don't care about being first or last or how much payment we get.

9 And having come those about the eleventh hour, they received each a denarius.

Comments Matthew 20:9. "A denarius" here represents the knowledge of who the master (the gift of knowledge) is, and accepting the decision and authority of the master. In heaven, there is no disagreement from below to above; all must accept the authority of the master. We must accept the reward without grumbling.

10 And the first having come, they considered that they would receive more, but they themselves also received each a denarius.

11 Now having received, they grumbled against the master of the house,

Comments Matthew 20:11. "They grumbled." One problem of us humans is greed. Greed and power always play a big role over the mind how to think what we should receive. Each individual had already made their judgment about what they should receive. Even knowing who the master is, greed still plays a role.

12 saying, These last, have done one hour, and you have made them equal to us, who have borne the burden of the day and the scorching heat.

Comments Matthew 20:12. The remembrance of what they have done in the past follows the mind and shapes the greed itself, making them believe what they deserve and what they should receive in the unseen world. They believe they did only good and their reward should be multiplied, but they do not remember what bad they did. The Lord can see all the good and bad that an individual has done.

13 But answering to one of them, he said, Friend, I do you no wrong; did you not agree with me for a denarius?

14 Take what is yours, and depart; now, I desire to give to this last, even as to you.

Comments Matthew 20:13-14. These verses show that the Lord is just and fair. The reward is upon the deed of an individual. No one should complain about the decision the Lord has made for an individual.

The Lord gives one Bible to the whole world. Some choose to meditate on what is written, while others choose to read to kill time. You kill time but you do not know that you kill your soul as well. The Bible is the food for your soul; you do not meditate on it, but you seek reward. The just and fair is in the Bible itself; all can have the Bible, but many don't use it. This is the fairness of the Lord: He gives the Word of God to all, bad and good. There is only one duty for everyone to read and meditate on the Word of God. No one can complain about the fairness of the Lord. All have the chance to get the food for the soul. But not everyone chooses to take the unseen food. The dark world uses another kind of book to take the attention of the human mind away from the book of life. This is not the Lord's fault for the one who did not want to take food for the soul. You can read the Word of God, but you don't understand because you read with your human mind, and you do not ask for understanding, but you hope to understand on your own. You could read the Bible all your life, but if you do not meditate and ask the Lord to guide you, you will not find the denarius. This parable shows it out: the denarius is in the Bible.

15 Is it not lawful for me to do what I will with mine own? Or is your eye evil because I am good?

Comments Matthew 20:15. This verse can be supported by referencing additional verses from the Bible. The Lord created all things, and He is above all things. Can the created things, the below, judge the above? The Lord's generosity is poured down on the below. Look around; even those who are bad enjoy all the things the Lord has created, as it is written in the Bible (see Matthew 5:45; Acts 14:17). When a created being challenges the Lord, it shows they do not trust the Lord.

16 Thus the last will be first, and the first last.

Comments Matthew 20:16. In the context of the parable "the last will be first," it refers not to the last that comes to the Lord but to the last who acknowledges the authority that is above all authority and believes with a true heart, even if it may take a long time to come to that point. This one will count to come in first. But, the first that comes by mouth saying, "I believe, I believe," believing by mouth and not by heart, those ones will be last. The talk of "the first" by mouth may be louder than the talk of "the last" that speaks by

the heart. Whoever comes to acknowledge the authority of the Lord by heart, that one is the first, even if he took a longer time to come to this point, not the one who acknowledges the authority first and loudly, but by mouth only.

17 And Jesus going up to Jerusalem, took the twelve by themselves apart, and on the way, He said to them,

18 Behold, We go up to Jerusalem; and the Son of Man will be betrayed to the chief priests and scribes; and they will condemn Him to death,

19 and will betray Him to the Gentiles to mock, and to scourge, and to crucify; and the third day He will be raised up.

Comments Matthew 20:17-19. These verses clearly show how humans are. The destroyer has come among them. Not the Gentiles that betrayed the Lord Jesus; His own people are the ones that betrayed Him to the outsiders. But all things must happen as it has been written. His own people flip over and betray the Lord.

20 At that time, the mother of the sons of Zebedee came to Him with her sons, worshipping and asking something from Him.

Comments Matthew 20:20. The sons of Zebedee are James and John (see Mark 10:35). In Matthew, we see the mother coming to ask the Lord Jesus about her sons, and in Mark, we see the sons coming to ask the Lord Jesus about granting them the right to sit one at His right and the other at His left. Both Matthew and Mark are correct in detailing the events of this encounter. Initially, the mother made the request, and later, the sons also came to ask. Here in Matthew, the Lord gives us the encounter with the mother of James and John, asking the Lord something. This event itself has shown how all mothers should be. Because this mother went beyond her ability to follow with her sons, the Lord had shown mercy to her; He answered her request in the Bible. This here shows the way the Lord created the relationship between a mother and her children: the mother should show love and concern for her children.

21 And He said to her, What do you desire? She says unto Him, Command that these my two sons may sit, one on Thy right hand, and one on Thy left hand, in Thy kingdom.

Comments Matthew 20:21. This request really is not a request that should come out of the mouth of a disciple. But, even if the person has understanding,

this is the human way. The Holy Spirit tells us in our hearts what is right and wrong, but we miss it many times. What we think (reason) will always come out first. The weight of the thought of reason is heavier than the heart speaking; always, the thought of reason comes first. The Lord allowed this request to come for the purpose of teaching us how to be among brothers in the Lord.

Q: How can we best connect the events of this story as described in the Gospels of Matthew and Mark? A: We must understand that there is a short gap of time here between verses 21 and 22. The Lord Jesus initially ignored the woman's question. Then the sons followed up with the same request (see Mark 10:35). The Lord Jesus then answered the sons and their mother in verse 22.

22 Answering now, Jesus said, You do not know what you request. Are you able to drink the cup which I am about to drink, and with the baptism which I am baptized, to be baptized? They say to Him, We are able.

Comments Matthew 20:22. "Are you able to drink the cup which I am about to drink ..." This cup referred to here is a cup of rejection by the world and abandonment of love from the family itself (i.e., heavenly family) (see Matthew 27:46). This is a simple cup for the one who gives the cup, but it is heavy for the one who will receive the cup. When the Lord was crucified, He carried His own suffering, but He took the suffering of the entire world upon His own death. No human can take that; it is too heavy for any human. If you want to follow the Lord, no believer can take this cup; we must only accept that the Lord has carried the cup of suffering upon His shoulders (see Isaiah 53:3-5). But even though all believers know this, they try to put it aside and just acknowledge it by mouth, but not from the heart.

"They say to Him, We are able." This saying shows the human mind, showing how the mind is; their minds want to do things even though they don't know what it is. The mouth already says it out before they know what it is. As the Bible tells us, we will be judged by what we say. Do not let the word come out fast; you cannot swallow back the word after it is out, and that word will be used to judge you at the end. This advice is for everyone to think about.

23 He says to them, My cup indeed you will drink, and the baptism with which I am baptized you will be baptized; but to sit on My right hand, and on My left hand, is not Mine this to give; but for whom it has been prepared by My Father.

Comments Matthew 20:23. "My cup indeed you will drink ..." At this point, they do not know the cup, but they will be part of it; however, they will not be the ones who drink it. The Bible tells us that they were with the Lord Jesus, and they would see the Lord be crucified, flogged, and treated as something, not like someone. They will see all, but they will not know the feeling.

"But to sit on My right hand, and on My left hand ..." This verse does not go against the Trinity of God. But many people use this verse to discredit the doctrine of the Trinity of God. Their question is: "If the Lord Jesus is God, how then does this verse limit the authority of the Lord Jesus?" However, we must note that the Father is above all. Three Persons (God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit) are in One, but the Father comes first. The heart of a believer should never forget the Three in One; all believers must not put one above another. However, the Father comes first above all, but when we worship, we should always remember the Three but One. The Trinity of God makes the Bible complete, and we cannot leave out any Person of the Three (God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, or the Holy Spirit), but the Father is first. Among the ones that call themselves Christians but do not believe in the Trinity of God, you should not have anything to do with them; they can be a Christian by name but not a true believer.

24 And having heard, the ten were indignant concerning the two brothers.

Comments Matthew 20:24. This verse tells readers that even among the disciples, it was not always easy to overlook the boldness of some. The request that was presented to the Lord Jesus by the sons of Zebedee required a lot of courage, as the Lord was the Holy Teacher among them. When the two sons of Zebedee asked this direct question (see verse 21), the other disciples felt that it showed a lack of respect toward the Lord. Nevertheless, the Lord did not show anger; then the other disciples felt that these two had more courage than they did and felt uneasy about their actions.

25 But Jesus having called them, said, You know that the rulers of the Gentiles exercise lordship over them, and the great ones exercise authority over them.

26 Not so will it be among you; but whoever may will to become great among you, let him be your servant;

Comments Matthew 20:26. "Servant" here refers to the person who receives the order from the Lord in their heart to serve as the Lord Jesus came on earth to serve. Servant here does not necessarily mean to be a servant of men, but a

servant of God, and to do work on earth in the name of the Lord: going to tell people the good news about the Lord Jesus coming to earth, about the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, and to patiently wait according to the Bible for the second return of the Lord Jesus.

27 and whoever may will to be first among you let him be your slave;

28 even as the Son of Man came not to be served, but to serve, and to give His life as a ransom for many.

Comments Matthew 20:28. The Lord Jesus came to give the Living Word to humans, not to receive. The Son received orders from the Father to serve mankind. The order for the Son was to come down to be born and live in the flesh and point the way for humans to come to the Father. The Lord Jesus opened the way to the Father by His death on the cross, but while living on earth, He pointed the way to come to the Father. God cannot serve men, but God, who was born in human form and became one hundred percent man, could receive orders from the Father and serve mankind.

29 And as they were going out from Jericho, a great multitude followed Him.

Comments Matthew 20:29. Many, many things happen in one day. That is why the Bible tells us that not everything that the Lord Jesus did has been written down (see [John 21:25](#)). The healing presented in [Matthew 20:29-34](#) describes a different scenario than the healings presented in [Mark 10:46-52](#) and [Luke 18:35-43](#).

30 And behold, two blinds sitting beside the road, having heard that Jesus is passing by, cried out, saying, Lord, Son of David, have mercy on us.

31 And the multitude rebuked them, that they should be silent; but they cried out the more, saying, Lord, Son of David, have mercy on us.

Comments Matthew 20:31. This verse shows us that persistence is the key to prayer. Even being blocked and tried to be stopped, these two blind men did not stop asking for mercy. The Lord teaches us that we should do the same; if we need help, we need to keep asking as the Bible tells us. If a person keeps asking, the Lord will show mercy.

32 And having stopped, Jesus called them, and said, What do you wish I should do to you?

Comments Matthew 20:32. This verse has shown to all humans how the Lord is. He is willing to listen. He just wants us to learn and ask Him to show mercy.

33 They say to Him, Lord, that our eyes may be opened.

34 Then Jesus, being moved with compassion, touched their eyes; and immediately they received sight, and followed Him.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) Christians should worship the God of Three (God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit) in One. 2) We must humble ourselves and acknowledge the highest authority (the Trinity of God) in our lives; we should not argue within ourselves when the Lord speaks in our hearts. 3) The Lord is fair and just; He gave the Bible to all people. We must meditate on His Word and not stay idle regarding the call the Lord puts in our hearts. 4) Persistence in prayer is the key to receiving the Lord's mercy.

Chapter 21

SUMMARY

The events described in this chapter center on the Lord Jesus' entry into Jerusalem as the Most High King, a fulfillment of an Old Testament prophecy. The events occur in Jerusalem and places around Jerusalem, and the Lord Jesus interacts with the disciples, crowds of people, children, and the leaders (the chief priests and the scribes). 1) As the prophet Zechariah prophesied, the Lord Jesus, the Most High King, entered Jerusalem on a beast of burden that is a colt of a donkey. The multitudes accepted the Lord Jesus as the Most High King, the people spread their cloaks on the ground, and all, including children, praised Him, shouting "Hosanna to the Son of David." The Father sent the Holy Spirit to open people's hearts to fulfill the prophecy. We are all born with the knowledge of the Most High King. The Holy Spirit stirred the calling in people's hearts, so everyone recognized the Lord Jesus as the Most High King in unison. The Holy Spirit had opened the knowledge that the Father had put in the souls of humans even before they were born. 2) The Lord Jesus ministers in the temple in Jerusalem. Upon entering the temple, the Lord Jesus cleanses the temple while showing hurt that people had transformed the house of the Lord into a "den of robbers." He heals the blind, the lame, and the sick, and the Holy Spirit puts praises in the children's mouths to cry out loud, "Hosanna to the Son of David." 3) The Lord Jesus teaches the disciples about faith using the fig tree lesson. As soon as the words "never let there be fruit from you" came out of the mouth of the Lord, the disciples witnessed that the tree immediately withered. This experience served as a lasting reminder for them that with faith, all things are possible. 4) The chief priests and the elders of the people question the authority of the Lord Jesus in teaching and healing. The Lord Jesus doesn't answer them immediately; instead, He asks them a question about John, the messenger of the Lord, which they do not answer. God does not lie, no matter the reason. Since they do not answer His question, the Lord Jesus does not give them a direct answer but instead tells them two parables. a) The parable of the father and two sons. This parable tells them that God the Father gives chances to everyone at the same time. However, each person's response to the Father's call will determine where each one will go. b) The parable of the master and the farmers. This parable tells them that the Father sent His servants, but they did not receive them. Ultimately, He sent His Son, but instead of accepting

the Son, they plotted against Him. They took Him out of the temple, mocked Him, and killed Him. Through this parable, the Lord Jesus conveys that after his death, the leadership will transition from humans to the Holy Spirit (see [John 14:16-17](#)).

1 And when they drew near to Jerusalem, and came to Bethphage, to the Mount of Olives, then Jesus sent two disciples,

Comments Matthew 21:1. Bethphage and Bethany were two small neighboring cities. People sometimes referred to these cities just by one name, Bethphage.

2 saying to them, Go into the village in front of you, and immediately you will find a donkey tied, and a colt with her; having untied bring to Me.

Comments Matthew 21:2. The donkey and its colt were tied together. At that time, this was the way: the mother and the baby were tied together to keep them calm. If you take the colt, the mother will follow. The disciples brought both of them to the Lord Jesus. The Lord would not separate the mother from her baby.

3 And if anyone says anything to you, you shall say, The Lord has need of them; then immediately he will send them.

4 Then this came to pass, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, saying,

5 Say to the daughter of Zion, Behold, Thy King comes to you, Meek, and mounted on a donkey, Even upon a colt the foal of a beast of burden.

Comments Matthew 21:5. "Daughter of Zion" refers to Israel as the children of God.

"Thy King" refers to the Lord Jesus. He is the king of His children.

The donkey is called "a beast of burden" because of its use at that time. Everything would go on the back of the donkey; heavy, heavy loads would go on its back.

Q: What is the significance of the Lord Jesus entering Jerusalem riding on a colt of a donkey? A: This act was not only to fulfill the prophecy from Zechariah 9:9. The main word in this verse to pay attention to is meek (humble). This act was to show all humans that the Most High King humbled Himself by sitting on an animal used for work, illustrating the humility of the

Most High King. The Most High King who came on a beast of burden has been lifted high above all heaven and earth by the Father Himself.

Q: Why was the animal a colt of a donkey and not a mature donkey? A: The Lord will not use anything that man has used to enter the city of Jerusalem. The animal had to be pure and clean, such as a colt that no one had sat on. Riding a colt that no one has sat on before shows that even animals obey the Lord. Humans disobey, but the young colt obeyed the Lord; this can also be viewed as a comparison.

6 Then the disciples went, and did even as Jesus directed them;

7 they brought the donkey and the colt, and put on them their garments; and He sat on them.

Comments Matthew 21:7. The donkey was tied together with the colt; bring the colt, and the donkey will follow. No man would sit on two animals, and no man would normally sit on a colt; but at that time, people would sit on a donkey. However, as the Bible says, the Lord would sit on the colt, "which no man ever yet sat" (see [Mark 11:2](#)), and this explains which one of the animals the Lord Jesus used.

"And He sat on them." "Them" refers to the garments (cloaks) that have been put on the donkeys. So, the Lord rode on the colt only, sitting on the garments that were put on the colt.

8 And the most part of the multitude spread their garments on the road; and others cut branches from the trees and spread them on the road.

Comments Matthew 21:8. This verse clearly shows how most people accepted the difference in level between them and the Lord Jesus. Stepping on something above and below is what this action shows. By spreading their garments (cloaks), they admitted to being below, and they put the Lord Jesus above them and gave Him the higher authority. We see that the majority of people accepted the first entrance of the Lord Jesus into the city; the people acknowledged the authority of the Lord Jesus as the Most High King.

9 Now the multitudes that went before Him, and that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna to the Son of David! Blessed is the One coming in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest!

Comments Matthew 21:9. When the multitudes shouted, "Hosanna to the Son of David," this was to fulfill what the prophet was saying about the Christ (see [Matthew 22:41-45](#)).

"Blessed is the One coming in the name of the Lord." To make the multitude come and worship in the same way, only the Holy Spirit can do. Without the Holy Spirit, they could not quote this verse and keep shouting. The Lord guided them to do the work and fulfill what is written in the Scriptures.

"Hosanna in the highest." The crowd used the expression to glorify the Lord Jesus as He entered the city of Jerusalem.

10 And He having entered into Jerusalem, all the city was stirred, saying, Who is this?

Comments Matthew 21:10. The same question comes from the hearts of the multitudes: "Who is this?" This verse shows the work of the Holy Spirit, who stirred up the multitudes to come to glorify the Lord as He entered the city of Jerusalem. No prophet of the Lord will die outside Jerusalem (see [Luke 13:33](#)).

11 And the multitudes said, This is the prophet, Jesus, from Nazareth of Galilee.

Comments Matthew 21:11. The Bible tells us that the Lord Jesus shall be called a Nazarene (see [Matthew 2:23](#)). All that is written in the Scripture shall be fulfilled; the Father sent the Holy Spirit to open the hearts of the people to fulfill what is written. How did the great multitude know the details about the Lord Jesus being a prophet from Nazareth (a very small town)? The word-of-mouth travels fast, but this is not gossip; it is the work of the Holy Spirit stirring people's hearts to the mighty coming of the Lord to meet people's needs; the Lord has come to help, not to condemn. And that is why they shouted, "Hosanna in the highest," to glorify the One who comes in the name of the Lord; this shows that the hearts of people accepted the Lord Jesus.

12 And Jesus entered into the temple, and cast out all those selling and buying in the temple, and He overturned the tables of the money changers, and the seats of those selling the doves;

13 and He says to them, It is written, My house will be called a house of prayer; but you make it a den of robbers.

Comments Matthew 21:12-13. These verses show more than anger; they show disappointment and pain. When people use the house of the Lord as a marketplace and not for worship, it makes the Lord feel hurt and disappointed.

These are His own people, not the Gentiles who were doing this. What these people were doing in the temple was not actions of glorifying God; these were the actions of a marketplace, not worshiping (they should sell their things outside of the temple grounds). What people do nowadays in the house of the Lord is not much different from what these people did in the temple. The purpose of going to the house of the Lord is not for prayer but for meeting friends, but the first reason in the heart should be to go to the house of the Lord to praise the Lord.

"Den of robbers." Here, "robbers" does not mean robbers in the way of the world, but rather robbers of glorifying God. These robbers rob, straight, the glory of the Lord; they emphasize human activities instead of God's mercy. Today, we can also find these kinds of robbers in our churches. Many build big churches, and the question is whether they are building them to glorify the Lord or to show off and make themselves important. When building like this, instead of pointing to the Lord, they take attention away from the Lord to the things around them, and this action is also the robbers' action.

14 And the blind and the lame came to Him in the temple, and He healed them.

15 Now the chief priests and the scribes having seen the wonders that He did, and the children crying out in the temple and saying, Hosanna to the Son of David, they were indignant,

Comments Matthew 21:15. "The wonders that He did" refers to the healings that the Lord Jesus performed.

"They were indignant." This clearly reveals jealousy on the part of the priests and scribes.

16 and said to Him, Do Thou hear what these are saying? And Jesus says to them, Yes; did you never read, Out of the mouth of infants and nursing babies, Thou have completed praise?

Comments Matthew 21:16. In this verse, pay attention to the words "completed praise." From the little children, the hearts that are clean and pure will praise the Lord with clean hearts. That is what the Lord prefers: praise the Lord as little children do, from within your heart and not from your head. The children hear straight from the Holy Spirit in their hearts, and that makes their mouths speak "completed praise."

17 And He left them, went out of the city to Bethany, and lodged in the open there.

Comments Matthew 21:17. The Lord had a purpose in lodging outside Jerusalem to teach the disciples. He did not stay long in Bethany because His purpose was to travel and preach the Word.

18 Now in the morning as He returned to the city, He hungered.

19 And seeing a fig tree along the road, He came to it, and found nothing on it, except leaves only; and He says to it, Never let there be fruit from you. And immediately, the fig tree withered away.

Comments Matthew 21:18-19. For what happened to this fig tree, the disciples will benefit, as their faith in the Word is strengthened: do not say anything using the name of the Lord unless you have faith. The disciples needed to learn this fig tree lesson to build up their faith. The disciples at that time faced more troubles than what we are facing now. The fig tree lesson will stay with them to remind them that by faith all things are possible. As the words "never let there be fruit from you" came out of the mouth of the Lord, the disciples could see that the fig tree immediately withered away. This lesson will help them as they go along in life, because the Lord Jesus will not stay with them for long. Even for people nowadays, to hold on to your faith, remember this fig tree and how it withered at once.

20 And the disciples having seen, marveled, saying, How did the fig tree immediately wither away?

21 And answering, Jesus said to them, Truly I say to you, If you have faith, and do not doubt, you will not only do this of the fig tree, but even if you may say to this mountain, Be you taken away and thrown into the sea, it will be done.

Comments Matthew 21:21. People use this verse to test the Lord's power. Asking in prayer and asking for greed are different things. This verse teaches faith in God, not faith in getting things. The faith in getting things, the Lord means, for example, we pray for the tree, and what do we expect inside of us, the tree to grow or the tree to make fruit? When we pray for the tree to grow, then we want the Lord's mercy. That is when our heart wants the Lord to help the tree live, not die; and in that moment, we did not think of the fruit to come out of the tree, but only of the Lord's mercy to save the tree. But when we pray for the tree to make fruit, then the stomach is thinking, which is greed, and there is a different purpose in the prayers. When we pray asking for the tree to survive and make fruit, in that moment, we do not think in our hearts for the tree's health, but for the tree to make fruit for our stomach, and that is greed.

The Lord wants us to make a difference in the purpose of our prayers. Even if we have faith as big as a mountain, nothing will happen if the purpose of asking is wrong.

Q: In verse 19, we see that the Lord Jesus withered the tree because it did not bear fruit. How does His action relate to our comments in Matthew 21:21 about making a difference in the purpose of our prayers? A: It is important to distinguish between the Lord Jesus' actions in verses 18-19 and the parable He shares in verse 21. When the Lord Jesus was walking, He saw a full-grown tree along the road with only leaves. In this place, the tree can be seen as a mature believer who considers themselves to have knowledge about the Lord, but they never share that knowledge with anyone; this is like a full-grown tree that is not bearing fruit, which is why it is not worth still standing. But in the parable of verse 21, specifically in our comments, we are talking about the one who plants a tree and their expectation when planting it. When one expects and wishes that the Lord will help the tree live and grow, the heart thinks of the tree surviving, not dying. At this point, one does not think about the tree planting for the fruit; one expects the mercy of the Lord. Another one plants the seed and wants the tree to grow and bear fruit for their benefit, and prays, asking the Lord to keep the tree alive and producing fruit. These two cases have different purposes of asking.

"And do not doubt." Do not doubt when you come to ask something from the Lord. Most believers have this trouble: they believe that faith and doubt are two different things. You have faith in God, but you doubt yourself in receiving. So, if you doubt inside of you, deep inside, you don't believe in the God that you come to ask from, and you are not better than unbelievers.

22 And all things, whatever you may ask in prayer, believing, you will receive.

Comments Matthew 21:22. "All things, whatever." This saying does not include prayers that go against God's will and the nature of man. For example, you pray to win a lottery ticket: this prayer is against God's will. And, when cold weather comes, you ask to walk through the cold and not feel cold: this prayer is against the nature of man.

23 And He having come into the temple, the chief priests and the elders of the people came to Him when teaching, saying, By what authority are Thou doing these? And who gave Thee this authority?

Comments Matthew 21:23. "The chief priests and the elders of the people."

In the human way of planning, they were the top leaders by human appointment, but not by God's appointment. This is all the pride of men; you have been chosen to have power, but someone else comes to show you power and make you see true power (see Verse 14), so you will feel your power being challenged.

"Came to Him when teaching, saying, By what authority are Thou doing these? And who gave Thee this authority?" For being the person who can teach in the front, they will all call the Lord Jesus a Teacher. The Lord Jesus had the authority to be the Teacher. He was already teaching in the front. The authority was His and His alone (see Verse 14). How could the students ask who gave Him the authority when He was already in the front, having the authority? They (the leaders and the commoners) already accepted His authority by putting Him in the front. Only the rebellious students ask that question, and they are these ones: "the chief priests and the elders of the people."

24 And answering, Jesus said to them, I also will ask you one thing, which if you tell Me, I also will tell you by what authority I do these things.

Comments Matthew 21:24. Q: Why didn't the Lord Jesus answer their question directly? A: Because the Lord knows their hearts. It doesn't matter how many miracles He performs; the darkness of their hearts will cover their eyes. They see with their eyes, but they can't perceive.

25 The baptism of John, from where was it? From heaven or from men? And they reasoned with themselves, saying, If we should say, From heaven; He will say to us, Why then did you not believe him?

26 However, if we should say, From men; we fear the multitude; for all hold John as a prophet.

Comments Matthew 21:25-26. "The baptism of John, from where was it?" Q: Why did the Lord Jesus ask them this question? A: The Lord Jesus wanted them to point out who John was for them. John was the messenger of the Lord, but they could not accept it. John was the messenger of the Lord, and the Lord Jesus is the Lord—two different kinds of life: John, one way, the Lord Jesus, one way. However, in their eyes, neither way is right. Their reasoning shows clearly how their eyes perceive.

27 And answering Jesus, they said, We do not know. He also said to them, Neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things.

Comments Matthew 21:27. God does not lie; it doesn't matter for whatever reason to be (see Numbers 23:19). There is no shadow of darkness in Him. The Lord Jesus does not give them a direct answer but instead tells them the parable of the two sons.

28 But what do you think? A man had two sons; and having come to the first, he said, Son, go work today in the vineyard.

Comments Matthew 21:28. This parable has two parts. The first part tells the story of the two sons listening to the Father. The second part shows the actions of the two sons and the results of the mercy of the Father.

In this part, we will explain the significance of the characters and elements in the parable. "A man" here stands for the Father. The "two sons" stand one for the Pharisees and the other for those who listen to John the Baptist's message. The "work" in this verse means to follow and meditate on the commandments, do as the commandments say, and let the world see you following the commandments. And, "vineyard" means the world.

29 And answering he said, I will not; but having repented, he went.

30 And having come to the second, he said likewise. And answering he said, I; but he did not go.

Comments Matthew 21:29-30. "... I will not; but having repented, he went. ... I; but he did not go." The Father is looking at two types of people. The Father gives all of them a chance at the same time. The response of each individual to the call will determine where each one will go. Each one turned out in a different way, but the Lord gave them both the same chance.

31 Which of the two did the will of the father? They say, The first. Jesus says to them, Truly I say to you, that the tax collectors and the prostitutes go before you into the kingdom of God.

Comments Matthew 21:31. They can make the assessment, but they don't know how to bring it to use in their walk of following the Lord.

32 For John came to you in the way of righteousness, and you did not believe him; however, the tax collectors and the prostitutes believed him; then you, having seen, did not even repent afterward to believe him.

Comments Matthew 21:32. This verse shows the plan of the Father for humans to come to the Lord. With the Father's mercy, not just for His own people, but for the whole world, the messenger has come and pointed out to the

Savior of the world. It is an easy way for humankind, but humans want to be as great as God and ignore His message and deny the Savior. The chosen ones will listen to the message, but the outcasts will ignore the true message from the Father. Even now, the disobedient ones still ignore the message.

33 Hear another parable: There was a man, a master of a house, who planted a vineyard, and set a hedge around it, and dug a winepress in it, and built a tower, and rented it out to farmers, and traveled abroad.

Comments Matthew 21:33. In this comment, we explain the meaning of the characters and elements used in the parable.

"Master" refers to the Father.

"House" refers to the seen and the unseen worlds.

"Who planted a vineyard" refers to the place to be for God's people, the Jews.

"Set a hedge (or fence) around it" means that the Lord set the guide and protection for His people. Imagine the Holy Spirit covering them with His wings; that is the fence for His people. Even today, all His children have a seal in their hearts to link with the Holy Spirit, and the wing of the Holy Spirit extends to that person.

"Dug a winepress in it" refers to the procedure (the call from the Lord) to separate out the election among His children; the election of who has specific duties in life to do for the Lord.

"Built a tower" refers to the Word of God, all the regulations and the rules that have been written, and the Lord Jesus coming to point out the rule for all His chosen ones to follow. Through the Lord Jesus, all have the same rule, and nobody can say I know the Lord more than another. All will know Him because of the same rule.

"Rented it out to farmers" means that everything, the vineyard, the winepress, and the tower, have been rented (leased).

"Farmers" refers to the Jews.

"Traveled abroad" refers to the Father.

34 Then when the season of the fruits drew near, he sent his servants to the farmers, to receive his fruits.

Comments Matthew 21:34. "When the season of the fruit drew near" refers to the times when the "farmers" make mistakes, and they need to repent.

"His servants" are the election that went through the winepress, the chosen ones.

"To receive his fruit" refers to receiving those who repent and glorify the Lord in their hearts, the ones who come to the point of feeling sorry and want to restart again with the Lord.

35 And the farmers having taken his servants, indeed they beat one, and killed another, and stoned another.

Comments Matthew 21:35. The Lord sends His angel to the chosen ones (His servants) to give the message; those then go to the farmers (the Jews), and they have been mistreated.

36 Again, he sent other servants more than the first, and they did to them in like manner.

Comments Matthew 21:36. This verse discusses the actions humans took against the Lord's servants. The Lord sent them to serve the humans, but they killed some, beat some, and stoned some. However, the Lord never gives up. He keeps sending more of His servants. The Father's love is greater than His anger.

37 Then afterward he sent to them his son, saying, They will reverence my son.

Comments Matthew 21:37. "Then afterward." The Bible often says that His servants have been mistreated in many ways. But the Lord never gives up on us. Here, it reminds us how much the Father cares for humans. He sent His only begotten Son to save the whole world. However, we know from the Bible what humans did to His Son; it is written as proof for all. The sinful human nature did not want to obey. But, it will never happen again; that was the first and the last time because there is only one begotten Son to come and save us. There is no other way for mankind to come to the Father except through His Son, Jesus Christ.

38 But the farmers, having seen the son, said among themselves, This is the heir; come, let us kill him, and take possession of his inheritance.

Comments Matthew 21:38. "But the farmers, having seen the son." Regarding this verse, there are many instances in the Bible where people recognized the Lord Jesus, but they attempted to avoid using the term "Son"; instead, they referred to Him as a prophet. They recognized the authority in Him but could not accept Him as the Son of God; the most they gave was that

He was a prophet. They knew by heart who the Lord Jesus is, but because of tradition, they couldn't publicly say who He is (see [Mark 2:27](#)). If anyone accepted someone as the Son of God, that person must be stoned; not the person who accepted Him as a Son in their hearts, but the person who said publicly that He is the Son of God.

"Come, let us kill him, and take possession of his inheritance." Instead of accepting the Son, they plot against the Son. When they discuss His inheritance, it holds further significance. Because of the Lord Jesus' fame, miraculous works, and His authority, they want that fame to go to themselves as the ones with that power and authority. All they really want is to try to make it, as they are the ones who teach the Lord Jesus to perform miracles through their training, and in this way, they will still retain the power to control the people. The Lord has given humans wisdom, and they use that wisdom to fight Him instead of glorifying Him. Humans use their wisdom to try to make themselves like the Lord; this reveals the sinful nature of humans. But, without His Son, they will never be able to have the Father's eyes on them again. Forgiveness comes only by faith alone in His Son, not by works.

39 And having taken him, they cast him out of the vineyard, and killed him.

Comments Matthew 21:39. When they crucified the Lord Jesus, they took Him out of the temple to move Him further outside because they believed that if He were far from the temple, this would calm down the people. The Lord Jesus had many followers, and the way to make fewer problems for themselves was to discredit Him first, then kill Him. By mocking the Lord Jesus in public and putting Him to shame, His followers would be discouraged and back off, and afterward, they could do everything to Him. They would have fewer problems with the people if they had disgraced Him first in public, but the Lord Jesus was willing to take everything to fulfill the Father's plan. That is why the Lord Jesus is favored by the Father Himself, for He, being God, was willing to be disgraced by the creatures He created.

40 When therefore the master of the vineyard shall come, what will he do to those farmers?

41 They say to Him, Evil people, He will grievously destroy them, and will rent out the vineyard to other farmers, who will give to him the fruits in their seasons.

Comments Matthew 21:40-41. From this point on, the leadership will shift from humans to the Holy Spirit (see [John 14:26](#) and [Acts 1:12-15](#)). And this

will not be pleasing to those who believe they are in control. With this power shift, fights will start, within and from outside. The Bible tells us in many places that the authority belongs only to one King who created all. Only one King exists who has control over all, the King who created all things, not the created ones being the king. And now the Holy Spirit will administer the leadership to whoever He pleases, to the ones who are worthy to do the work, not based on looks but on the heart.

42 Jesus says to them, Did you never read in the scriptures, The stone which the builders rejected, This became the head of the corner; This was from the Lord, And it is marvelous in our eyes?

Comments Matthew 21:42. This verse tells us about the Lord Jesus Himself, who conquers all; all things are created through Him, and He is above all.

"Builders" refers to the Jews (His people).

"The stone" refers to the Son of God (the Lord Jesus).

"The head of the corner" or "the cornerstone" refers to the Lord Jesus. The Jews rejected the Lord Himself. After being rejected, He is the most important because everything is based on the cornerstone, and the fundamental belief and faith are built on this stone.

43 Therefore, I say to you that The Kingdom of God will be taken away from you, and it will be given to a people producing the fruits thereof.

44 And the one that falls on this stone will be broken; but on whomever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder.

Comments Matthew 21:43-44. This paragraph talks about the love of the Father for His people, the Jews. Though they keep rejecting Him, yet they are not forgotten; the Lord will always gather them back together. They will be scattered around, but the Lord will gather them back because they are His people, which will never change, regardless of what they do; they are His children. They did good work for the Gentiles by rejecting the Lord. The Lord has come calling the Gentiles to do only the work that His own people do not want to do, to proclaim the Lord and that He will be back again for all the people, not just for His people alone. The Lord will return again. The Gentiles should remember that because of the children falling, they themselves will proclaim the Word of the Lord.

"And the one that falls on this stone will be broken" still refers to His people, the Jews. Because they fall in this rejection ("... builders rejected"), they are scattered around ("will be broken").

"But on whomever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder" means that when this knowledge (about the cornerstone) falls on any of His chosen ones, their own people will reject them (the Christian ones will be made to suffer by their own people).

45 And the chief priests and the Pharisees having heard His parables, they perceived that He speaks about them.

Comments Matthew 21:45. This verse shows that the Pharisees and chief priest felt guilty in their hearts.

46 And seeking to lay hold of Him, they feared the multitudes, because they took Him as a prophet.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) The knowledge about God is put in our souls even before we are born, and the Lord gives a chance to all at the same time. What we do with this knowledge here on earth will determine where we go at the end of our lives. 2) We need to remember the fig tree lesson, how the tree withered as the words came out of the Lord Jesus' mouth. The Lord Jesus has authority over everything. 3) Pray with faith, but do not use greed when you pray. 4) After the crucifixion of the Lord Jesus, the leadership of His children was shifted from humans to the Holy Spirit; the Holy Spirit administers the duties to whoever He pleases.

Chapter 22

SUMMARY

The events described in this chapter are believed to have occurred in Jerusalem and the surrounding small towns. In this chapter, the Lord Jesus interacts with His disciples, the Pharisees, the Sadducees, the Herodians, a Pharisee lawyer, and the multitudes. As He travels, His disciples follow Him, and people come to join His company. Whatever He teaches the disciples, people can hear; nothing is in secret, and it is always in the open. The interactions described in this chapter took place in public places as the Lord Jesus traveled and taught. Six main points can be summarized as follows: 1) The Lord Jesus tells a parable about the kingdom of the heavens, where He likens the kingdom of the heavens to a king (the Father) who gave a wedding feast for his son (the Lord Jesus). The meaning of the wedding feast in the parable is to show that the ultimate decision belongs to the Father and that the Father alone makes all the decisions. Preparing the kingdom started with the moment when the first nail pierced the Lord Jesus' skin. The parable refers to the period from the Lord Jesus' crucifixion to His second coming, when humans are called to follow Him. The parable describes three stages: the Father prepares for the feast, the calling of the guests, and the feast itself. 2) The Pharisees and Sadducees plot to discredit the Lord Jesus in the eyes of His disciples, people, and rulers. The Lord has come to guide them, but they choose not to follow, even though they acknowledged Him as a teacher; therefore, the guilt is not with the Lord. 3) The Lord Jesus responds to the Pharisees' question, and He teaches about taxes. The Lord gives a simple answer and proves to the people that the wisdom of God is beyond the human mind and human understanding. 4) Responding to the Sadducees' question, Jesus teaches about resurrection. Through His answer, the Lord shows them that they do not know the Scripture and the power of God, but they are religious leaders. 5) Responding to the lawyer's question, the Lord Jesus teaches us about the great commandments. The Lord gives us two commandments to live by. First, you shall love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, and mind; and second, you shall love your neighbor as yourself. 6) The Lord Jesus asks the Pharisees a question about Himself. Then and now, people do not admit that the Lord Jesus is one hundred percent human and one hundred percent God. Through His question, the Lord Jesus wants them to acknowledge that He is the Son of God.

1 And answering, Jesus spoke again in parables to them, saying,

Comments Matthew 22:1. The wedding feast in this parable is given in honor of establishing the Kingdom of Heaven and pointing out to the real King who will rule over all the guests. It is hard for humans to understand the feelings of the Father and the Son; One in all, but different in authority and duty. The Father has all the authority; the Son's duty is to rule over all. The parable describes three stages. First, the Father prepares for the feast, including the hall, the table, the food, the guest list selection, the sending out of the servants, and the place where the guests will sit at the table. The guests to sit at the table are the chosen ones, the Jews, and the invited ones, the Gentiles. The second stage is the calling of the guests, and the final and third stage is the feast itself.

Q: What is the time frame of the parable? A: The moment of preparing the kingdom started with the time when the first nail had pierced the Lord Jesus' skin. The parable refers to the time period from the Lord Jesus' crucifixion until His second coming, when humans are called to follow the Lord Jesus.

2 The kingdom of the heavens has become like to a man, a king, who made a wedding feast for his son,

3 and sent out his servants to call those having been invited to the wedding feast, and they were not willing to come.

Comments Matthew 22:2-3. "A man, a king" here refers to the Father, and "his son" refers to the Lord Jesus. Remember, the Bible always refers to the bride as being the Church of God and the bridegroom as being the Lord Jesus. "Wedding feast for his son" refers to when the Father prepares the kingdom for His Son to rule. The Father will prepare the wedding feast and bring the people He has in His plan. The call to this feast is already put deep in the heart of each individual because the Lord calls everybody, and everyone has the same chance to get to heaven. When the Father prepares the wedding feast for His Son, He will lead those who respond to the call in their hearts. The world corrupts many of those who have the call, and they turn against the call of God that was put inside their heart from the beginning.

"His servants" refers to the apostles and the whole company of disciples of about one hundred and twenty gathered together in the upper room in Jerusalem (First group of servants: see [Acts 1:12-15](#)). The Holy Spirit came upon them, and they all went out to teach the Word to the Jews first. Before this anointing at Pentecost, they would not remember all the things the Lord

Jesus had done. When the Holy Spirit came upon them, the Holy Spirit would remind them of all the teachings of the Lord. The Holy Spirit must be given; no human mind can remember every word after a long time has passed and be able to write it down to prepare the Bible. Only through the Holy Spirit is it possible to bring the knowledge about the Lord and write the Bible.

"Those having been invited" refers to two groups of guests, the Jews first and then the Gentiles. The Jews who reject the call make the room available for the Gentile guests. That is when the second round of calling takes place. (See Revelation 11:1 "... Rise and measure the temple of God and the altar and those who worship there.") In Revelation 11:1, "Measure those who worship there," refers to this selection mentioned in this parable that says, "those having been invited."

4 Again he sent out other servants, saying, Tell those having been invited, Behold, I have made ready my dinner; my oxen and the fatlings have been killed, and all things are ready; come to the wedding feast.

5 But having paid no attention, they went away, one to his own field, then another to his merchandise;

6 and the rest having laid hold of his servants, mistreated, and killed them.

Comments Matthew 22:4-6. The Father continues to call the selected ones, the Jews. Yet, they still do not respond and mistreat the servants. They not only ignore the call; they do not even want to be called His people, because the eyes of the world are fixed on them; they feel they are a laughingstock for the nations. Look at the majority of Christians; they feel like them as well. When it is close to the end times, it will worsen; the hearts of humans will grow cold towards God and the living Word, and they will increasingly ignore the call.

There is a gap of time between each call (verse 3 and verse 4). The Lord's time is not the same as human time. After the Lord Jesus rose from the dead, many people heard what happened. From those who hear the good news, some will be chosen to have the duty as servants.

7 And the king was angry; and having sent his armies, he destroyed those murderers, and burned their city.

Comments Matthew 22:7. This verse refers to the time when the Romans besieged and conquered the city of Jerusalem in 70 AD and destroyed and burned the temple and the city. But this was their own fault for killing God's

Son and God's servants; it was then that the Lord took away His hand of protection.

As it is written in the Bible, all His children traveled with the Lord's help, and when they found a place to stay, they forgot what the Lord had done for them. The Lord removed His hand and let them face their own challenges by themselves. However, the love of the Lord never ends. They are His children and always will be His children; His Son comes into their nation.

8 Then he says to his servants, The wedding feast is ready, but those having been invited were not worthy.

Comments Matthew 22:8. "The wedding feast is ready." The Father Himself has prepared the whole celebration for His Beloved Son. For the Son's pleasure, the Father has been waiting and willing to forgive all; the Father wants to give a gift for His Beloved Son, that is, to forgive all who come under the blood of the Holy Son.

"But those having been invited" refers only to the Jews, the selected ones.

"Were not worthy" refers to those who rejected the commandments of God and practiced the traditions of men. For them, the traditions of men became more important than the commandments of God.

9 Go therefore to the intersections of the main roads, and as many as you shall find, invite to the wedding feast.

Comments Matthew 22:9. "As many as you shall find, invite to the wedding feast." The Father specifically said to go out and invite those you find, not differentiating any class of people, Jews, Gentiles, and outcasts; if in their hearts they show remorse toward their actions and repent, invite them to the feast.

10 And those servants went out into the main roads, gathered together all as many as they found, both bad and good; and the wedding feast was filled with guests.

Comments Matthew 22:10. "The wedding feast was filled with guests." Imagine heaven and the gates of heaven. The wedding hall where the wedding feast takes place is prepared somewhere in front of the gates of heaven. Souls are gathered here just before entering the gates of heaven. From this parable, we can imagine the wedding hall having two sections, one on top of the other. The top section is the section of the Jews, where only the selection of the Jews enters; the bottom section is where the second group of guests, the mixed

group, enters. This wedding feast is still yet an event that will take place at God's timing.

Heaven, the wedding hall, and the soul world are completely in a different dimension for human eyes' ability to see, but only the eyes of the soul can see. All the stars and everything in the sky exist to reveal to humans the glory of God and show that there is a God who created everything. It is His pleasure, not human pleasure; the purpose to create is just for Himself and for humans to see that there is a God who created all things (see Revelation 4:11). But humans do not use this knowledge to come to acknowledge the Creator.

11 Then the king having entered in to look upon those reclining, he saw there a man not being dressed in wedding garment;

Comments Matthew 22:11. As this verse tells, all of the guests have accepted His Son's mercy with a sincere heart, but there was one there who pretended to accept. This one hid himself among the others; he just wanted to have a portion of the good time. He thought that he could hide from the eyes of the Lord, but no one can.

"He saw there a man." This man represents all those who try to make themselves righteous in their own eyes, as the Bible tells us, but the Lord can see the inner heart of those individuals. Everything is like an open book for the Lord.

"Wedding garment." This portion of the parable refers to then and now as well. The wedding garment represents the faith and belief in the Lord Jesus, that He is the only true Son of God, and only by His blood are we all clean. The old garments have been changed; they have been washed by the blood of the Lord Jesus, and when they have been washed in the blood, they will be fit for the wedding feast. That is what the Father is looking for; the first thing the Father sees is the wedding garment, and the sin of that person will be covered. Do not come to the wedding if you do not have the wedding garment on you.

12 and he says to him, Friend, how did you enter here not having a wedding garment? And he was speechless.

Comments Matthew 22:12. "Friend, how did you enter here ..." This man (friend) represents all those who sneak in without proper wedding garments. This man was invited by the servants, and he hid among the true believers and the Jews. The servants' duty was only to invite the guests, not to sort them. As the Bible tells us, the wolf covered with lambskin can blind the eye, not just

for other believers but even for the servants. Just looking at the outer covering, you think it is right to invite them to the feast. But the Father's eyes can see through the covering; He sees deep through the hidden portion of the heart and soul. Nothing can be hidden in front of the Father.

13 Then the king said to the servants, Having bound his feet and hands, cast him out into the outer darkness; there will be the weeping and the gnashing of the teeth.

Comments Matthew 22:13. These servants (or attendants) here in this verse represent the angels of the Lord; angels who have the power and authority to carry out these actions. The outer darkness here represents the outer rim of Hades (see [Luke 16:22-23](#)). Note that here and in [Luke 16:22-23](#), the Lord refers to the outer level within the realm of Hades.

14 For many are called, but few chosen.

Comments Matthew 22:14. The meaning of the wedding feast itself is to show that everything is in the Father; this world itself is in the Father as well. The Father has all things in His hand. The ultimate decision belongs to the Father, and the Father alone makes all the decisions. Remember that the Lord Jesus Himself always does the Father's will.

15 Then having gone out, the Pharisees took counsel how they might ensnare Him in His words.

16 And they send to Him their disciples, with the Herodians, saying, Teacher, we know that Thou art true, and teach the way of God in truth, and do not care for anyone, for Thou do not look on the appearance of people.

Comments Matthew 22:16. Here, we see the hypocrisy of the Pharisees; they took the Herodians along as witnesses to what the Lord Jesus would answer about taxes.

This verse supports many of our comments about the Pharisees; they know, and they see, but they do not accept. The Lord has come to guide them, but they themselves chose not to follow; the guilt is not with the Lord (see [John 9:41](#)). If they did not know, there would be no guilt, but because they know (about the Lord) and admit, the guilt remains on them.

17 Tell us therefore, What do Thou think? Is it lawful to give tribute to Caesar, or not?

18 However, Jesus having perceived their malice, said, Why do you test Me, hypocrites?

19 Show Me the tribute coin. And they brought to Him a denarius.

20 And He says to them, Whose is this image and inscription?

21 They say to Him, Caesar's. Then He says to them, Give back therefore to Caesar the things of Caesar, and to God the things of God.

22 And having heard, they marveled; and having left Him, they went away.

Comments Matthew 22:21-22. Here we have the meaning: the Lord has proved to people that the wisdom of God is beyond the human mind; a simple answer has answered it all. The Lord did not use many pretty words but always straightforward words, and the words would convict the hearts of humans.

23 On that day Sadducees came to Him, those saying that there is no resurrection, and they questioned Him,

24 saying, Teacher, Moses said, If someone should die, having no children, his brother shall marry his wife, and raise up offspring to his brother.

25 Now there were with us seven brothers; and the first having married, died, and having no seed, he left his wife to his brother;

26 in like manner the second also, and the third, until the seventh.

27 Then, last of all, the woman died.

28 In the resurrection therefore whose wife will she be of the seven? For all had her.

29 Now Jesus answering said to them, You are led astray, not knowing the Scriptures, nor the power of God.

30 For in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are like angels in heaven.

31 Now concerning the resurrection of the dead, have you not read that which was spoken to you by God, saying,

32 I am the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob? He is not the God of the dead, but of the living.

33 And having heard, the multitudes were astonished at His teaching.

Comments Matthew 22:23-33. "Resurrection." The Lord talks about the resurrection of the body.

"He is not the God of the dead, but of the living" (see verse 32). At this point, the Lord Jesus talks about His resurrection in the body. The Father is the God

of the living because all things live in front of the Lord. The passage confirms the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, which is why the Father is the God of the living; His Son never dies, and He was resurrected in the body. The Lord Jesus never dies; yet the Lord Jesus in human form died on the cross and He was resurrected in the body. God cannot die; He is the God of the living, so He cannot die; He is life (see 1 John 5:11-12). This passage confirms the resurrection of His Son, complete body and soul. The Lord Jesus was the first one to rise from the dead; that is why He is the King of the resurrection; all that will be resurrected at the end will be under Him. He is the King of all, the dead (those who never have a chance to return, as mentioned in the Bible, the ones that have been punished to be burned in Hell; see Revelation 20:12-14), and the alive. By His sacrifice on the cross, the Lord Jesus has become the King of the dead and the living.

Q: How many resurrections in the body are described in the Bible? A: There is only one resurrection in the body. The resurrection in the body can happen only for the believers in the Father, the Son Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit. Only the believers can have that chance. This is the first resurrection, as described in Revelation 20:4-5, and it will occur sometime in the future before the Lord's second coming to earth. Revelation 20:5 says, "The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended." Those who come to life in this Revelation verse never get the body; they come to life just to receive judgment, but they will have no material body, just the spiritual body. The soul that dies without a body has no thought of pain, but these ones that come to life here will have thought to know only what pain will mean and will have feelings of punishment in torture. (See Revelation 20:12-14).

Q: Do we keep the gender after the resurrection? A: There are differences between the resurrected bodies, but no term for female or male is used. Those who reign with the Lord have heavenly bodies, not human bodies. The heavenly body does not have a specific way of looking to tell the difference between female and male, like we have on earth (see 1 John 3:2).

34 But the Pharisees, having heard that He had put the Sadducees to silence, gathered themselves together.

35 And one of them, a lawyer, questioned, tempting Him:

36 Teacher, which commandment is the greatest in the law?

Comments Matthew 22:35-36. This lawyer was a leader of religion at that time; religious leaders who claimed that they were the ones who knew everything about the law of God. The Lord Jesus used Scripture to reply to them here. He told them straightforwardly, You do not know the Scripture. The Lord showed them His knowledge, but they still tested Him. Two types of people test the Lord Jesus: one type in the past, and another in the present. In those times, they tested the Lord's authority, while nowadays, humans test the Lord's patience. Think that the Lord has died for all; the Lord did not die just for the Jews alone, but for the whole world. Yet, only a small number of people have come to recognize that, and this is a test of the Lord's patience against the Lord's mercy for humans. Many people in the church and those who claim to be believers speak by mouth, not by heart, and their mouth leads them to judgment.

37 And He said to him, You shall love the Lord Thy God with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your mind.

38 This is the great and first commandment.

39 The second like it: You shall love your neighbor as yourself.

40 On these two commandments all the law hangs, and the Prophets.

Comments Matthew 22:39-40. The neighbor here is anyone the Lord brings to your path, not those that only walk and pass you by, but those you interact with (see [Luke 10:36-37](#)). There is always some purpose in connecting with someone, regardless of the type of people you meet. If you are good to them, inside of them, they will have a question, "Why are you good to them?" And if the conversation comes, you can tell them this is one of the principles of teaching from the Bible. Make them think of the Bible, and you will open their hearts to search by themselves.

41 Now while the Pharisees were gathered together, Jesus questioned them,

42 saying, What do you think about the Christ? Whose Son is He? They say to Him, of David.

Comments Matthew 22:41-42. Christ is the Greek translation of the Hebrew name "Messiah." Christ means "Anointed One of God" or "Chosen One of God." The question the Lord has put is from the mercy of the Lord to open their eyes. They claimed to be religious leaders but had no knowledge of Scripture. Then and now, people fight the same way for the deity of the Lord

Jesus. The question they have then and now is the same: "How can Jesus be the Son of God when there were so many brothers and sisters in His earthly family?" It's the same fight, no difference.

"They say to Him, of David." Their answer clearly shows that they all go through His earthly family; they go further to where He comes from. This is to fight who the Lord Jesus Himself is, born of a human or born not of a human. For them, He cannot be born of God because of His mother. The siblings He has on earth make His deity doubtful for them. Their stumbling point is: if Mary has a baby with God, how can she have more babies with another man? Even now, people think the same way, how holy she can be; for an adulteress you would be if pregnant with God and then with a man; this is the way they want to use the Lord Jesus' Holy birth.

43 He says to them, How then does David in the Spirit call Him Lord, saying:

44 The Lord said to My Lord, Sit on My right hand, Until I lay Your enemies underneath Your feet?

45 If, therefore, David then calls Him Lord, how is He his son?

Comments Matthew 22:43-45. Through this question, the Lord Jesus wants them to admit that He is the Son of God. That is why the virgin birth must happen. The woman who will carry Christ cannot be used by man until His birth is over; after that, she can have life as a woman should have.

46 And no one was able to answer Him a word, neither dared anyone from that day to question Him no longer.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) Have faith in God and believe that we are clean only through the shed blood of the Lord Jesus. Only through Him can we be in front of the throne of the Father. 2) As Christians, we must give ourselves to God and obey His commandments, but we also should perform our duties as citizens and be examples in society. 3) We must believe in the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus, for we, in the same manner, will rise as well. The Lord Jesus is the King of the resurrection, and all that will be resurrected at the end will be under Him. 4) Put God first in everything that you do and give your

love to Him. Also, show your love for the Lord to the people that the Lord brings in your path.

Chapter 23

SUMMARY

In this chapter, the Lord Jesus interacts with His disciples, the Pharisees, the scribes, and the crowds. The interactions described in the chapter took place in some public places as the Lord Jesus traveled and taught. The chapter is well structured into four parts. 1) The Lord Jesus tells the crowds that the scribes and Pharisees sit on Moses' seat. Their role is to read Scripture to the children of God, but they misuse their role by judging the Scripture and making rules and regulations. Doing this, they create heavy burdens on people's shoulders to suit their appetites. 2) The Lord tells us who is our true Teacher (Rabbi), Father, and Master, so we know whom to follow, listen to, and obey. 3) The Lord gives eight woes to the scribes and Pharisees. All these woes share a common warning: to worship the Lord with your heart, not with your wealth. The Lord owns all the wealth of this earth, and why should you offer the Lord what is already His? The Lord only wants the hearts that glorify Him. Because the Lord gives everyone freedom, the heart is important for the Lord to receive. He gives all things, but only the human heart receives the freedom, so use your heart to glorify the Lord. The following are the woes given. a) Woe against taking advantage of the weak; in their greed, they use the name of the Lord to take advantage. b) Woe to those who work against God's calling; they teach that their way is the right way and do not teach that God's way is the right way. c) Woe against the children of hell who try to interrupt the children of God from entering the kingdom of heaven. d) Woe against lying tongues; they make the dark way seem the right way through their lying tongues (teachings from lying tongues). e) Woe against showing off; showing that they are the best when they are nothing. f) Woe against those who are outwardly faithful but inside have no faith; these people have fake faith. g) Woe against the darkness of the heart; they only act righteous, but inside, their hearts are filled with darkness. h) Woe against twisting the truth; they make themselves righteous at the cost of a truly righteous life (the prophets of the Lord). 4) The Lord speaks against this generation for ignoring the warning that comes directly from the Lord; until they accept who the true King of their life is, no more prophets will be sent.

- 1 Then Jesus spoke to the multitudes and to His disciples,
- 2 saying, The scribes and the Pharisees sit on Moses' seat;

Comments Matthew 23:1-2. The scribes and the Pharisees sit on the seat of leadership; as Moses led the Jews out of Egypt, they have the duty of leading, but not of judging.

3 all things therefore, how many if they might command you, these keep and observe; however, according to their works do not, for they speak, and do not.

4 Moreover, they bind heavy burdens and hard to bear, and lay them on people's shoulders; but they themselves are not willing to move them with their finger.

Comments Matthew 23:3-4. Because they have schooling, they lead the reading of Scripture, but they should not be judging. However, all of them put themselves in a leading and judging role when only the Lord is the judge. The Lord tells us to take the Scripture they read, but not to follow their judging of the Scripture they read. Here, it means they judge what the Scripture says and lay rules and regulations for people without having the authority.

5 Now all their deeds they do to be seen by people; for they make broad their phylacteries, and enlarge their tassels,

6 and love the chief place at the feasts, and the first seats in the synagogues,

7 and the greetings in the marketplaces, and to be called by people, Rabbi.

Comments Matthew 23:5-7. These verses have a clear meaning. You can observe this behavior nowadays within the church as well; they no longer dress as they did in the past, but instead, all their clothes are from famous brand names. The wages for the clothes themselves can be used to do more things for the Lord, but the things of this world have captured all humans, as the Bible tells us.

8 But you shall not be called Rabbi, for One is your Teacher; moreover, all you are brothers.

Comments Matthew 23:8. "Rabbi" means my teacher or my master. In those times, the meaning of the rabbi was deeper than that of a teacher or master, as we think these days. A rabbi is a person who is qualified to surrender to him as the person who has the most knowledge, and all have to follow the Word as he interprets. Or you could say a rabbi is the person who knows the teachings of the Lord, and people must follow all they say; they almost replace God in people's lives. Rabbis were highly respected in those times because they had school. In this world, school is higher than all because it measures you in a human way of living; to be lifted high, you just need to have school.

"For One is your Teacher." This verse clearly tells us who we should consider as the teacher of our lives—only Christ alone can have that place in our lives. There is only one teacher in our lives, the Lord Jesus Christ, the begotten Son of God.

"Moreover, all you are brothers." Because all have one Father, as the Bible tells us, we have one Father (the Creator), which is why we are all brothers (among believers). If you are not a believer, you will not call the Father to be your heavenly Father. In the eyes of the Lord, those who are not believers are just His created creatures, not His children. To be children of God, you must acknowledge the Lord Jesus, the begotten Son of God, as your Lord and accept the Father's commandments.

All humans are His creation (and, in this sense, His children), but some are rebellious children. The rebellious children are those who do not acknowledge the Father. The Father has created all things, but the rebellious children do not acknowledge the One who created them. The Father loves all His creation; He has only One Begotten Son and gave His Son for the redemption of all humans He has created. Many places in the Bible refer to the rebellious children, where you can see the Father's love, through His Word and His action, is greater than His anger.

9 And call no one your father on the earth; for One is your Father, who is in heaven.

Comments Matthew 23:9. The Father discussed in this portion of Scripture does not refer to the father of the human body, but to the Father of the soul. This passage refers to the Father of your soul, not of the physical body. Because the soul comes from the Father, He is the Father of your soul.

10 Neither be called masters, for One is your master, the Christ.

Comments Matthew 23:10. In this verse, master, or instructor in other translations, is Christ Himself, who obeys the Father even to death on the cross. Therefore, we humans should obey Christ; He is our master to follow. Love one another as Christ loves all humans and takes all their sufferings on the cross of Calvary. Love brothers in faith as Christ loves you in faith.

11 Moreover, the greatest among you will be your servant.

Comments Matthew 23:11. See [Comments Matthew 20:26](#).

12 And whoever shall exalt himself will be humbled; and whoever shall humble himself will be exalted.

Comments Matthew 23:12. We can hear about famous people in many places on earth; when pride gets hold of them, they all fall; nothing lasts. They fall because, in them, they lift themselves up and think they are wiser and better than other brothers; instead, they should be humble.

13 But woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you shut the kingdom of the heavens before people; for you enter not, neither do you allow those who are entering to enter in.

Comments Matthew 23:13. "Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites!" The woes come against the scribes and Pharisees because they do many things that are not right. They were leaders and had all the knowledge at that time, but they did a lot of damage to the people. The woes are important; the rebuke to the leaders only the Lord could do; people had no right because they (the scribes and Pharisees) used the Scripture to take advantage of the commoners; that is why the woes are here (see [John 9:22](#), [John 9:34](#)).

"For you enter not, neither do you allow those who are entering to enter in." They do not enter because all of their beliefs are that they are completely righteous and fulfill God's will, when in fact, they themselves do not know what the will of God is. Remember what the Bible tells us: if you lift yourself up and it is not the Lord lifting you up, you will be put down. That is what they have been doing; they lift themselves above and think they know everything. All they know is the traditions of men, which are being taught among each other, but they do not know the traditions of God. But also, they will not let the ones that could enter to find the way; as it is written, they teach their way to be the right way, not God's way to be the right way. You do not enter, and you do not want anyone else to enter; also, this is the most selfish act; it is the worst thing to do to use the name of the Lord and claim the name of the Lord.

14 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you devour widows' houses, and as a pretense, you make long prayers; therefore, you shall receive greater condemnation.

Comments Matthew 23:14. "For you devour widows' houses." This woe itself shows exactly how they take advantage of those who already feel bad and discouraged, the widows that no one protects, and they do that to them. How bad is that? Do something for those who cannot fight back. The Lord has mercy on widows, as the Bible says in many places.

"And as a pretense, you make long prayers." Really, they want to swallow up their inheritance; they devour widows' houses, forcing down their throats everything they can. Still, they present themselves as the ones to comfort the widows; they make prayers to make the widows believe that their dead ones, because of their prayers, are in a good place. And this makes widows feel obligated to give what they ask. They are hypocrites; they use God to take advantage of others, which is wrong to do. They take advantage of the widows' minds; that is what they do.

15 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you traverse the sea and the dry land to make one convert; and when he becomes, you make him twofold more a son of hell than yourselves.

Comments Matthew 23:15. "Convert" or "proselyte" here refers to the Gentile converts who had committed themselves to the teachings of the Jewish faith (converts to Judaism). This verse tells us that the scribes and Pharisees take the name of the Lord and go to teach the Gentiles, but the way they teach, instead of making the Gentiles come to the kingdom of God, they teach them how to walk straight to hell. We should remember that these converts are Gentiles, not children of God; the rules and laws they cannot keep all because of being Gentiles. But, as the Bible tells us, if they make one (commandment) wrong, all is wrong. However, the Gentiles in those times could still be saved by faith in God, not by following Moses' Law.

16 Woe to you, blind guides, who say, Whoever shall swear by the temple, it is nothing; but whoever shall swear by the gold of the temple, is bound by his oath.

Comments Matthew 23:16. "Shall swear" means to promise to do something, and if you don't keep the promise, a curse will come upon you.

"Shall swear by the temple" means to do something valuable in the eyes of the Lord. But God needs the heart to glorify the Lord; that is the Lord's pleasure.

"Shall swear by the gold of the temple" means to do something valuable in the eyes of the people.

"He is a debtor" or "He is bound by his oath" means that they feel obligated with the gold (the promise to do something valuable in the eyes of the people), but not with the temple; which it shouldn't be this way.

The meaning of this verse relates to the traditions of the Jews. In those days, traditions played a big role and controlled the people; it was not the Scripture

that controlled them, but the traditions. The Lord gives this woe to point out to them that it must be from the Lord, not by traditions, to control the people.

The tradition taught from generation to generation was that a person builds (or makes) something and takes it to the temple; most of the time, they build a small thing as a symbol of a promise. In those times, people came to the temple to give a gift and asked the leaders to keep them in prayer; and promised that if they kept them in prayer continually, then next time, when they came to the temple, they would bring something bigger and more valuable, and they could keep the small thing for themselves. The next person goes and builds bigger, and if you want the Lord to accept you, you have to build something bigger, more valuable, and better than what the person before you built. But this is a teaching from greed because they use the Lord to satisfy their greed, and this is wrong; that is why, in the Bible, the Lord always calls them hypocrites. The Lord never asks this, but this has become a tradition, which is wrong in God's eyes (see also Matthew 15:5-9).

People come in and see the temple, but they can't feel the Lord. This feeling is happening today as well in many churches. But when the scribes and Pharisees explain to do the tradition, building up, adding, this makes people believe that they are part of whatever has been built upon (because it is a tradition, people just need to feel they are part of it). But this is never taught by the Lord

17 Foolish and blind! For which is greater, the gold, or the temple that is sanctifying the gold?

18 And, Whoever shall swear by the altar, it is nothing; but whoever shall swear by the gift upon it, he is bound by his oath.

Comments Matthew 23:18. This verse alone tells us to know how people's eyes see things, not as the Lord sees. Things that the eyes see have meaning for people; that is why the Bible always tells us that the Lord sees the heart, not the things. Think about it this way: when humans see the altar, what do they really see? Do they see the altar representing the Lord or the things on it (the gold)? Which is more likely for humans to see? (See Isaiah 66:1-2; Acts 7:48-50).

19 Blind! For which is greater, the gift, or the altar that is sanctifying the gift?

20 The one therefore having sworn by the altar, swears by it, and by all things upon it.

21 And the one having sworn by the temple, swears by it, and by the One dwelling in it.

22 And the one having sworn by the heaven, swears by the throne of God, and by the One sitting upon it.

Comments Matthew 23:19-22. These verses talk about seeing God or the things around. When you swear by the altar or temple, you swear by God (that is, you say a word of promise to the altar or in the temple; for example, you promise some fast or prayer just between you and God), but you don't take it seriously. Yet, if you swear by the things (that is, you promise to do something valuable; for example, to build something in the temple or bring something to the altar, a sacrifice or gift), you say that you must do it because people can see what you bring; and most people boast about what they bring.

23 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you pay tithes of mint and anise and cumin, and you have neglected the weightier matters of the law, justice, and mercy, and faith; now these it behooved you to do, and the others not to have left undone.

Comments Matthew 23:23. This verse lets us know that even though you choose to do small things that people don't need to see, you make it significant to be known because of the aroma (even when you choose to do small things, you choose them such that people will notice you). Because you choose to do small things, you pick the things that you do not need to invest your time to do, but they look big because of the smell and the aroma. People walking by can smell them, but actually, you did nothing significant. Also, as an example of a job, one job is in the front, but all the heavy labor jobs are behind; however, you do not do those labor jobs, but you do only the decorating jobs in the front. This is also only to show that you do work, but in fact, you did nothing significant.

24 Blind guides! Those straining out the gnat, and swallowing the camel!

Comments Matthew 23:24. "Straining out the gnat" is like when we try to justify the deeds we do, the small, little deeds. We see these deeds are wrong, but the bad thing itself, which is like the camel's size, we hide inside and don't get rid of it. However, we get rid of the little things, but the real big things, we hide them. For example, we get rid of cigarettes and alcohol, but inside of us, we don't really see them as bad; we just do not want to do those deeds. If we

can think we don't do it, why don't we see inside that it is completely wrong and not good?

Q: How do we achieve seeing wrong deeds as a conviction from within us? A: When tests come, to think about wrong deeds by our own strength, we can't do it. We must grab the Word of God in the heart we have, the Word that we memorize, that the Lord wants us to memorize; the Word of God only can help.

Q: Why should we memorize the Word of the Bible? A: Memorization of the Word of God is important. It is different in the human way of thinking; if we memorize the Word, when temptation thoughts come, we can call the Word right away. By memorizing the Bible, the mind pulls up the thoughts right away without having to think (there is like an automatic reaction that comes to counterattack the temptation). The Lord encourages us to memorize the Bible; if we memorize the Word of God in our hearts, then when things happen, instantly, the Holy Spirit goes through the Word and will bring up the light in our spiritual eyes to help us.

25 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you cleanse the outside of the cup and of the platter, but inside they are full of greed and self-indulgence.

26 Blind Pharisee! Cleanse first the inside of the cup and of the platter so that the outside of them might become clean also.

Comments Matthew 23:25-26. The cup and platter themselves; they clean the outside of the cup and platter, not the inside that has been cleaned, but they clean the outside. These verses also refer to the outside of some Christians; some call themselves Christians, but only their appearance shows as Christian, but their inside, itself, has never yet been cleansed. It is the same as the leaders in the old times who dressed as kings, but inwardly, they were dirtier than the house of animals. Also, many of us look outwardly nice, but our hearts are full of negativity. You cannot be clean just on the outside. The Word has told us that if we do not clean within, the outside has no meaning in the eyes of the Lord. Remember that the Bible always tells us that the Lord looks inside the heart and mind.

27 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you are like whited tombs, which from outside indeed appear beautiful, but from within are full of bones of the dead, and of all uncleanness.

28 Even so you also outwardly indeed appear righteous to men, but inwardly you are full of hypocrisy and lawlessness.

Comments Matthew 23:27-28. The meaning in these verses is similar to that in verses 25 to 26. "Whitened tombs" or "Whitewashed tombs" are used to compare the actions they make. They look beautiful on the outside, but for God, the inside needs to be cleaned up; not just to put the unclean in the corner or push it out in the corner and let it rot. That is why their inward is compared to tombs; their inner is only dead bones (the unclean is kept inside); they just decorate the outside, but inside their hearts, they let it be full of uncleanness. Similarly, nowadays, in the church, people walk in beautiful dresses, but how many are cleaned inwardly? They should read these woes.

29 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you build the tombs of the prophets, and arrange the monuments of the righteous,

Comments Matthew 23:29. In that time, people literally built the tombs of the prophets they killed just to cover up what they did to them and to appear innocent. They built the tombs for them, so they could pretend they were innocent.

30 and you say, If we had lived in the days of our fathers, we would not have been partakers with them in the blood of the prophets.

31 Therefore, you bear witness to yourselves, that you are sons of those having killed the prophets.

32 Then you fill up the measure of your fathers.

Comments Matthew 23:30-32. Also, they condemn their father's generation to be the guilty ones, not them, but they themselves do not act differently than how their fathers did.

33 Serpents! Offspring of vipers! How shall you escape from the judgment of hell?

Comments Matthew 23:33. "Serpents" and "brood or offspring of vipers." The way the Lord Jesus called them has a deeper meaning. They are the ones who claim to know it all; they claim among His own people that the word of the Lord is in them all. They quote all written Scripture because they are the ones who keep the Scripture, but when they interpret the Scripture to His people, they talk from their own understanding and teach wrong things to His children. Only they know what is written and hide it from His children to see.

When they make out the teachings to His children, they copy from their own understanding.

34 Because of this, behold, I send to you prophets, and wise men, and scribes; some of them you will kill and crucify; and some of them you will scourge in your synagogues, and will persecute from city to city;

Comments Matthew 23:34. This verse itself supports the verses before. They do these, all written they did: His prophets, some they killed, some they kicked out of town. They did not listen to the prophets of the Lord, but when the false one had appeared, all turned to accept and led the children of the Lord astray. From the false ones that came in among children of God, not that they do not know, but because they could benefit, so they took sides; they let greed have power over them.

35 so that upon you may come all the righteous blood shed upon the earth, from the blood of Abel the righteous to the blood of Zachariah son of Berekiah, whom you killed between the sanctuary and the altar.

Comments Matthew 23:35. The Lord Jesus never cut off the Old Testament; the Lord came to fulfill the prophecy of the Bible. The Old and the New have a joining part: One God, two portions of activity, the Old Law by the order and the New Law by grace and mercy, both from One God. You cannot take only the New and ignore the Old, yet not many people read the Old Testament and consider it important. The Lord gives all things for good reason; the entire Bible is one; you cannot have the New Testament without the Old Testament. But, because of the grace of the Lord, the New Testament came for all humanity. The Jews, when they read the Old Testament, many places would link to the New; they can shut down their own ears and hearts, but they can't ignore what the Word speaks loudly for them. The Jews cannot escape the Old and the New together; just because they are His people, it does not mean they do not need the blood of the Lord Jesus to enter heaven. They are still responsible for the blood of the Old Testament prophets, even if we live by grace now. However, they can all enter heaven by grace and mercy if they repent and accept salvation through the blood of the beloved Son of God with their whole hearts, not only by their heads.

36 Truly I say to you, All these things will come upon this generation.

Comments Matthew 23:36. This is the portion (the woes) for His own people to take full responsibility. Until the end of the Old Testament, His own people

were the ones who had to take responsibility for mistreating the prophets of the Lord. With the end of the Old Testament, the new generation started, the generation of grace and mercy. The new generation of humans has a chance to be saved through the blood of God's Beloved Son. The grace and mercy started through the death of God's Own Son. Imagine His Son as the bridge; all the Gentiles and the world walk under that bridge to enter the kingdom of the heavens. But His own chosen people still walk in circles; they do not want to accept God's beloved Son; then and now, they still walk that line; not many choose the bridge. This verse tells them that the Old Testament generation will end.

37 Jerusalem, Jerusalem, that kills the prophets, and stones those having been sent to her! How often would I have gathered your children together, even as a hen gathers her chickens under the wings, and you were not willing!

Comments Matthew 23:37. This verse itself applies to the past among God's children, and also to the children under the blood of God's Son. Both groups can be linked through One God. He is the God of His people, but also the God for the children through His Son. Both groups have been sheltered by His mercy. Regardless of what happens in the world and how many come against them, He is their shelter, as the Bible says. Look at the hen; it spreads its wings out to protect its chicks; so, how much more will the love of the Father do for His children? The Lord gives the Holy Spirit as a covering; as the hen uses her wings to cover all the chicks, the Holy Spirit Himself can cover all; His wing is wider and bigger than humans can imagine. Only abide in God's love and follow His teaching, and all will be covered. Regardless of what they do, foolish things, but they can't cut the love of the Father. In many places in the Bible, how many of His servants have been mistreated, but His love goes on (for His children).

38 Behold, your house is left to you desolate.

Comments Matthew 23:38. The love and the punishment go along together; no love, no care. The love here refers to the love of His people towards the Lord; if they do not love the Lord, He still loves them, but He will not show His care until they repent. The Lord may stay far for a moment, for them to learn to come back to Him by their own choice. No prophet will be sent to them; they must walk back to Him. Their house will be abandoned (no prophet) if they do not repent. They must think for themselves; all things are

written. If He does that to them, what would happen with the rest of the people?

39 For I say to you, You shall not see Me from now, until you shall say, Blessed is He coming in the name of the Lord.

Comments Matthew 23:39. This verse shows the connection between the Old and the New Testaments; the Father's love brings joy to the new generation through His Son. When the Old Testament ended, no more generations of prophets were to come; the joining point between the Old and the New starts with the death of His Son. They killed the beloved Son that the Father sent; no more prophets will be sent.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) Read the Bible and meditate on the Word yourself. Ask the Holy Spirit to be your Holy Teacher and help you to understand the Scripture so that men's teachings cannot influence your mind. 2) Confess all uncleanness from your heart and repent; the blood of the Lord Jesus can cleanse all of us from the inside out. 3) Memorize Bible verses to help you fight against temptation. Suppose we memorize the Word in our hearts. In that case, when things happen, the Holy Spirit instantly goes to the Word we memorized and brings light to our spiritual eyes, helping us.

Chapter 24

SUMMARY

In this chapter, the Lord Jesus teaches His disciples and answers their questions. When they were on the Mount of Olives, they asked Him privately, "Tell us, when will these things be? And what will be the sign of Thy coming, and of the consummation of the age?" In His answer, the Lord refers to three things: warnings for the believers, all the troubles that will happen in the world, and the Lord's time of return. The Lord has warned all believers before time what will happen to the world and about the Lord's return, but the rest of the world needs to read the Bible for themselves and learn to pray. All the things the Lord described in this chapter will indeed happen to the world. When the Lord gives warnings in the Bible, we must be ready, because they will come to pass. 1) The Lord's warnings to the believers: a) watch your faith; b) they will attack the Bible, be aware of your heart; c) they attack the Bible to wither the faith in the believer's heart, that is the beginning of false christs to come; d) they will fake finding Bible manuscripts, then wrong translations will be produced and many false christs will appear; e) the Bible is the temple of the Holy Spirit on earth, and all of their attacks are directed to destroy this temple; f) be wary as false christs and false prophets will arise performing signs; g) the gospel of the kingdom will be proclaimed to the whole world and then the end time will come; h) watch for the abomination of desolation when the world wide will have a fake Bible and will start to rebuild the temple in Jerusalem; i) the ones that endure to the end will be saved. 2) The Lord talks about the troubles that will happen to the world: a) wars and rumors of wars; b) wars between the giant ones; c) famines and earthquakes; d) tribulations and persecution of Christians; e) all nations will hate Christians, and many will fall and betray one another; f) many false prophets will arise and lead many astray; g) lawlessness; h) love of many will grow cold; i) great tribulations such as has not been from the beginning of the world and never will be again will happen before the Lord's return; j) cosmic disasters. 3) The Lord's time of return: a) after the great tribulation, the sign of the Son of Man will appear in heaven, and He will come on the clouds of heaven with power and great glory; b) all people on earth at that time will see the sign of the Son of Man at the same time in a vision from the Lord; c) only the Father knows the day and the hour; d) be faithful at all

times no one knows the day and hour; e) there will always be a remnant of believers from beginning, first man born, until last man will be born before the Lord returns.

1 And having gone forth, Jesus departed from the temple; and His disciples draw near to point out to Him the buildings of the temple.

Comments Matthew 24:1. "And having gone forth, Jesus departed from the temple." There is a gap of time between the events in this chapter and the events in Chapter 23. The Lord travels nonstop, especially when it is close to His time to leave the earth. The Lord is travelling, travelling only, and there is no time for the Lord to rest; neither for the body nor the heart of the Lord to rest. These events here in this chapter are close to the departure time of the Lord.

"His disciples draw near to point out to Him the buildings of the temple." This verse alone shows how the human mind thinks: the eyes see marvelous human works, marvelous of human hand work, but around the humans, the marvelous things the Lord made, nobody pays attention to. This verse describes this clearly.

2 And answering, He said to them, Do you not see all these things? Truly I say to you, There shall not be left here a stone upon a stone, which will not be thrown down.

Comments Matthew 24:2. The meaning of this verse is as it is written.

3 Now as He was sitting on the Mount of Olives, the disciples drew near to Him in private, saying, Tell us, when will these things be? And what will be the sign of Thy coming, and of the consummation of the age?

Comments Matthew 24:3. "The disciples came unto Him privately." This shows the picture itself; the Lord was never alone. He always spent time with people around Him. His disciples had to find private time to be able to talk to Him. The purpose of the Lord Jesus' coming to earth is to teach and point the way to be saved and come to God the Father, but people choose to ignore the mercy of the Father.

"These things" refers to the destruction of the temple.

"What will be the sign of Thy coming, and of the consummation of the age?" Now, it shows the heart of His own disciples. Fear seized their hearts when they started thinking about what the Lord had said to them, that the city would be destroyed and that He would depart. The Lord wants to comfort them; it is

nothing of what they see; what they will see that they should think of. Their minds were all confused, as we are confused even when it is written. His disciples didn't have the written word, so how much more confusing was it for them?

Comments on the Temple of the Lord that will Help Understand End Time Events

The link (the Bible, the Word; see [John 1:1](#)) between His temple on earth (the Lord Jesus' human body of dust) and the Holy temple of His body (the heavenly body of the Lord Jesus) will be destroyed by the people that He came to save. But most importantly, we must remember that the body of the beloved Son of God will never be destroyed. He died on the cross, was buried, rose on the third day, and ascended to the Father. His body will never see decay ([Acts 2:27](#); [Acts 2:31](#); [Acts 13:35](#)). Humans have no heart or mind to think or appreciate what God has done, but they appreciate small things humans do (here, temple buildings). The narrow mind of humans cannot take things they see (created by God); how can they take things they cannot see (heavenly things)? [Material and spiritual things both walk parallel to one another, but the human mind will not notice the invisible things of the spiritual, even though they are side by side. If they cannot appreciate the things eyes can see, the things that eyes cannot see are nothing to them. The earth itself is in the Lord, which tells us that the Lord is here already. He is telling us, I am already in everything around you; I am the temple, and nobody can destroy the body of the Lord Jesus, which is the true temple.]

What we say here refers to the connection of the Lord's human body with the earth. The Bible tells us that all humans are from the dust of the earth. The Lord Himself, when He was born as a human, took the dust of the earth to form the baby. In His human nature, He is linked with the earth, which is why His human body must return to heaven (to spare the earth, so the earth doesn't disappear).

Remember the verse in the Bible (Isaiah 66:1), what the earth is, His footstool, this is part of His temple, the universe itself is His throne, everything is in His throne. Imagine this: the earth itself is His creation. He created humans on earth to enjoy His creation, but humans have destroyed the earth itself. We humans are destroying God's temple when we destroy the earth. Don't look for the small things; see the small things as one piece; don't try to separate them apart; take them as a whole.

To link the earth to His Holy temple, look to the Bible; the Bible is His temple on earth now. People will try to change and destroy this temple (the Bible). When they come with the idea that the Bible is a human-made book, that is a time this verse will apply. Remember the Lord's body will never be destroyed, He rose up in His body, and His body has returned to the Father, because everything is in the Father. That is why He rose up in the body to keep the earth; (the earth) will melt away; nothing left from the earth but the Lord; He is already linked with the earth by being born on the earth and taking the dust of the earth with him back. This is the Father's plan: He created the earth, He created all things in it, and He also has a plan for the Son to be born from the dust of the earth to fulfill the circle of creation. Because the Lord's creation cannot completely disappear, it will always have the link (the resurrected body of the Lord Jesus). Think of the human body, all will be gone, the earth is gone, nothing left, but the Lord Jesus has the dust of the earth in Him. The dust of the earth, how to be up in heaven, but by the Lord Himself; He has spared the complete disappearance of the earth.

Now we will go to the next step. Because of humans, this earth will be destroyed; in the end, the earth itself will melt away (2 Peter 3:10; Isaiah 51:6). When they crucified the Lord, the link is disturbed; when they crucified the Lord, the link of love from the Father is disturbed; the Father feels hurt to see humans crucify His begotten Son; this disturbed the link. The Lord's body is from the earth; the connection (the Holy Spirit) of His body and earth is here, and the Lord is here; when He goes back (the Holy Spirit) (2 Thessalonians 2:7), the earth will melt down. The Bible is the dwelling place of the Holy Spirit on earth because the Bible is the Living Word, which is why the Bible is referred to as the Holy Spirit dwelling. The Bible is the link between the believers and the Lord.

- 4 And answering, Jesus said to them, Take heed that no one may lead you astray.
- 5 For many will come in My name, saying, I am the Christ; and they will lead many astray.

Comments Matthew 24:4-5. These verses warn humans: be aware of false christs who come to gather the Lord's children away (those who ignore the warnings of the Lord). Even in the Bible, many places warn you to listen to the Lord speaking in your heart, to hear, and match what you hear with your ears with the Word of God. Many people will come telling things; the proof is in front of your eyes, in the Bible. Use the Word of God to judge; by your own

understanding, you will be led astray; only the Word of God can judge; meditate, pray, and let the Word of God be the food of your soul. The Word of God will be a shield to protect you; that is the best protection available to humans, but not everyone takes it; some have the Bible just to keep it on the shelf; that will not help. Read and meditate on the Word of God.

"I am the Christ." The Lord Jesus is the Word, as the Bible tells us in the Gospel of John 1:1. But when they say "I am the Christ", that will happen after they come to tell you that a new bible has been found; the new christ has been found (meaning false bible translation). When that time comes, you will hear that many, many false christs (false bible translations) will appear. When they attack the Bible, that is the beginning of false christs to come; be aware of your heart; they will attack the Bible to wither the faith in your heart. When false christs come, many signs of warning will be, but many will choose to ignore them. Some will impersonate and claim to know the word more than many know, and will use the false word to lead people to believe that they are the lord who has returned. They will even perform miracles, but do not forget that the dark side has covered that person. The power they will use is not from the Lord, but the power of the dark; they use their bible, because that bible is the fake one; the dark cannot use the true Bible, but they can use the false one; be aware. They crucified the Lord Jesus, but the Lord sent His Word and made the true Bible for us. Because the Word that came, the Bible, is the root of faith to the new generation, the first thing to attack is the foundation. The Bible is the temple of the Holy Spirit on earth, and all the attacks of the dark are meant to destroy this temple.

When they fake the finding, the finding of the Bible manuscript, then wrong translations by humans will come to humans. Some words in the true Bible that create double meanings will be cut off, and they will start to claim that the true Bible has mistakes, and the false manuscript will be used to fix the true Bible. By technology, the fake manuscript evidence will be found. By technology, it can make the brand new things look old (make the evidence to support the new bible); this will come with many proofs of findings and will make the majority fall into that trap, and will make many believe. They will start from a few words that humans believe shouldn't be in the true Bible. Humans nowadays, if you claim it is by the power of new technology that you found the truth, will get humans to listen; humans worship technology. Technology is useful when used in the right way, but not in the wrong way. If they can change one word in the true Bible, then the false translation will be found to support the idea. The

dark just needs the idea to make humans think, and then they will believe. Be aware, be aware, read the true Word of God, meditate on the true Word of God.

6 And you will begin to hear of wars and rumors of wars; see that you not be alarmed; for these things must come to take place, but the end is not yet.

Comments Matthew 24:6. The wars and rumors of wars will still continue non-stop; what we are hearing now is not yet enough. As the Bible tells, kingdom against kingdom, not a small country, the giants of the world are going to start wars. But at first, the dark will start fighting against believers with all their might to sway many. Money always has a voice, and that will be the trouble for small countries. Because they are small, they will surrender and let those with more power prevail, but they don't know what they are putting themselves into, and it is just the beginning; only the worst will come later. It is easy for people to see how they can make the world busy: money, money control. Money can create jobs, money keeps people busy making money; money controls the mind, just think how to make more money; a slave of the money, that is a human being. Even now, how many countries are controlled by money borrowing, and that number will grow; some will come to offer: I give, I give, if you do this, and many, many countries in need will go and join them. Money is the root of all evil, as the Bible has told us, now and then, even in the future, money controls.

7 For nation will rise up against nation, and kingdom against kingdom; and there will be famines and earthquakes in diverse places.

Comments Matthew 24:7. "Famines and earthquakes in diverse places." What we have seen in the world, the worst is not yet as it will be. This verse tells us the worst will come; what it is right now is nothing yet. One day, you will wake up, you will hear how many have died of hunger, and no one can help. It will be the case worldwide, not just in one area: a worldwide disaster, and nobody can help anyone; and people will hate each other; the hatred will give power for surviving.

8 But all these are the beginning of birth pains.

Comments Matthew 24:8. "Beginning of birth pains" or "Beginning of travail." These birth pains are ones you can't escape. You will have to take the pains as a woman giving birth. She can't stop; even though it hurts, she still has to go through. This verse says it is the same way: it is just the beginning, and the pains can't be stopped, as a woman can't stop while she gives birth. Same

as the suffering of life, it is suffering but can't be avoided; there is no choice to choose; that is why it is compared with giving birth. How can the Christian avoid the pains? The Lord will not just come and rain down peace for Christians only; that is why the Bible tells us that whoever can keep until the end will be saved; many passages show this (see verse 13).

9 Then will they deliver you up to tribulation, and will kill you, and you will be hated by all the nations for My name's sake.

Comments Matthew 24:9. This verse itself speaks of the time before the Lord's return. All mentioned here will happen before the Lord's return to take His people. Be aware, humans: do not give up; it is not a threat, it is a warning for all who believe. Do not worry for those who do not believe; in that time, not that they never heard of the Lord; they heard, but they ignored. It is not that they do not know; everybody knows. The Bible has warnings referring to this; this verse is a warning.

10 And then many will stumble, and they will betray one another, and will hate one another.

11 And many false prophets will arise, and will lead many astray.

12 And because lawlessness will be multiplied, the love of the many will grow cold.

Comments Matthew 24:12. "Lawlessness" or "Iniquity." This lawlessness relates only to the love of God, forgiveness for one another, and love for each other. When we have no love, we give room for hate to come. If we keep filling our hearts with love for God, hate has no room to come in. Always, the Bible gives a way out for us to not fall into lawlessness: read the Bible and meditate on it, and you will find the way out.

13 But the one having endured to the end, this will be saved.

14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in the whole world for a testimony to all the nations; and then shall the end come.

Comments Matthew 24:14. "And this gospel of the kingdom will be proclaimed in the whole world." This proclamation of the gospel means that every ear and heart knows about the Lord. Still, in many places on earth, they have never heard of the gospel yet; there is still a long way to go. The Word still needs to be proclaimed in Canada itself; not everyone has heard the good news of the Gospel. Canada is a big country; the Gospel is so little spread; still, many do not know the Lord, but are going out to spread the gospel, even

though they couldn't do it inside. How can the blind lead the blind? See [Luke 6:39](#).

"For a testimony" refers to the good news (the gospel) of the Son of God, which tells us that He has come down on earth and shed His blood for all mankind. That is why the good news must go throughout the earth; when the end times come, no one can say it is not fair, for they have all heard the good news of how to be saved. The Lord is the God of judgment; He gives all nations the chance to know how to be saved. When the wrath of God is poured down, no one can speak against what God is doing.

15 When therefore you may see the abomination of desolation, which was spoken of through Daniel the prophet, standing in the holy place (let him that reads understand),

Comments Matthew 24:15. This verse refers to a period of time before the Lord's return. Before the Lord's return, the Lord gives the understanding of this verse; each individual touched by the Word of God will receive the understanding.

"Abomination of desolation." Watch for the false translation and the false bible throughout the whole world. If you have the false bible in the world, you will have a false temple. Therefore, watch for the coming of the false bible and who will build the temple in Jerusalem. The people who will find this false bible will claim that the temple as written in the true Bible is not true. If they claim they find something and try to correct the Bible about the temple of the Lord, which is described in the Bible, they will also find a place and build a new temple to fit the new false bible they have found. It is a blasphemy to claim something is not true in the Bible.

"Let him that reads understand," tells us that the weight of responsibility is the same; here, each individual is responsible for reading and meditating on the Word, but before the Lord's return, the Lord gives understanding.

16 then those in Judea let them flee to the mountains;

17 let the one on the housetop not go down to take anything out of his house;

18 and let the one in the field not return back to take his cloak.

19 But woe to those having child in the womb, and to those that nurse infants in those days!

20 And pray that your flight be not in the winter, nor on a Sabbath;

21 for then will be great tribulation, such as has not been from the beginning of the world until now, no, nor ever will be.

22 And except those days had been shortened, not any flesh would have been saved; however, because of the elect those days will be shortened.

Comments Matthew 24:22. As the Bible tells us, all disasters and tribulations will come upon the earth. The whole earth will be affected; the Bible is clear: there will not be many people left on earth in the end time (Isaiah 13:12). In many places in the Bible, it is clear about this. A few true believers who have special duties will be left on earth to do the work, but so few humans will be left over. All the technology will be of no use at that time; just finding food alone will be hard enough; there will be no need for technology. It will be very hard for those left over, but the mercy of God makes that time shorter; otherwise, none would be left over.

23 Then if anyone may say to you, Behold, here is the christ, or, Here, believe it not.

24 For there will arise false christs, and false prophets, and will give great signs and wonders; so as to lead astray, if possible, even the elect.

Comments Matthew 24:23-24. See [Comments Matthew 24:4-5](#).

25 Behold, I have told you beforehand.

26 If therefore they may say to you, Behold, he is in the wilderness, do not go out; Behold, in the inner chambers, believe it not.

27 For as the lightning comes forth from the rising of the sun, and shines even to the west; so will be the coming of the Son of Man.

Comments Matthew 24:27. Each individual's eyes will see when the Lord returns; not by technology to see; that is why the Bible tells us, like lightning (speed of the light), every eye will see; not technology light, the Lord's lightning, that is the speed that is being talked here about. The speed of the Lord's return is faster than the speed of human technology; it cannot be compared. To understand, you can think of something similar to the whole earth having a vision at the same time. As the Bible tells us, vision is like going in a trance, and that is how everyone will see the Lord's return, in a vision. How to make people on the other side of the earth see the Lord at the same time? Now the Bible tells us "in trance". This is the mercy of the Lord, why in vision; in vision, everyone has a chance to see at the same time, One God of the earth returning; that is why it must be in trance, to be exactly at the same

moment to see the Lord Jesus' return and eliminate boasting. Remember, the Bible tells us that we will see Him coming on the cloud (see Revelation 1:7).

- 28 For wherever the carcass is, there will the vultures be gathered together.

Comments Matthew 24:28. This sentence is to be taken in a spiritual way of thinking. All the carcasses of the earth, not human bodies but the souls of humans, the ones that did not come, all of them that did not come to the cross, will be thrown into one place. All the evil ones (the vultures) will go there and have a feast on, as it is written, they go to eat the carcasses.

- 29 Then immediately after the tribulation of those days the sun will be darkened, and the moon will not give its light, and the stars will fall from the sky, and the powers of the heavens will be shaken;

Comments Matthew 24:29. Within this verse, two gaps of time are hidden in the time, the heaven time (the time of the Father): one is a human time gap (within our earth time), and one is a spiritual time gap (within the parallel earth time). These time gaps form the point of separation between the human earth and the parallel earth. Right now, the human time and the spiritual time go along side by side, parallel. When they are parallel, we do not see; they must be separated out from being parallel to see. When separation time comes (of being parallel), we will see the parallel earth, but it is a long period of time for humans; many generations will pass through time before they can see the parallel earth with their eyes.

Imagine heaven time as a whole; within this time, there is contained the earthly time and the spiritual time, which are separated by a gap. The heaven time is the time of the Father. Hidden in time: one is the human time gap, and the other is the spiritual time gap. The spiritual world has its events timed by spiritual time, and the human world has its events timed by human time. The heaven time has knowledge of both times and of what's happening in both worlds. Also, the Bible talks about many interferences (time overlap) within our world from the spiritual world.

"The sun will be darkened" means that human time will be stopped; the Father uses His hand to block the sun, and this action will create a gap between human time and spiritual time (spiritual time continues while human time is stopped).

The main point of this verse rests in the last part, when "the powers of the heavens will be shaken." This is a time point of sharing events that come

between the human earth and the parallel earth. Right now, these times go alongside each other; when they are parallel, we do not see; they must overlap for us to see. When the overlap time comes, we will see the parallel earth, but it will be a long period of time for humans; many generations will pass through time before they can see the parallel earth with their eyes.

A warning comes for this verse. Watch, some with fake understandings will come, but no human should know in detail about this verse; don't forget, this verse specifically refers to the throne of God, which is why it is forbidden to know.

30 and then will appear the sign of the Son of Man in heaven, and then all the tribes of the earth will mourn, and they will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

Comments Matthew 24:30. "Then will appear the sign of the Son of Man in heaven." See comments on verse 27 to understand how this sign will appear to all people on earth and how it can come to the east and west to see: the trance (vision) will come into effect for the whole earth. The sign people will see: the Lord sitting on the throne, with the cloud above Him (as mentioned many times in the Bible). How glorious the scene will be for humans to see the throne of God coming down from heaven.

31 And He will send His angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they will gather together His elect from the four winds, from the ends of the heavens to the ends of them.

Comments Matthew 24:31. "He will send His angels with a great sound of a trumpet." The sign will be in the sky, and humans will hear the sound from heaven: the sound coming from the sky. His army will blow the trumpet sound, shaking the sky; even humans on earth will feel the sky shaking. This is the point when humans will see His army come in the sky riding on the clouds of heaven; the army of angels riding on the clouds to proclaim the Lord's return. Humans will see this just before the Lord comes back to earth.

32 Now from the fig tree learn the parable: when its branch already may have become tender, and it puts out the leaves, you know that the summer is near;

33 even so you also, when you see all these things, know that He is near, at the doors.

Comments Matthew 24:32-33. It will come that people will use these verses to make up a belief story. The story that has proven that the Lord has returned.

But this will be talking about the fake christs, by what happens around the world; they will use this parable as a comparison to preparing the path for the fake christ.

34 Truly I say to you, This generation will not pass away, until all these things shall be accomplished.

Comments Matthew 24:34. "This generation" refers only to the generation of believers with true faith: from the beginning, the first man born, until the last man born before the Lord returns. Remember that this verse talks about true believers.

"Shall not pass away" is the faith that the true believers have in them; it will not pass away from them because the Lord Himself is the One who helps them to keep that faith. Therefore, there will always be a remnant of true believers on earth from the first man on earth until the Lord's return.

35 Heaven and earth will pass away, but My words shall not pass away.

Comments Matthew 24:35. This verse has a complete meaning. It is a comparison, so let the reader understand.

36 However, about that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels of the heavens, nor the Son, except the Father only.

Comments Matthew 24:36. The original text clearly says, "nor the Son," but do not forget the Trinity itself: the God of Three but One in unity; the duty may be different, but the power and authority are One, and the Father is above all. Think about it this way: in the Father Himself is the unity of the Three, the Father, the Son (Jesus Christ), and the Holy Spirit; all of them are in unity as One in the Father. Also, remember that all is in the Father, and everything belongs to the Father.

Those who claim to know "that day and hour" have acted in an abominable way, the unforgivable sin. No one, not even the Son Himself, could speak to represent the Father in this matter, so no one can; how foolish they are. Do not listen to them; how dare they try to represent the Father? The Son and Holy Spirit couldn't represent the Father in this matter, so how can the ones He created represent Him?

37 For as were the days of Noah, so will be the coming of the Son of Man.

38 For as in those days which were before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noah entered into the ark,

39 and they knew not until the flood came, and took all away; thus will be the coming of the Son of Man.

Comments Matthew 24:37-39. These verses explain the moment when the event, the coming of the Son of Man, will occur. It is telling that no one knows that time. The flood covered the earth, and no one knew: all did their own activity. In the same way, the Son of Man will come, suddenly, will just happen: no one knows, not even the angels. That is why no prediction is possible; the verse clearly tells us: no prediction. These verses are not meant to judge the time; they only say that no one knows the time.

40 Then will be two in the field: one is taken, and one is left;

41 two will be grinding at the mill: one is taken, and one is left.

Comments Matthew 24:40-41. These verses have a hidden meaning: the human body cannot be caught up in the air straight, but it will be in a similar way with the transfiguration; the human body is transformed and caught up in the air to glorify the Lord in the air. Then all of those who have been caught up will go to be with the Lord. This is the first caught up, but there will still be humans left on the earth. The first caught up does not include the Christians in name, for all the Christians in name will be left over on earth, because the Christians in the name don't have their heart given completely to the Lord.

"One is taken, and one is left" is just an example to show that not all people on earth will be caught up in the air; only a small number will be caught up, not 50% but a small number. The Bible tells us that a small number will be captured first (see [Matthew 22:14](#)).

42 Be awake therefore, for you do not know on what day your Lord comes.

Comments Matthew 24:42. "Be awake" or "watch" is the position to think about; here, it is not the body that must be awake but the heart. So, abide by the Word of God at all times, and the Word of God will keep your heart awake and waiting.

43 Then know this, that if the master of the house had known in what watch the thief was coming, he would have been awake, and would not have allowed his house to be broken into.

44 Because of this also, you be ready; for in that hour you do not expect, the Son of Man comes.

Comments Matthew 24:43-44. As these verses tell us, we do not know the day or the hour when our Lord Jesus is coming back, so stay awake and be ready. That is why a follower of the Lord Jesus needs to meditate on the Word of God and memorize Bible verses: in that way, our hearts stay awake

45 Who then is the faithful and wise servant, whom the master has set over his household, to give to them the food in due season?

Comments Matthew 24:45. "Faithful and wise servant." The faithful is the person who is willing at all costs to follow, and the servant is the person that the Lord has called for certain duties. There are many duties in the kingdom of God; the Lord calls many servants. The wise servant is the one who gets certain duties; to do the work, the wise ones are needed.

"Household" in this place refers to the church that holds on to the name of the Lord to worship, not to those churches that are set up just for social service (entertainment) and not for worshiping the Lord.

"The master" here refers to the Lord Jesus.

"Them" refers to the believers who come to the Lord and worship the Lord among believers; not believers who stay in their place, no acting of worship to come to the Lord; all need to come with the heart to worship and glorify the Lord.

"The food in due season." Now, this is not food for the body, but spiritual food by teaching the Word of God, not from themselves but from the Lord. Before teaching, the servants must come to glorify the Lord and ask the Lord for the message, not prepare the message one week ahead. The message is right now to give to the people; the Lord gives the message right away, when it is the right time. When it mentions about "the food in due season," it is related to the food for the spiritual, regarding each moment of time that the soul has interaction with the Lord, and brings joyful praises to glorify the Lord with the soul. And in those moments, the soul needs different food. Some food the soul got from reading, some food from meditating in the Word, and another food from fasting (abstaining from food for the human body to present the spiritual food for the soul).

46 Blessed is that servant, whom his master having come will find thus doing.

47 Truly Isay to you that he will set him over all his possessions.

Comments Matthew 24:46-47. "He will set him over all his possessions."

This refers to the ones that the Lord calls for that place, a specific place. The Lord will give him (that servant) the duty to give the message according to the Lord's will, not the will of the person; this is not easy, but it should be based on trusting and asking the Lord for help.

48 But if that evil servant should say in his heart, My master tarries;

49 and should begin to strike his fellow-servants, and to eat and to drink with the drunkards;

Comments Matthew 24:48-49. "Evil servant." They are called this way because of the actions that the servant treats the Lord's children; whoever who mistreats the Lord's children will be called an evil servant.

See also [Comments Luke 12:45](#).

50 the master of that servant will come in a day in which he expects not, and in an hour which he knows not,

Comments Matthew 24:50. Be aware of the world; they will poison the mind with the idea that the Lord is not coming. This verse says, "He comes when no one expects." Everything goes well for that person: they succeed in life on earth but fail in the life of the soul. The Lord comes fast, as a flashing of light; be aware: when He comes, you don't have time anymore to repent, His coming is too fast.

51 and will cut him in pieces, and appoint his portion with the hypocrites; there will be the weeping and the gnashing of teeth.

Comments Matthew 24:51. See [Comments Luke 12:46](#).

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) The Bible is the temple of the Holy Spirit on earth, and all the attacks are meant to destroy this temple. Watch the Bible translation you use; many fake translations will appear as time goes on. 2) Do not think that you can have a life of sin (slacking), and you will repent before you die or when you see the time is near for the Lord to come. Your life can end unexpectedly, and the Lord's coming is unexpected, like lightning flashing. You have no time then, so walk now in the way that the Lord expects you to walk. Do not slack; the speed of the Lord's coming is faster than your heart can ask

for forgiveness. 3) Life is full of troubles and tribulations, but we must keep our faith alive until the end. 4) We need to join with other believers and worship the Lord in a group; it is never too late to start. Any time is good to worship, and any place is good to worship the Lord.

Chapter 25

SUMMARY

The Lord wants us to understand some aspects of heaven and the final judgment day. The Lord portrays heaven for us to let us know how He sees humans fitting into the holy place He has prepared. We must keep life on earth in a certain way to feel and understand the heaven that we will enter. Each individual has their own imagination about heaven, but the Lord wants to tell us what He wants humans to be like to fit His heaven, not what humans wish heaven to be like. It is for humans to think and compare what the Lord tells us and what the mind thinks, compare them, and see that the Lord is above all. It is not the same way of thinking; the Lord looks down to see, but humans need to look up to see. The Lord gives us the Bible; read and meditate on the Word to see what the Bible is telling us. The chapter presents the parable of the ten virgins, the parable of the talents, and the teaching about the final judgment day.

1) The parable of the ten virgins teaches us that we do not know the time or the hour of the Lord's return, but we must always be ready. No one knows the time and the hour; only the Father knows. No one can impersonate the Father and know the time; not even the Lord Jesus Himself does. The Lord Jesus never portrayed Himself as knowing all, and in the Bible, He tells us that only the Father knows. Trinity, but the Lord Jesus humbles Himself and accepts His role to be under the Father's authority.

2) The parable of the talents teaches us that each one of us has knowledge about the Creator in our souls from the beginning, and each one of us is responsible for searching and building up our faith and using the gifts the Lord has given us. When someone comes to tell us about the Bible, we need to listen, link what we hear, and always compare it to what the Bible says.

3) The final judgment day is the Lord's time, not twenty-four-hour earthly time. The Lord Jesus will sit on His glorious throne, and He will separate all souls that call Him Lord into two groups. One group that calls Him Lord by name and heart will go for eternal life, and another group that calls Him Lord only by mouth will go for eternal punishment.

1 Then the kingdom of the heavens will be likened to ten virgins, who having taken their lamps, went out to meet the bridegroom.

Comments Matthew 25:1. The parable just wants to let us know to be ready and to prepare ourselves as the Bible instructs. This parable will literally

happen during a short period of time just before the marriage feast. Specifically, the parable applies strictly to the waiting period of time from the Lord Jesus' return in the air until the marriage feast itself. During the marriage feast, that is the time when the Lord Jesus comes down to earth; for the rest of the time, He is above and watching. Before the marriage feast starts, many things will happen at the same time (imagine overlapping of times); before the marriage feast starts, there will be many, many things happening, including the coming down of the temple.

"Ten" as a value here does not have a special meaning; wise and foolish, that is what the number represents. As the Bible uses these terms, the world is represented as wise and foolish.

"Virgins." The term "virgins" represents those who have accepted the Lord and have been baptized in the water to be cleansed as virgins. When you come out of the water baptism, you are clean inside, not the body itself that goes in the water, but the soul that goes in the water. And when you come up out of the water baptism, you are clean, the inner that is clean; all the sins the Lord has washed away and left them in the water. Accept the Lord's cleansing, be baptized in the water, and be ready for the wedding of the life to come.

"Their lamps." The lamp is the knowledge of who the Lord Jesus is; that knowledge, in the heart, will be as a bright lamp to lead the way to the kingdom of the Lord Jesus.

"And went." This action represents the journey of believers walking on earth.

"The bridegroom" is the Lord Jesus.

2 Now five of them were foolish, and five wise.

Comments Matthew 25:2. The foolish ones are the ones who did not give value to water baptism; they did not consider it important to their faith. The wise ones are the ones who, when they look at the water, before going in to be baptized, put their hearts ahead and accept the cleansing of the Lord by normal water, not special water. They believe that the Lord makes that water fit to clean from the inside out. The wise ones know the meaning of that water baptism and relate the water baptism to the mercy of the Lord.

"Five" in this verse means just that some are foolish and some are wise; five and five doesn't give us a ratio.

3 For the foolish, having taken their lamps, did not take oil with them;

4 but the wise took oil in the vessels, with their lamps.

Comments Matthew 25:3-4. The oil here represents the faith, simple faith in the One who gives the light for walking. The foolish ones are Christians by name, not by heart, just by the name. So many people in the world call themselves Christians but have no idea what the meaning of Christian is.

"The wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps". These followers take the teaching of the Lord, by faith, into their hearts with them.

5 Then the bridegroom tarrying, they all became drowsy and were sleeping.

Comments Matthew 25:5. "Then the bridegroom tarrying." Because we don't know the time, we are waiting, and we feel it takes too long to walk along on this earth and wait for the Lord to return; but because of the promise the Lord has given, He will return. He has promised His return, but remember that the time of the Lord is not the same as human time for life; many generations pass away, still waiting for the Lord's return; nobody knows the time; only the Father knows.

"They all became drowsy and were sleeping." This is the term to use for relaxation; a similar human term is 'lazy' and 'lost excitement' of waiting to receive the King.

6 Then at middle of the night there is a cry, Behold, the bridegroom! Come out to meet him.

Comments Matthew 25:6. Q: When will these events here in this verse happen as it is written? A: These events will happen on earth prior to the Lord Jesus' return (touching the earth); all these happen in a very, very short time (twinkling of an eye in the spiritual time) before the Lord Jesus will touch the earth.

"Then, at middle of the night, there is a cry." Remember, at midnight, the time turns out to be the next day. It is a period of time when no one knows what will happen the next day: the time changes from the day you already know to the day you don't know what will happen. At this time, as the Bible tells us, the Lord will send His angels to collect His elect from all four winds for the marriage feast; the rest of the people do not know, still sleep in their way, but the elect, the Lord comes to take.

"Behold the bridegroom." When it says "behold," it means always be alert; the Lord Jesus can come at any moment. Here, "behold" does not mean that some

will identify the exact hour and minute when the Lord returns. From the rapture in the air until the marriage feast, that is the time which the Lord has prepared to save most of the people who still walk in circles searching for the Lord.

Additional Notes on Timeline Events Related to the Second Coming of the Lord and End Time

See also Comments Matthew 13:30 - Brief Notes on the Second Coming of the Lord. Combining the understanding from the parable of the weeds (Matthew 13:24-33) and the parable of the ten virgins (Matthew 25:1-12), we can give an enhanced timeline of the events related to the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth.

There are two eras before the end-time judgment. First is the church time era, which started with the Lord Jesus' first coming to earth (the Lord Jesus' birth on earth) and will end with the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth; then, the second era is the harvest time era or the millennium time era, which will start with the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth and will end with the final destruction of this earth. At the end time, the Lord will gather the wheat into His barn, and the judgment will start. Before the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth, there will be the tribulation period. The tribulation period itself begins with the seven years of tribulation on earth (as described in Daniel 9), which we call the primary tribulation period. Then, the tribulation time will continue until the marriage feast takes place. This stage, following the primary tribulation period, we call the waiting period. The entire tribulation period is a time of judgment coming from the Lord upon this earth before the Lord Jesus returns.

The coming of the Lord Jesus to earth will happen in three stages.

Stage 1: The first stage is when the Lord is still in heaven, and the beginning of this stage is marked by the start of the primary tribulation period on earth.

Stage 2: The second stage is when the Lord comes in the air, and the beginning of this stage is marked by the rapture of the church. The rapture of the true believers occurs during this second stage of the Lord Jesus' coming in the air and will take place sometime in the middle of the primary tribulation period itself. This rapture is the first rapture when the first group of the elect is taken directly from the earth into the air to meet the Lord.

Stage 3: The third stage will begin when the Lord Jesus Himself touches the earth. The Lord Jesus will touch the earth sometime shortly after the waiting period. This waiting period starts after the primary tribulation period, and the Bible does not specify a time duration; the waiting period will end when the Lord Jesus touches the earth (the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth).

Before the marriage feast starts, there will be the second rapture of the church when the second group of the elect will meet the Lord Jesus in the air before He touches the earth. After the marriage feast, the millennium time era on earth will begin. The Lord will select from the first group of the elect taken in the first rapture and the second group of the elect taken in the second rapture a group of chosen ones for service on earth. This group will join other saints from before (from the Old Testament times) to do work on earth. These chosen groups will serve the Lord on earth. The rest of the raptured souls will go to a specific waiting place that the Lord has prepared until the final Judgment Day comes. During the millennium time era, the group of the elect who are in the waiting place, plus those souls that pass through the millennium era, will be selected, and this selection will be part of the stage called "gathering of the wheat" during the final Judgment Day.

Complementary Comments about the Marriage Feast, Rapture, and Tribulation

The marriage feast: When the Lord Jesus returns to earth, the marriage feast will take place. After the marriage feast, nobody can be saved anymore; the door is shut (see verse 10); that is when the chance of salvation ends. The Lord Jesus returns to collect what is His first; the Father's time starts out from this point: the thousand-year reign. The time will return to the Old Testament way, when the Holy Spirit uses the prophets to speak to the people; it will be a kingdom of heaven on earth: Earth upon Earth, the heavenly earth overlaps with this human earth (see [Comments Matthew 24:29](#)). Those who go there, to the parallel earth, will be saved from whatever is happening around them.

The parallel earth: Imagine how humans will react when they see the parallel earth. That will be the time of confusion; everyone will want to go to the parallel earth, but not everyone will be chosen. When you see the parallel earth, the wedding will be happening soon.

Understanding: The Lord Jesus will return in the air with His army of angels to gather the elect from the four winds of the earth. Everyone will see His return in the air through a vision; then He will touch earth, and the marriage feast will

take place shortly after, when His elect ones will see Him face to face (represented by the five wise virgins).

The rapture: The Lord will receive the first elect ones when He comes in the air (at the beginning of Stage 2). His angels will go first to bring the chosen ones who have been waiting patiently without doubting. Those with no doubt in their minds are those who will be taken first, and the lukewarm (the majority of them) will be left behind at this point. If you are lukewarm, "He will spit you out from His mouth", this is why they were left behind. Before the marriage feast starts (at the beginning of Stage 3), there will be the second rapture of the church when the second group of the elect will meet the Lord Jesus in the air before He touches the earth.

This parable applies strictly to the waiting period of time from the Lord's return in the air until the wedding feast. The parable applies before the wedding feast takes place; there is a length of time while this parable unfolds, and then the wedding feast will begin. When the Lord returns in the air, He will leave some of His elect ones on earth to continue His work until the marriage feast begins. They will see the big group of people; when they notice that some have been taken up (at the rapture of the believers), then they will realize and start looking to themselves, asking what they did wrong not to be taken up; then repentance will come.

The tribulation time: The tribulation time, as described in the Bible, is not the same as human time. You can think back from when they crucified the Lord Jesus until His return; this length of time for the Lord is not as humans would measure it; this time in the Lord's time is like a dot of time (point of time), not long, but for humans, the length is so long. When the Lord was crucified, the Father stopped the time of heaven: it was a time of grief in heaven. No human words can describe the feeling in heaven at that time; that is why the Lord Jesus was sad in His prayer on the cross (see [Matthew 27:46](#); [Mark 15:34](#)), for the Lord was almost like He had been forgotten. Remember the Bible tells us that the Lord Jesus, when on the cross, says, "My God, My God, why have Thou forsaken Me?" And that is when the time of heaven was stopped.

Q: Why were the wise virgins not taken up at the first catch-up (the first rapture)? A: This event ("Behold, the bridegroom! Come out to meet him.") will physically happen for the Christians who will be on earth when the Lord returns to earth. The elect ones are already taken up: the first rapture has taken place, the Lord came in the air for His elect. There are two types of elect. The

faithful ones are the first group of elect. The second group of elect are those who have accepted the Lord but are still wobbly in their walk of faith; their walk is not firm; they are still wobbly, not strong in faith. The Lord has His elect who are taking care of people on earth. He leaves some of His elect after His return in the air to have duty among people to lead them until the marriage feast.

7 Then all those virgins arose, and trimmed their lamps.

Comments Matthew 25:7. "All those virgins arose." Notice here, they rose up with what? Are they just being alert to the fact that something is happening, or do they arise and know what is happening? There are two types of "virgins who arose" here: the first ones know what is happening, and the second ones just follow what the first ones are doing. All those virgins arose: some knew what was happening, and some of them just did what the ones who knew what happened did, but had no idea why those had done that (why they trimmed the lamps).

"Trimmed." The trimming; remember the humans use trimming as cutting, but for the Lord, trimming means when the person cleanses their heart, the heart that is holding negative feelings in it; the heart must trim all negative thoughts, not the mind thoughts only, but the heart thoughts as well.

Regarding the time period of this parable, our understanding uses human time to interpret the Lord's time, and the confusion arises between the two times: the human time and the Lord's time.

8 And the foolish said to the wise, Give us of your oil; for our lamps are going out.

Comments Matthew 25:8. "Give us of your oil". Now is a time when the foolish virgins are asking the wise virgins to explain to them what is happening right now. However, if they are never ready, you can explain it in that moment, but it will not help anymore. You don't live the life as the Word of God tells you, and when it comes to the point, explain to us, explain to us, the help is too late. There will be a time when people will see the Lord is coming, but it will be too late to repent. You always have to be expecting the Lord's return and be ready; no one knows the time of His return.

9 Then the wise answered, saying, Lest there may not be sufficient for us and you, go rather to those that sell, and buy for yourselves.

Comments Matthew 25:9. "Lest there will not be sufficient for us and you." Right now, in this verse itself, the wise virgins do not talk about understanding

or explaining; now the wise virgins turn to talk about time; in their understanding, if they keep explaining, they themselves will not have time to glorify the Lord; that is why they told the foolish virgins there is not enough time. In this place, the wise virgins talk about the knowledge. When the foolish virgins ask them to share, in the mind of the wise virgins' thinking, if they spend their time doing that, they themselves will not have enough time to glorify the Lord. To share the oil, they must turn off their lamps, but it will be dark in that area, and the wise are afraid that there will not be enough time to share. In their mind, time is limited, so they tell the foolish ones to look elsewhere and buy for themselves.

"Go rather to those that sell, and buy for yourselves." Now you see why the wise virgins are wise, they can't do but they tell the foolish ones: you can go to another who can teach and ask them to help. That is why they are called wise: if they can't do it, they can solve it another way; they lead them to someone else who can.

"Those that sell" or "dealers." In that time, there are people, the ones who have been left behind, who have the duty. This person, the dealer, has the duty to provide, to satisfy those who come to ask for help, which is why the wise send them to them. These dealers here, the duty they have is almost the same as a prophet, but because of the time, the Lord does not give any more prophets; these dealers have been chosen only for that time to do this work, to be as helpers (dealers).

10 Then while they went away to buy, the bridegroom came; and those that were ready went in with him to the marriage feast; and the door was shut.

Comments Matthew 25:10. "Then while they went away to buy" means they walk in their own way of life; but some, when they go away, in their hearts forget what has been told, because the things of the world sometimes act like a curtain for our spiritual eye, making us see blurred. The Lord is always waiting for all; the Lord's patience is great to all mankind, accepting and forgiving all. When all are trying to go in, because the time of the Lord's return is taking too long, some who just wake up and separate out from the world walk slowly, but as long as they are trying to go, they will reach the gate in time.

"Marriage feast." The wedding feast itself is a time when all the hearts that seek and accept what the call has been calling for come together to glorify the Lord in all, as one heart, one goal, and to lift up and glorify the Lord, and to go in and enjoy all that has been prepared for the feast. The feast itself will be a

celebration on the parallel earth, a celebration for the soul, not for the flesh. Then the big celebration will be for the soul world, but it will also be a celebration on the parallel earth. Imagine it as a city above city (overlapping each other), and those that are ready for the marriage feast, will be transfigured and enter the city above, which all can see. This verse is linked to the verse before: those left behind are looking up and see those taking up, but they couldn't go up with them. The marriage feast is on the parallel earth, and it cannot be fully seen on the human earth; there are two different places, one you can see but not fully see all. A different dimension will come into effect: the heavenly dimension of material. In this dimension, some will have material almost exactly like real human material. (See also [Comments Matthew 25:6](#)).

11 Afterward then came also the other virgins, saying, Lord, Lord, open to us!

Comments Matthew 25:11. This verse alone refers to those who are lukewarm; when the door is shut, it will never open for those who were left out.

12 And answering he said, Truly I say to you, I do not know you.

Comments Matthew 25:12. When the door is shut, the mercy of the Lord is not extended; you will be rejected at this point; the grace time is over.

13 Watch therefore, for you do not know the day nor the hour.

14 For, like a man going on a journey, called his own servants, and delivered to them his goods.

Comments Matthew 25:14. "Like a man". The man in this verse refers to the Lord Jesus Himself. Before He goes back to heaven, and even when He is not on earth, He gives duty to some servants. He calls some to be His servants, and He talks to them in their hearts. As the Bible tells us, when the apostles were traveling, the Lord Jesus told them not to go to some places. And it was also not the right time, because the Lord Jesus Himself has His own chosen servants to show His mercy to all humans; that is why, in the Bible, there is a passage where the Lord Jesus did not allow the apostle to speak the Word (see [Acts 16:6-7](#)).

"Going on a journey or going into another country." This shows that the Lord Jesus is not on earth, but He still directs the way; some of His servants have the privilege of having a special connection to the Lord Jesus Himself.

"Called his own servants" refers to the Lord Jesus' special servants. There is a difference between the Lord Jesus Himself calling and the Holy Spirit calling. The Lord Jesus has His own servants for His work, His special work that He wants to be done. Yes, the Holy Spirit calls, but the Lord Jesus Himself also communicates with specific servants whom He chooses to do His personal work. However, the Lord Jesus connects with His special servants through the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit is the Spirit of the Father, which is why the Bible says that blasphemy against the Holy Spirit cannot be forgiven (see [Mark 3:28-30](#)). But also remember that the Bible says the Father Himself is in the Lord Jesus; that the Lord Jesus and the Father are One; and that the Lord Jesus said that what belongs to the Father also belongs to Him (see [John 14:10-12](#)). The Holy Spirit and the Spirit of the Lord Jesus are not the same. The Holy Spirit is One with the Father, but the Lord Jesus (His Spirit) is between both.

"Delivered to them his goods or entrusted his goods." When the verse says "delivered to them his goods," it refers to specific orders the Father gives to the Son. These are specific orders, and that is why the Son has His own specific servants to go out and do the job. The Holy Spirit hovers over the earth and does His work (the Holy Spirit's work), which He also receives from the Father. That is why the Bible tells us that the Father, the Son (Jesus Christ), and the Holy Spirit are Three in One. The Three have duties, but all have received duty from the Father as One.

15 And to one indeed he gave five talents, then to another two, then to another one; to each according to their own ability; and he went on his journey immediately.

Comments Matthew 25:15. "Talent." The talent here in this parable refers to the success of staying firm in faith. Another way you can think about it is: the talent is the gift that a person maintains in the soul; for example, the Bible tells us that the disciples could stay in prayer day and night, which is a gift to stay firm in faith. A similar way of thinking about it is: you start working on a Bible commentary, and not every day you enjoy doing it, but in you there is a whispering voice from the Lord telling you to continue, and that is a gift to stay firm in faith. The Holy Spirit, who stays firm inside of us, maintains this gift through the power of the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit is like a whispering voice inside us, telling us and pushing us to do what we need to do for the Lord. (Notice that "he went on his journey," so, in this context, it makes sense for us to understand the talent as the success of staying firm in faith and in connection with the Lord by prayer.)

"... to each according to their own ability." This man gives the talent according to his own judgment towards his servants. Pay attention: each servant did not receive the same amount; the amount is related to the ability of the servant. If you give more to the one who cannot handle it, regardless of the amount, it makes no meaning for the servant. The talent itself, not the amount, is a gift from the Lord to His servants. Look at it another way: each individual, who receives, does with the thing they receive differently; the first one immediately goes and makes use of it right away, while the last one goes and buries it underground; now, here you see the ability and willingness of each individual. Notice that the meaning of the word talent here does not represent the goods mentioned in verse 14. Here, it talks about gifts; you cannot buy a gift from the Lord. Money has no value for the Lord; the deeds have value for the Lord, not the earthly money.

Questions and Answers Related to the Gift of Talent

Q: Is the talent in this parable given to the soul? A: The talent is given only to the soul.

Q: What about the one who receives one talent and doesn't do anything with it?

A: One word is fit for this person: ignorant. He is ignoring the whispering voice of the Lord within him. Remember one thing: the Lord never forces you to do anything for Him; He gently tells you what to do, and obedience will come into play. Do you have that obedience in you to listen and obey what the Lord tells inside of you? Obedience will keep you going in whatever the Lord has in His plan for you.

Q: Why didn't each servant get the same amount? A: This question refers to this world; some can make more, some cannot. It is based on the determination and ability of the person. You see, you have more, but you do not see that you have the ability to make more out of it; or you have less, so you are pleased with the less you have; determination plays a big role. This place is where you can refer to your faith. We do not know each person's heart, but the Lord works in the mind to link the thought to the heart to gain faith. The Lord gives everyone the ability to grow in faith in the Word because the Lord is the Living Word, and the Word can grow.

Q: Is the will of a person a gift from God? A: The person must seek the Lord's will that the person has received from the Lord. Inside of you, when you find that will, the peace and joy from the Lord will overflow your soul. When you find that will, you will put all your might into doing it, and the things will fall

into the right path, and you will succeed in doing it. The will touches the soul, the desire touches the mind. There is a difference between the will and desire: the will comes from above and sinks down into your soul, while desire comes out from the mind to go out to do things. But at this point, be aware of your imagination: don't use imagination to cover the whispering voice of the Lord that is in you. A person can choose between will and desire, be aware!

16 Having gone, the one having received the five talents traded with them, and made five more.

Comments Matthew 25:16. Practice the trade here is a practice way to increase what you have and what you want to have. In this sense, trade is not about selling or buying; instead, it is about what can bring benefit to what they have. When trading, we start thinking and using human thought to justify the will of the Lord; don't mix them; try to separate them out; and wish to gain more. Yes, you can go to trade to get more; the Lord has more than anyone wants, but He doesn't give all to one person.

"... traded with them, and made five more." Go and do trades for and get more; that is why not everyone gets the same amount. This way is another way to acquire the ability to gain things and to go deeper into the faith itself, which leads to more faith. Not everybody has the same ability; some find an easy way to make more. The trading happens between the one who receives the talent and the Lord's servants who have the duty of giving. In that place, where the servant who got the talents lives, many have duties and abilities in different ways. This person goes and uses the faith that he has and gains more faith and brings it back to be his own thing; by his own ability, he used what he has received and gained more, a double portion by trading. He received the gift of success in faith; how to increase faith by going to trade to gain more faith; to trade the understanding to gain knowledge. Knowledge, not to explain about the Lord Jesus, but how to be the person who receives mercy and uses what he has received to gain faith that returns to be successful.

Q: How do you increase your faith by going to trade? A: By trading understanding, you will get knowledge on how to be the person who receives mercy and uses what has been received to gain more understanding, which returns to being a success. You understand many things, but knowledge is higher and deeper. You need the knowledge to use understanding, because without knowledge, understanding will stay without growth; knowledge makes understanding grow.

17 In like manner the one with the two gained two more.

18 But the one having received the one, having gone away, dug in the ground and hid his master's money.

Comments Matthew 25:18. Q: What can we say about this person and about his actions? A: The one who dug and hid the money is the one who has ignored the duty toward the Lord completely. He has ignored the Lord from the inside of the soul itself. When the person goes and hides the talent under the ground, you walk on the ground, but if you go and hide it under the ground, you walk all over what the Lord has given to you. In human terms, you can call this action a blasphemous action; think of what it is hidden underground. You take the talent, and you leave it, and you don't use it, which is bad enough, but you dig the ground and hide it underground. Who do you think you are? You walk all over it, as you walk all over the one who gives it to you.

19 Now after much time, the master of those servants comes and takes up a word with them.

20 And having come, the one having received the five talents, brought other five talents, saying, Master, you delivered to me five talents; behold, I have gained five more talents.

21 His master said to him, Well done, good and faithful servant! You have been faithful over a few things; I will set you over many things; enter you into the joy of your master!

Comments Matthew 25:21. "You have been faithful over a few things." This portion refers to small things the Lord gives, and the person rejoices over and appreciates the one who gives, even if it is a small thing. That is the way humans should be: appreciate everything the Lord gives.

"Enter you into the joy of your master." The joy of the master here refers to the joy of the Lord in the world to come. This joy is the reward when the person acknowledges and comes to glorify the Lord from the depths of the soul. He will enter to have joy which the Lord prepares; the joy feeling of that soul will be beyond what humans can understand.

22 And having come, the one with the two talents said, Master, you delivered to me two talents; behold, I have gained two more talents.

23 His master said to him, Well done, good and faithful servant! You have been faithful over a few things; I will set you over many things; enter you into the joy of your master!

24 Then having come also, the one having received the one talent, he said, Master, I knew you that you are a rough man, reaping where you did not sow, and gathering from where you did not scatter;

Comments Matthew 25:24. Q: What can we say about this servant's answer?

A: This parable relates to the servant's answer and is not about lying; it relates to the heart that the Lord has shown mercy from the beginning. The Lord has given knowledge to all about Himself from the beginning. That knowledge keeps talking about the Creator, a small whispering voice, whispering inside, but the person chooses to ignore it and hides the ear of hearing, even from the voice from outside; this is what the person is doing: shuts the ear, closes the heart.

The key to understanding the parable is that each person receives the knowledge about the Creator in their soul from the beginning, and each person is responsible for doing something about that knowledge and is responsible for growing their faith. The Lord has servants wherever we go, and the Lord will open the way to each heart that is sincere about finding the truth.

25 and having been afraid, having gone away, I hid your talent in the earth; behold, you have your own.

26 But answering, his master said to him, Wicked and slothful servant! You knew that I reap where I did not sow, and gather from where I did not scatter;

Comments Matthew 25:26. "Wicked and slothful servant." This condemnation is the result of laziness.

"You knew that I reap where I did not sow ..." This saying just wants to remind all humans that when the end time comes, the Lord will gather all those who respond and not respond to their hearts, telling the person what it should be. Even if no one comes as a servant of the Lord to tell that person about the Creator, the voice of the Lord in their heart keeps whispering out the meaning of this world, the meaning about the Creator who created this world. Each person has eyes to see, all around them, the hand of the Lord who created all things, and that is what it means: "I reap where I did not sow, and gather from where I did not scatter."

27 you ought, therefore, to have put my money to the moneychangers, and having come, I would have received my own with interest.

Comments Matthew 25:27. "You ought, therefore, to have put my money to the moneychangers." Here, we don't have a deeper meaning; the verse simply wants to say that one should do something with whatever "talent" the Lord is giving, either for themselves or for someone else, rather than bury it underground.

"I would have received my own with interest." The interest itself is someone with whom the person has a chance to interact, and should tell that someone the good news about the Lord; that is the interest the Lord gains back when the Lord gives a person knowledge: the talent spreads more branches.

28 Take away, therefore, the talent from him, and give it to the one having the ten talents.

Comments Matthew 25:28. The action of this verse relates to the spiritual world.

29 For to everyone having will be given, and he will have over and above; however, the one having not even that which he has will be taken away from him.

30 And cast out the unworthy servant into the outer darkness; there will be the weeping and the gnashing of the teeth.

31 But when the Son of Man comes in His glory, and all the angels with Him, then He will sit on the throne of His glory.

32 And before Him will be gathered all the nations, and He will separate them one from another, as the shepherd separates the sheep from the goats;

33 and He will set indeed the sheep on His right hand, and the goats on the left.

34 Then the King will say to those on His right hand, Come, those being blessed of My Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world.

35 For I was hungry, and you gave Me to eat; I was thirsty, and you gave Me to drink; I was a stranger, and you took Me in;

36 naked, and you clothed Me; I was sick, and you visited Me; I was in prison, and you came to Me.

37 Then the righteous will answer Him, saying, Lord, when did we see You hungry and feed You, or thirsty and give You drink?

- 38 And when did we see You a stranger and take You in, or naked and cloth You?
- 39 Now, when did we see You sick, or in prison and visit You?
- 40 And answering, the King will say to them, Truly I say to you, to the extent as much as you did it to one of the least of these My brothers, you did it to Me.
- 41 Then will He say also to those on the left hand, Depart from Me, you cursed, into the eternal fire having been prepared for the devil and his angels.
- 42 For I was hungry, and you did not give Me to eat; and I was thirsty, and you did not give Me to drink;
- 43 I was a stranger, and you did not take Me in; naked, and you did not cloth Me; sick, and in prison, and you did not visit Me.
- 44 Then they also will answer, saying, Lord, when did we see You hungry, or thirsty, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not minister to You?
- 45 Then will He answer them, saying, Truly I say to you, To the extent that you did it not to one of the least of these, you did it not to Me.
- 46 And these will go away into eternal punishment; but the righteous into eternal life.

Comments Matthew 25:31-46. This portion of Scripture refers to the final judgment day (day here refers to the Lord's time, not twenty-four-hour earthly time) after the millennium era has passed. The Lord Jesus will sit on His glorious throne, and He will separate all souls, the ones that call Him Lord by name and heart, into two groups: one for eternal life and one for eternal punishment. The group that calls Him Lord by name and heart will go for eternal life, and the group that calls Him Lord only by mouth will go for eternal punishment.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

- 1) Do not listen to man-made theories about how heaven should be and who to fit in. It is not for humans to judge who fits in heaven. 2) Do not listen to those who claim to have authority and know what God the Father will do. Even His Son Jesus did not claim to know all things, so how can humans claim to know what the Father will do? 3) Do not bury the talent that the Lord has provided for you; try to find a way to

make the knowledge about the Lord known to others; the Lord did not give it to keep it inside. We are supposed to spread out and make branches as a tree to multiply the knowledge we have been given. 4) It is important to help people, but first, we should help our brothers in faith. Nevertheless, this does not mean pouring money only on the people. We should go and help, and as we help, we should also share the Word of God, which is most important. We should always have the Word of God on our lips so we can say it right away. 5) Let the Word of God be the judge to all men, and if you see someone who does wrong, use the Word of God to tell them; therefore, let the Bible be the judge because if it is from yourself, you will become an accuser.

Chapter 26

SUMMARY

The events in this chapter take place at Bethany in the house of Simon, the leper, in the city in the house of a certain man, at a certain place on Mount of Olives, at Gethsemane, a place close by the Mount of Olives, at the palace of the high priest, and at the courtyard of the palace of the high priest. At these locations, the Lord Jesus interacts with many people: His disciples, people in the house of Simon the leper, a commoner woman, a certain man in the city where the Passover with the disciples took place, Judas and a great crowd with swords and clubs that came to arrest the Lord Jesus, the servant of the high priest, Caiaphas the high priest, the chief priests, the scribes and the elders, Peter, many false witnesses and the last two false witnesses that came forward to accuse the Lord Jesus, the crowd at the high priest palace courtyard, and the bystanders and the two servant girls. Many small and big events happen in this chapter: the chief priests, the high priest Caiaphas, and the elders plot to arrest the Lord Jesus and kill Him; the Lord Jesus goes to Bethany in the house of Simon, the leper, where a woman anoints His head with an expensive ointment; then the Lord Jesus tells to the disciples what is going to happen to Him; Judas arranges with the chief priests to betray the Lord Jesus for thirty pieces of silver; the Lord Jesus sends His disciples in the city to prepare the Passover at a house of a certain man; in the evening the Lord and the twelve disciples eat the Passover meal; the Lord Jesus tells all of His disciples that one of them will betray Him; the Lord Jesus warns Judas about what he is about to do but it didn't get through him; the Lord Jesus institutes the Lord's Supper (the betrayer Judas had no part in the Lord's Supper since shortly before the supper he left to betray the Lord Jesus); they all sang a hymn and went out to the Mount of Olives; the Lord Jesus foretells the disciples' falling away and Peter's denial; the Lord Jesus tells them that He will be crucified, but He will rise in three days and meet them at Galilee; the Lord Jesus takes with Him Peter and the two sons of Zebedee and goes to pray in Gethsemane (a place close by the Mount of Olives); the Lord Jesus comes back to the place where all other disciples were waiting (on the Mount of Olives), and He is arrested while speaking to His disciples; a great crowd with swords and clubs led by Judas come to arrest the Lord Jesus; Peter cuts the ear of the servant (Malchus) of the high priest; all the disciples left the Lord Jesus and fled; the Lord Jesus is taken to

the Caiaphas and the council at the high priest palace; many false witnesses come to accuse the Lord Jesus and the last two men come to accuse Him using falsely His words; people mock and disgrace the Lord Jesus; Peter denies the Lord Jesus three times before two servant girls and the bystanders. All the events in this chapter take place in a short period between Nisan the 12th (Tuesday) and the evening of Nisan the 15th (Friday). However, four main things occur in this chapter that we should use in our lives to please the Lord. 1) The Lord Jesus goes to the house of Simon the leper in Bethany. The purpose of the Lord Jesus' coming to earth is to show love and mercy. He comes for the people that nobody wants and is with them. The Lord Jesus teaches us not to look down on anyone, regardless of their condition, but to show love and mercy. Also, during this visit, a woman anoints the Lord Jesus' head with an expensive ointment. This common sinner wants to glorify the Lord with what she can afford; this is how she wants to glorify and show people that she worships the Lord. The Lord used this woman's actions to teach the disciples about unity. 2) The Lord institutes the Lord's Supper. The Last Supper is a remembrance for all Christians, and every believer should celebrate it. When the Lord Jesus broke the bread and shared it with the disciples, that represents His human body, and that is what we should remember. Many places in the Bible take significant meaning between leaven and unleavened bread, but the Lord used unleavened bread. The blood of the new covenant refers to the moment when they pierced His side, and blood and water came out of His pierced side. The blood is for cleansing, and the water represents water baptism. When they nailed the Lord Jesus to the cross, that is, for the sins of the world, they pierced the nails (the nails represent the sins of the world) through His flesh, and the sins stay under that wound (the wound covers the sins of the world). 3) The Lord Jesus prays in Gethsemane. The Bible tells us that the Lord Jesus' soul was exceedingly sorrowful, which proves He is hundred percent human, because only humans have souls and sorrow. During this time of sorrow, the Lord Jesus prays to the Father, and here is the proof of the conversation between Father and Son; also, it shows His obedience, that the Son will do according to the Father's will. We should take this as an example of obedience because even the Son was obedient. 4) The betrayal, arrest, and denial of the Lord Jesus. Judas, one of the disciples, betrays the Lord with a kiss, and the other eleven flee away. Peter denies the Lord in the high priest's courtyard. They all fled, but only Peter denied the Lord. The Lord always has a way for all of us; we just need to look back and not let fear grip our souls.

1 And it came to pass, when Jesus had finished all these words, He said to His disciples,

2 You know that after two days the Passover takes place, and the Son of Man is betrayed to be crucified.

Comments Matthew 26:2. Here, the Lord Jesus expresses His sorrow and His care for His disciples. As a human, think of how hard it is to think of how you are going to die. The suffering of death, as the Lord Jesus will take it, is beyond what humans can imagine in their minds. Humans all know that they will die, but for God in the human body to know how He will die and leave all His chosen ones behind to face all the challenges in this world alone, it is difficult. The Lord knows how hard it is to face the trial and crucifixion, and in each moment, He knows they will crucify Him. The mocking He will receive already happens in front of His eyes. The human nature in Him does not want to go through that suffering, but the love He has for humans is greater than His own suffering (see verse 39). It is beyond the human mind to understand the separation of body and the soul, as human flesh does not know what that will be, but the Lord's human body knows what it means to be separated from the soul.

"You know that after two days the Passover comes." The Passover day is on Nisan 14, which is a Thursday, and the feast of the unleavened bread starts on Nisan 15, which is the evening of Thursday. Then, when the Lord says, "After two days the Passover comes," He means that the time in this verse was Nisan 12, which was in fact a Tuesday.

3 Then were gathered together the chief priests, and the elders of the people, into the courtyard of the high priest, who was called Caiaphas;

4 and they took counsel together that they might seize Jesus by deceit and kill.

Comments Matthew 26:4. In this verse itself, it tells all humans to think twice about what they are planning to do. The Lord can know ahead of time what humans are thinking of doing. He knows the evil plan, but He does not change it. The Lord will walk through it. He will not change what they want to do; that is what He came for.

5 But they said, Not during the feast, for fear that a riot might arise among the people.

Comments Matthew 26:5. Do not forget that in the Bible, people regard the Lord Jesus as a teacher. If they take the teacher, it can create problems in

people's minds. The teacher is in a higher position than common people, simply because of the culture being taught.

6 And Jesus having been in Bethany, in the house of Simon the leper,

Comments Matthew 26:6. The event described here in Matthew 26:6-13 is the same as that described in Mark 14:3-9, but a different event from that described in Luke 7:37-39 and John 12:1-8. We have to think about what it means when the Lord tells humans that one will understand one way, another will understand another way; the same situation, different angles of looking, small, little details might be different, but still word-by-word Bible dictation from the Holy Spirit. The Bible is dictated word-by-word by the Holy Spirit, but each writer gets the way to write for a different purpose. Each writer has the words to put down from the Holy Spirit, but for working in a different way. He tells to write, and when the person writes down, it will be a different angle, look from the left and right, but come out to understand the same thing for people out there that will read. It is for a different purpose that the Lord allows it to be different: one gets more details than another, one gets different details from the same thing. However, remember as well that the Lord will not force understanding on a person. This way, it also proves that it is the work of the Holy Spirit, since two people received the same story without copying from each other. Small different details for people to think about, but it has no different meaning. Word-by-word telling, but for different gospels, each has its own purpose; word-by-word, but the purpose is different. Matthew never copied anything from the Gospel of Mark. Matthew got first, his gospel. Matthew had the heart that was willing to do all the work; his work is all original, from the Holy Spirit.

"In the house of Simon the leper." Simon the leper, as it says, had leprosy from the head to the heel. He was full of leprosy, and he had been rejected by people, but here the Lord associates with this leper. In human eyes, Simon is unclean; in the Old Testament or the New Testament, leprosy is unclean. We should remember that a leper was considered an outcast; you would not associate with an outcast. But the purpose of the Lord's coming to earth is to show love and mercy. He comes for the people that nobody wants, and is with them. This verse should teach people not to look down on anyone, regardless of condition; the Lord comes for all.

7 a woman came to Him, having an alabaster earthenware pot of fragrant oil of great value, and she poured it on His head as He reclined.

Comments Matthew 26:7. Q: Who was this woman? A: In this place, it just wants to let us know that this common sinner wanted to glorify the Lord with what she could afford; this was the way she wanted to glorify and show people that she worships the Lord. This woman was just a commoner among people, but for what she did, she is no longer a commoner: we all know about her action, how she glorified the Lord.

"She poured it on His head as He reclined." This act is part of the culture of showing honor to a person. Normally, it was done to the elders, but the Lord was not an elder yet; so, it was a respect that she showed in front of people's eyes to see.

8 Then having seen, the disciples became indignant, saying, For what purpose is this waste?

9 For this could have been sold for much, and have been given to the poor.

10 But Jesus perceiving it said to them, Why do you trouble the woman? For she has done a beautiful work to Me.

Comments Matthew 26:10. When the verse says "she has done a beautiful work," the Lord already prepares the disciples for the things to come, because the Lord has seen that between them the quarrel will come (each individual has their own opinion of all things); but the purpose of saying "she has done a beautiful work," is to make unity. For what the Lord has told them, they will talk among themselves. The Lord wants unity between them, to bind them together, and to start working.

11 For you have the poor always with you; but Me you do not have always.

12 For this woman in pouring this fragrant oil on My body, she did it for My burial.

Comments Matthew 26:11-12. For the first portion (verse 11), the meaning is complete; in the second portion (verse 12), when she poured the ointment for preparing, she had done what the Lord had put in her heart, because her heart was clean. She may be a sinner, but in her heart, she was clean, because no one will care for the deed of the Lord; then and now, it is the same. The Lord can perform many miracles, but in a flash, all are forgotten. They have seen miracles, but they still crucified the Lord; many miracles have been shown, but they did not work in the hearts of the people there. Comparatively, this woman comes without a miracle shown to her, while the rest have had many miracles

shown to them, but their hearts were not opened, and none of them cared about what would happen.

13 Truly I say to you, Wherever this gospel shall be proclaimed in the whole world, that also which this woman has done will be spoken of for a memorial of her.

Comments Matthew 26:13. This passage about this woman will be an example for people of the way they should come to the Lord, with a clean heart, to glorify the Lord.

14 Then one of the twelve, the one being called Judas Iscariot, went to the chief priests,

15 he said, What are you willing to give me, and I will betray Him to you? And they appointed to him thirty pieces of silver.

16 And from that time, he sought an opportunity to deliver Him to them.

Comments Matthew 26:14-16. This paragraph supports an Old Testament prophecy: the price of the Savior has been set to fulfill what has been spoken (see Zechariah 11:12-13; Psalm 41:9; Psalm 55:12-14). The Lord has come to fulfill the Father's will to bring humans to glorify the Father.

17 Now on the first day of the unleavened bread the disciples came to Jesus, saying, Where do Thou wish that we should prepare for Thee to eat the Passover?

Comments Matthew 26:17. "On the first day of unleavened bread." What the disciples came to ask refers to the plan of making ready. The disciples came to ask before the Passover started, because the Passover had many rules, and they had to prepare for it. During the feast, they could not prepare because they couldn't do any work. This part of the verse occurred on the first day before the Passover started, but it wasn't the Passover yet, for this part refers to the preparation day (Nisan 13 at sunrise and Nisan 14 until twilight).

Leviticus 23:5-6 says, "In the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month at twilight is the Lord's Passover. And on the fifteenth day of the same month is the Feast of the Unleavened Bread." The Passover day itself was Nisan 14 (Thursday). The unleavened bread celebration lasted seven days, starting on the fifteenth day of the first month, that is, Nisan 15. The Passover is also called the Feast of the Unleavened Bread. Normally, the preparation for the Passover was done during Nisan 13 and 14, and it had to be finalized by the end of Nisan 14 (before the sun went down). Here, the preparations for the Passover started with the sending of the disciples on Nisan 13 (on Wednesday)

to get the place. Afterward, the meal preparations were done all day during Nisan 14 (Thursday). All the things that had to be prepared had to be finished before the sun went down that day (Nisan 14) to follow the law. The Lord Jesus and His disciples ate the Passover meal after sundown on Thursday evening (see verse 20: the twilight of the fourteenth day of the first month), which was in fact Nisan 15 (as the day ends at sundown and a new day starts).

The Lord Jesus was crucified the following afternoon (on Friday), which was still Nisan 15, the same day when the Lord instituted the Lord's Supper. Because the Bible calls Him the Passover Lamb, then He must be crucified on this day; how can the Bible call Him the Passover Lamb if He is not crucified on that day? Joseph of Arimathea took the Lord Jesus' body down from the cross (see Matthew 26:57-60; Mark 15:43) on the same day (Nisan 15), but did not perform the burial; he wrapped the body of the Lord Jesus in a clean linen cloth, but the traditional burial was more than that. Joseph took the Lord Jesus' body from the cross, wrapped Him in a clean linen cloth, placed Him in his prepared tomb, and sealed the tomb with a large stone (he rolled a great stone to close the entrance of the tomb). He couldn't do any more preparation than that, since on this day they were not allowed to do any ordinary work; the next day was a Sabbath day. The Lord Jesus rose on Sunday morning, which was Nisan 17.

Then the Lord Jesus stayed in the heart of the earth from Nisan 15 until Nisan 17, which was three days and three nights: using the ray of the sun as a counting of days and nights; when the sun goes down (no light of the sun), that is considered the end of a day and the start of a new day. The light end of Thursday night counts as a new day starting (Friday). Even if the event happened at the end of the day, you have to count from the beginning when that day started, not from the point of the action that happened. In this way, Nisan 15 started on Thursday evening, and Nisan 17 ended on Sunday evening; as a result, there were three nights and three days covered. For God, the sunsetting is the point of action, but people count by the action of people.

18 And He said, Go into the city to a certain man, and say to him, The Teacher says, My time is near; I will keep the Passover at your house with My disciples.

Comments Matthew 26:18. Take notice that the disciples just went and told "The Teacher says." All of the people recognized the Lord Jesus as Teacher. A teacher has a reputation above all common people. The Lord Jesus is the true Teacher of humans. He teaches humans to have the true life inside of them.

This person (a certain man) will feel privileged to host the Teacher; he wholeheartedly wants to do it, not by force. This brings joy to these people to host the Passover for the Teacher.

"A certain man" was just a simple man whose heart was open, and the Lord saw that heart; that is why He sent the disciples, just to tell one thing: the Teacher wants to have the Passover at your house.

19 And the disciples did as Jesus appointed them, and prepared the Passover.

20 Now evening being come, He was reclining with the twelve disciples;

21 and as they were eating, He said to them, Truly I say to you, that one of you will betray Me.

Comments Matthew 26:21. This verse lets us know that the Lord Jesus has told His disciples about the betrayer, but He never revealed the name. Even though the person will do bad things, the Lord will never reveal it. Whatever they know, they cannot do anything about it, but they can cause damage. If the Lord has mentioned who will betray Him, all the disciples will go over that person, and make the things that had to happen be affected, and not happen as it was written.

22 And being grieved exceedingly, they began to say to Him, each one, Is it I, Lord?

Comments Matthew 26:22. This verse shows the natural way in humans: they always want to know more; they just want to know.

23 And answering He said, The one having dipped the hand with Me in the dish, the same will betray Me.

Comments Matthew 26:23. The Lord gave them a hint; however, He did not say specifics. The way the Passover was set up in the past: a long table would be set up, with all the food on it. Everybody would come to join the meal together as one; it was a bond between people; you would share the same table, share the same bowl of food; sharing as unity, as a family. The Lord's Supper was done in the same way: set the food on the table, and all the disciples and the Lord Jesus joined the same table. A long table with a bowl in the middle, and each would take from it; that was why the relationship between Him and the disciples was tight, as one family, sharing the meal in the middle. The Lord treated His disciples as one family. All they dipped together with the Lord in one bowl. And that was why the Lord said the one who dipped the same plate with Him would betray Him. But, the saying "the one having dipped the hand

with Me in the dish" just tells us that one of the disciples was betraying Him, but the Lord doesn't identify him here clearly.

For the Lord's Supper, there was a table but no chairs; all sat on the floor during the Passover. Each disciple had his own individual bowl and took food from the big bowl on the table. "The one having dipped the hand with Me in the dish," here, the Lord means that the one betraying Him was one who shared with Him from the bowl (dish) in the middle of the table. Here, He did not identify the one; He just said it was one of the disciples. At that time, the Lord did not want to reveal who the person was, but everyone was there; their ears had heard; the Lord warned that one of them would betray Him. The person who would betray heard the Lord but ignored Him and went to do the great sin anyhow. It is not the Lord who chose; even though the person heard, he still went to do of his own will. This is when humans want to sin; even though they hear the voice of the Lord within, they still go and do what is against the Lord.

24 The Son of Man goes, even as it is written of Him; but woe to that man through whom the Son of Man is betrayed! Better would it be for him if that man had not been born.

Comments Matthew 26:24. The Lord has tried to help Judas think about what he was going to do; it would have been better for him never to have been born than to do what he did (betray the Lord Jesus). He did not come to follow the Lord Jesus because of a heart of faith in the Lord; he just came to expect to be important; he never had faith from his heart. That is why it would have been better never to be born than to be born and commit the great sin; remember, punishment for eternity. That is why the Lord had mercy on the betrayer, because the Lord knows the eternity of punishment is hard. This verse itself warns all humans: after you come and are baptized in water in the name of the Trinity of God, and if you walk away from the Lord, it is a betrayer's action.

25 And Judas, who betrayed Him, answering said, Is it I, Rabbi? He says to him, You have said.

Comments Matthew 26:25. "You have said." The Lord had said that it wasn't the Lord's choice to choose him to be a betrayer, but Judas himself chose to betray the Lord by his own free will; it was not the Lord's will for him. This verse shows that it was not the Lord's will for him to be a betrayer. The Lord chose him to be among His disciples to deter his mind from doing evil. The Lord gives everyone a chance to be saved; you just have to turn away from

doing bad. But, you still have free will to choose to do bad even if the Lord gives a path to walk away from doing bad, and the betrayer chose to walk in his own heart. The Lord chose him to be a disciple and give him a chance to do good, but it didn't take hold in his heart. If the Lord hadn't chosen him, he would still have done bad. He heard the Lord say that it is better not to be born than betray Him, but the betrayer still chose to commit the great sin of betraying the Lord Jesus.

26 And while they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed, broke it, and having given to the disciples, He said, Take, eat; this is My body.

Comments Matthew 26:26. Not every verse will have a hidden meaning; here, the meaning is as it is written. Q: What is the significance of breaking bread for a Christian? A: The bread that we break should be unleavened bread. Many places in the Bible take significant meaning between leaven and unleavened bread, but the Lord used unleavened bread. When He broke the bread and shared it with the disciples, it represented His human body; and that is all we should think about when breaking the bread at the Lord's Supper.

27 And He took a cup, and having given thanks, gave to them, saying, Drink of it, all of you;

28 for this is My blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for forgiveness of sins.

Comments Matthew 26:27-28. "This is my blood of the new covenant ..." This blood of the new covenant refers to the moment when they pierced the Lord Jesus' side. The Bible tells us that blood and water came out when they pierced Him; the blood is for cleansing, and the water represents water baptism (see [John 19:34](#)). When the water from His body dropped to the earth it spread everywhere on earth; therefore, you can be baptized in every part of the earth to be born again in the water of His blood, and that is why you need to be baptized. His blood represents the cleansing from sins: when His blood was poured out, it had the cleansing water poured out all over the world to wash away all the sins of humans through baptism in water. All humans should think about why it is written that the blood and water flowed out from His side.

Q: When we have the Lord's Supper, what kind of wine should we use? A: It must be grape juice, not wine; color makes no difference. When they nailed the Lord Jesus to the cross, it means that, for the sins of the world, they have

pierced the nails through His flesh, and the sins of the world stay under His wounds; His wounds cover the sins of the whole world.

29 But I say to you, I will not drink from now of this fruit of the vine, until that day when I drink it fresh with you in My Father's kingdom.

Comments Matthew 26:29. This verse will take effect during the final judgment day, and it will take place on the parallel earth. The human eyes will see the parallel earth overlapping the old earth (for parallel earth reference, see Revelation 11:19). Don't forget the Bible tells us that even the sun loses its shining; we don't need the sun anymore at that time; the light of the Lord will be brighter and warmer than the sun we have now. All vegetation of the parallel earth is not the same as on this earth; it is completely different, but there will be some fruit of the vine, but not the vine of this earth, the vine of the parallel earth.

30 And having sung a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.

Comments Matthew 26:30. This verse shows the way we should do: sing the hymn songs to glorify the Lord, not the songs of the world, but the songs to glorify the Lord. The Mount of Olives was the place where the Lord Jesus always went to glorify the Father; it was the personal time between the Father and the Son for conversation. The Lord Jesus always finds time to be with the Father, as all believers should find the time to be in prayer. Glorifying with the words and the heart that is singing, that voice goes loud; all believers should do as the Lord has been an example, singing and praying. In the Bible, in many places, it mentions the Lord Jesus praying; if the Lord Jesus prays, how come humans do not do it? We have an example in the Bible, do so as a believer and follower of the Lord.

31 Then says Jesus to them, All you will be offended in Me this night; for it is written, I will strike the shepherd, and the sheep of the flock will be separated.

32 However, after being raised up, I will go before you into Galilee.

Comments Matthew 26:32. The Lord has clearly told them that He will rise up on the third day and where they should go to meet Him. All instructions are clear because it will not be easy for them; it will impact all their hearts, but the Lord has given them instructions on where to go.

33 But answering, Peter said to Him, If all will be offended in Thee, I will never be offended.

34 Jesus said to him, Truly I say to you, that in this night, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times.

Comments Matthew 26:33-34. Here is a good example for all to consider: do not just talk with your mouth; the Lord also sees the heart; you do not know what will happen the next day. Many turn away when a little bit of trouble comes. They just walk away and don't look back anymore, but stop and look back to see how many ways the Lord has made; just open your eyes and heart to see what it is, not just walk away. This comment applies today as well to Christians, who turn back when trouble comes their way, but they should open their eyes and see that the Lord has many ways for them.

35 Peter says to Him, Even if it may be necessary for me to die with Thee, I will not deny Thee. Likewise, also said all the disciples.

Comments Matthew 26:35. The mouth talks when you do not know what it will be. The mouth always speaks, but does not think what it is; and once the words come out, you can't take them back. The disciples had the same problem; they said the same thing: "I will stay with you," but all have fled. That's what humans do: all do the same way, all walk away when trouble comes.

36 Then comes Jesus with them to a place called Gethsemane, and He says to the disciples, Sit here, until having gone away, I will pray over there.

37 And having taken Peter and the two sons of Zebedee, He began to be sorrowful and distressed.

Comments Matthew 26:37. The Lord took these disciples with Him to build up their faith for the work that would come later on in life. They needed this time with the Lord. Remember this verse about the sons of Zebedee (see [Matthew 4:21](#)). One will perish; it is written that one will be killed (see [Acts 12:2](#)). This time spent with the Lord will help the brother.

38 Then He says to them, My soul is greatly grieved, even to death; remain here and watch with Me.

Comments Matthew 26:38. This verse proves that the Lord is a true human; the words to think about are "My soul"; only humans have a soul. Humans have a soul because humans are created in the image of God, and that is why humans are not animals. The Lord is telling us here that His soul is sorrowful, and only humans have that. People have reason to believe that because the Lord Jesus is not human, this torture is not as hard as humans receive.

However, that is why the Word is written here for humans to know that the Lord Jesus has a soul because He is a human and knows to be sorrowful and happy. This verse tells us how much sorrow He feels; His soul is sorrowful even unto death.

39 And having gone forward a little, He fell upon His face, praying and saying, My Father, if it is possible, let this cup pass away from Me. Nevertheless, not as I will, but as Thou.

Comments Matthew 26:39. Here is the proof of the conversation between Father and Son, but it also shows the obedience: the Son will do according to the Father's will. The humans should take this as an example: the obedient Son, as children obey their parents. You have an example as a follower of the Lord, so do as your Lord of life has done.

40 And He comes to the disciples, and finds them sleeping, and says to Peter, In this way, were you not able to watch with Me one hour?

Comments Matthew 26:40. This verse itself, all the believers can think it through for themselves first. If you call yourself a believer, but day after day you don't stay in prayer and read the Word of God to put the shield of the Lord to protect your soul, when something goes wrong, and you accuse God, for not protecting you, use this verse to think first how much you are in tune with the Spirit of the Lord, and don't come to accuse the Lord, that the Lord did not protect you. The Lord never asks anyone to do a hard job for themselves; just read and meditate on the teaching of the Lord to strengthen the soul. The soul needs food as well, not just the body needs food, and eternal food for the soul is in front of you: the Bible.

41 Watch and pray, that you enter not into temptation; the spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh weak.

Comments Matthew 26:41. "The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh weak." Just because the Bible talks about something that you cannot see, do not use that as an excuse that you are too tired to read or pray. The spirit can glorify the Lord at all times if you keep your heart busy and think of the Word at all times, and do not think of the body being tired. The heart will always glorify the Lord if your mind does not keep thinking of excuses for not doing, and use the excuse of your body being tired, and give reason to your own heart that you have done enough. Let the inner of you glorify the Lord at all times.

42 Again for a second time having gone away, He prayed, saying, My Father, if this cannot pass away, except I drink it, Thy will be done.

43 And having come again, He found them sleeping, for their eyes were heavy.

44 And having left them, having gone away again, He prayed a third time, saying again the same word.

Comments Matthew 26:44. Notice that, in a short period of time, the Son of God goes and prays alone three times in a row. The Son of God Himself goes and prays alone. He connects with the Father. He is human as well. In the situation that He is in, tired body, weary in sorrow of soul, He still overcomes and goes and stays in prayer. The Lord has shown that it is important to stay in prayer.

45 Then He comes to the disciples, and says to them, Sleep finally, and take your rest; behold, the hour is at hand, and the Son of Man is betrayed into the hands of sinners.

46 Rise up, let us go; behold, he is at hand that betrays Me.

47 And while He is yet speaking, behold, Judas, one of the twelve, came, and with him a great multitude with swords and clubs, from the chief priest and elders of the people.

Comments Matthew 26:47. Now, at this point, humans can see how the power of the dark takes hold of a dirty heart. The heart that never had faith opened a way for the dark to penetrate inside, and the dark used the human mind to make a mob join. The Lord knows, but He will not stop them; this must happen, that is a reason for Him to come.

"Great multitude." The multitude does not know the Lord Jesus; Judas knows the Lord, and he still betrays the Lord. The multitude can be led to do this by the power of the dark; they (the spirits of darkness) exercise their power in large mobs.

48 Then the one betraying Him gave them a sign, saying, Whomever I shall kiss, it is He; seize Him.

Comments Matthew 26:48. Q: Why did they require someone to identify the Lord Jesus? Wasn't He well-known and easy to recognize? A: It was a procedure of humans: someone must point Him out for the accuser to succeed; you point Him out, then the action of arrest could take place. Same way as now: you go to someone and accuse them; if you have more people to join, that

is all that is needed. And Judas did his job well; he betrayed the Lord Jesus with a kiss; that was the betrayer's action.

49 And immediately having come up to Jesus, he said, Greetings, Rabbi; and kissed Him.

50 And Jesus said to him, Friend, for what have you come? Then having come, they laid hands on Jesus, and seized Him.

51 And behold, one of those with Jesus having stretched out the hand, drew his sword, and having struck the servant of the high priest, cut off his ear.

Comments Matthew 26:51. The name of the high priest's servant is given in John 18:10 as Malchus. The name of the disciple who cut off his ear is Peter (see John 18:11).

This verse tells humans to think before they do something: think of the Lord and the Lord's teaching. This servant did not harm anyone, which is why, in another Gospel, it is said that the Lord healed him (see Luke 22:51). Even though the purpose of his coming was to capture the Lord, the Lord did not hold him guilty because he had no authority; he followed orders.

"... cut off his ear." The one to be criticized here is Peter for his quick action, without thinking; if you're going to pull the sword out, you have enough time to think. Don't let the reason of this world cover your eyes, as all humans still do the same as well. Q: Why does the Bible give the name of the servant? A: Giving the name of a person in the Bible signifies that the Lord wants all of us to know that you are someone for the Lord as well. If this person has been named here, your name will be in the Lord's book; all those who follow the Lord's teaching will be in the Lord's book.

52 Then says Jesus to him, Return your sword into its place; for all those having taken the sword will perish by the sword.

53 Or do you think that I am not able to call upon My Father, and He will presently send Me more than twelve legions of angels?

Comments Matthew 26:53. Here, it shows clearly that the Son is God, but He will always first lift up the Father. Even for His own life, the Lord Jesus still always gives authority to the One He serves. But many of those who call themselves Christians do not give authority to the Lord to be the One who makes decisions for them. They always make decisions on their own, and when things go wrong, they shift the responsibility and the blame onto the

Lord. And if they succeed, they do not give glory to God who helps them; this is what humans do, even Christians do the same. How many of them succeed but never give thanks to God for others to know; instead, they hide in their homes? But go out and thank the Lord and tell people that your success belongs to the Lord.

54 How then should the Scriptures be fulfilled that thus it must be?

Comments Matthew 26:54. In this verse, complete obedience from the Son is shown. The Scripture is God's word, and all that is written must be fulfilled first.

55 In that hour said Jesus to the multitudes, Did you come out as against a robber with swords and clubs to seize Me? I sat every day in the temple teaching, and you did not seize Me.

56 But all this is come to pass, that the Scriptures of the prophets might be fulfilled. Then all the disciples, having left Him, fled.

Comments Matthew 26:55-56. In these verses, the Lord has shown His mercy to all humans. Whoever reads these verses should notice the mercy of God. The Lord has tried to pinpoint it to them: look before you do; the proof is in front of you. The Lord Jesus is sitting in a higher level as a teacher, and now they have come to accuse Him; are you going to accuse the Innocent One? They all want to bend the truth so that they can be right in front of the public. Always, when they want to accuse the innocent ones, they seek first the approval of the people. If they want to go to hell, they bring other people down with them. By doing this, not only are they guilty themselves, but they also make others guilty.

"Then all the disciples, having left Him, fled." This shows human nature: all were gripped with fear, and these were the people who were with the Lord. Here, humans should see the power of fear. The Lord always told the disciples, "You of little faith" (see [Matthew 8:26](#)). If you have faith, fear has no power.

57 And those having seized Jesus led Him away to Caiaphas the high priest, where the scribes and the elders were gathered together.

58 And Peter followed Him from afar, until the court of the high priest; and having entered within, he sat with the guards to see the end.

Comments Matthew 26:58. At this point, human curiosity outweighs fear. Peter followed until the courtyard, because of being curious to see the end.

59 And the chief priests and the whole council sought false witness against Jesus, so that they might put Him to death;

Comments Matthew 26:59. "False witness against Jesus." This verse says false witness, which means there is no truth in them. Who is the father of lies? At this point, they use lies to condemn the Lord of truth. It starts with lies to condemn the Lord of truth.

60 but they did not find any of many having come forward as false witnesses.

61 But afterward came two, having said, This Man said, I am able to destroy the temple of God, and to build it in three days.

Comments Matthew 26:61. "But afterward came two." These two witnesses played a big role. They were false witnesses who used the word of the Lord Jesus to accuse Him. He has been accused by His own words; this is the human way: just pick out some words, what they want, regardless of what it is.

"This Man said, I am able to destroy the temple of God, and to build it in three days." This saying has some truth in it because the Lord Jesus did say He could rebuild the temple, but He did not say He would destroy it. The Lord Jesus says in [John 2:19](#), "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up." We can clearly see that they picked out some words from what the Lord Jesus said and used their own interpretation.

62 And having stood up, the high priest said to Him, Do Thou answer nothing? What do these witness against Thee?

63 But Jesus was silent. And the high priest said to Him, I adjure Thee by the Living God, that Thou tell us if Thou are the Christ, the Son of God.

Comments Matthew 26:63. By their own question, they have already admitted who the Lord Jesus is in their eyes. But because of the fear of losing the position in the public eye, they ignore what they already know deep inside. They can condemn the innocent just to keep themselves in position.

64 Jesus says to him, You have said. But I say to you, From now you will see the Son of Man sitting at the right hand of Power and coming on the clouds of heaven.

Comments Matthew 26:64. The Lord Jesus has already told them straight who He is. Who can sit upon the throne? Only God can. Here, the Lord Jesus has told them who He is. They only have to accept it; that is all they need to do: to admit who the Lord Jesus is.

65 Then the high priest tore his garments, saying, He has spoken blasphemy; what further need have we of witnesses? Behold, now you have heard the blasphemy;

66 what do you think? They answered and said, He is deserving of death.

Comments Matthew 26:65-66. This is the way humans use to cover up when the truth comes out: they use the word of God to condemn the innocent; humans do this all the time. It is not the first or last time they have done this; so many perished because of this, but it is not the way the Lord wants it. You don't use God to punish people; if people are wrong, God will punish them. This is the wrong way to control people: these people use God to control others.

67 Then they spat in His face and struck Him. Then others struck Him with the palms of their hands,

68 saying, Prophecy to us, Christ, who is the one having struck You?

Comments Matthew 26:67-68. These verses show how humble the Lord Jesus is. He has come down to take the punishment for humans; that is why the Father forgives all humans of their sins (except the sin against the Holy Spirit), in the name of His beloved Son.

69 Now Peter was sitting outside in the court, and a servant girl came to him, saying, You also were with Jesus the Galilean.

70 But he denied before them all, saying, I do not know what you say.

Comments Matthew 26:70. This behavior is the human way: when people are confronted, they will try to find a way out, even by lying, just to get out of the situation; this is the human nature of sin.

71 Then having gone out to the porch, another maid saw him, and says to those in that place, This was with Jesus of Nazareth.

Comments Matthew 26:71. Note that in verse 69, the servant girl calls Jesus the Galilean, and here someone else calls him Jesus of Nazareth. Among people, the Lord Jesus was known by these names. There have been many arguments about where He was from.

72 And again he denied with an oath, I do not know the Man.

Comments Matthew 26:72. Here, we can clearly see the power of fear covering over reason.

73 Also, after a little while, those standing by, having come, they said to Peter, Surely you also are one of them; for even your speech gives you away.

74 Then he began to curse and to swear, I do not know the Man. And immediately the cock crowed.

Comments Matthew 26:74. This verse again confirms the power of fear; the power that plays with the minds of humans, it conquers the mind. Because of the love of your life, you deny the One who created you. We can see here an example of what fear can do.

75 And Peter remembered the word that Jesus had said, Before the cock crows, you will deny Me three times. And having gone out, he wept bitterly.

Comments Matthew 26:75. This verse confirms the deity of the Lord Jesus, that time has no limit for the Lord. His being is above time. We stand here, in time and space, but the Lord Jesus is above time and sees further what will happen; this is an example.

"And having gone out, he wept bitterly." This weeping was a sorrow after it happened, but it did happen, and it can't be erased from the mind. This denial would help Peter later on in life when he had to face his own challenges. He would always remember that "on that day I have denied the Lord," and he would not let it happen again. This experience helped Peter pass through more challenges than others. Once you make a mistake with the Lord, use that mistake to remind yourself, and do not let it happen again. Each day, we do something that should be remembered and use that to glorify the Lord and remind ourselves of the mercy of God, because He forgives our mistakes.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) Do not put anyone down; show love and mercy to all people. When you put someone down, you judge them as well, but only the Lord can judge. The judgment you use to put someone down will be used on you. The commandment is to love one another, as our God is the God of love. 2) Take part in the communion of the Lord with other believers regularly. But before taking the bread and the wine, pray for mercy for everyone, not just for yourself. When you take communion, you become one with the Lord, and you become children of God as one. 3) Read the Bible and be obedient to the Word and the call that the Lord puts into your heart. 4) The Lord

never asks anyone to do hard jobs for themselves; we just need to read and meditate on the Lord's teachings to strengthen the soul. The soul needs food just like the body needs food, and eternal food is in front of us: the Bible. 5) Your spirit can glorify the Lord always if you keep your heart busy and think of the Word of God at all times, instead of thinking about your physical tiredness. Let the inner part of us glorify the Lord at all times; this is the way to connect with our soul; the Bible is the bridge between the seen and the unseen worlds. 6) Do not turn your back on the Lord; when troubles come, look around because the Lord always has a way out for us.

Chapter 27

SUMMARY

The events described in Chapter 27 take place at the Palace of the High Priest, the governor's palace, the potter's field, the governor's headquarters, a place called Golgotha (or Place of a Skull), the temple, the holy city, and at Joseph's new tomb where the Lord Jesus was laid. In this chapter, many people interact with the Lord Jesus: His disciples, the chief priests, the scribes, the elders; Pilate, the governor, Judas the betrayer, the crowd; Barabbas, the governor's wife, governor's battalion of soldiers; Simon, a man of Cyrene, two criminals crucified along the Lord Jesus, people passing by the cross of Jesus, bystanders, risen saints, the centurion and his soldiers, many women that were followers of the Lord Jesus (including Mary Magdalene, the other Mary, and the mother of the sons of Zebedee), Joseph a rich man from Arimathea, the Pharisees, the Pharisees' guard that guarded the Lord Jesus' tomb.

Some of the events in this chapter in chronological order are: the chief priests and the elders delivered the Lord Jesus to Pilate, the governor; Judas, the betrayer was remorseful and hanged himself; the chief priests took the thirty pieces of silver, the price they paid to the betrayer for the Lord Jesus, and purchased the potter's field; the Lord Jesus stood for trial before the governor; the chief priests and the elders persuaded the crowd to ask for Barabbas to be released and crucify the Lord Jesus; Pilate did not use his authority as a governor to release the Lord Jesus but instead he delivered Him to be crucified; the governor's battalion of soldiers mocked the Lord Jesus; the soldiers led the Lord Jesus away to be crucified; the soldiers compelled Simon of Cyrene to carry the Lord Jesus' cross; they took the Lord Jesus to a place called Golgotha and crucified Him there; two criminals were crucified along with the Lord Jesus, one on each side; people passing by derided and mocked the Lord Jesus; from noon until 3 pm there was darkness over all the land; at about 3 pm the Lord Jesus cried out to the Father and He yielded up His Spirit; the curtain of the temple was torn in two from top to bottom; there was an earthquake and tombs were opened and many saints that died in the Lord Jesus were raised; the centurion and the soldiers with him were filled with awe and said, "Truly this was the Son of God"; many women that were the Lord Jesus' followers watched the crucifixion and His burial; Joseph of Arimathea buried the Lord Jesus in his new tomb cut from the rock;

the Pharisees put a guard of soldiers in front of the tomb where the Lord Jesus was buried. Five events from this chapter stand out: 1) The chief priests and the elders take counsel to put the Lord Jesus to death, and they deliver Him to Pilate, the governor. They wanted to do one thing: put the Lord Jesus to death because they believed He would take their power. 2) The Lord Jesus is condemned by the chief priests, the elders, the crowd, and the governor to be crucified, and He is mocked by all. People know in their hearts that the Lord Jesus is the King of His people. Yet, the crowd is stirred by the chief priests and the elders to call to the governor, "Let be crucified," and "His blood be on us, and on our children." 3) The Lord Jesus is led to a place called Golgotha, where He is crucified between two criminals. By placing Him between criminals, they were trying to show that the Lord Jesus was one of them, not the Savior, but a criminal. They wanted the Lord Jesus to be spoken of as a criminal and discourage all the disciples at that time and in the future. 4) The Lord Jesus cries out with a loud voice to the Father and yields His Spirit. The Lord Jesus cries out, "My God, My God why have Thou forsaken Me?" How sad must heaven be when the Son could not feel the Father? Human words cannot describe the sorrow the Three in One felt when separated. Because the Son took human form, the death of the human body in the Son also impacted the Father. When the Son died, He went down to the place of death to give light to the dark place. The Father will not go there because His glory will destroy the death there. 5) Joseph of Arimathea takes the Lord Jesus down from the cross, wraps His body in a clean linen cloth, and puts Him in his new tomb. Joseph, with his slaves, rolls a great stone to the entrance of the tomb.

1 Then, when morning came, all the chief priests and the elders of the people took counsel against Jesus so that they might put Him to death.

Comments Matthew 27:1. The chief priests and the elders want only one thing to do: to put the Lord Jesus to death because they believe He will take their power. They take the first ray of the sun to be the point of delivering the Lord Jesus to the governor. All look out for the sun to condemn someone, because it has a way of believing how to cut the deal fast with the governor to make things finish early. They want to be the first to meet the governor so that the governor will hear only one side of the story. And most of the time, they can convince the governor to agree with their decision. It is the same case here: they know that the Lord Jesus is not guilty, but they have to persuade the governor to condemn Him. The commoners start the day differently than the soldiers or leaders (the access time to the governor is different from that of the

chief priests and the elders), so the commoners do not have time to fight if they want to disagree with the decision.

However, people cannot fight if they are not united in making a common petition to the leaders. Within the wall, all the leaders are talking, agreeing. Outside the wall are the commoners, but if they are not united, they cannot make a petition. The elders bring the person to the governor as early as possible, at sunrise, so the governor can make the decision without people interfering; the commoners can't come to make their voices heard to the governor at that time. Then, people cannot talk against the leaders anymore, because the governor made the decision. The elders and leaders do not want a conflict with the people, so they use the governor. The leaders try to avoid questioning from the people because they don't want to have the mob go against them. If people question the leaders about the accusations against a person, the person will have to wait longer before they can be sentenced. But this way, at sunrise (early morning), no one can stop it; the death sentence can be issued with just a few witnesses.

2 And having bound Him, they led Him away and delivered Him to Pilate, the governor.

Comments Matthew 27:1-2. They have marked the death sentence for the Lord Jesus before proven guilty. They have already made the decision: He is guilty; no need to fight them. The leaders have to move fast to cut down the problem. They use the Word of God here: the Bible tells people to listen and obey the Lord's teaching. So, if the governor comes and tells that the sentence has been made, the people cannot go against it. That is the Lord's teaching: the Bible says that the Lord is the One who sets the leaders, and that people have to listen to the authorities. The Lord Jesus is a teacher, so they have to do it quickly to avoid people interrupting, because of the position He holds among the people: He is a teacher.

3 Then Judas, the one having betrayed Him, having seen that He was condemned, having regretted, he returned the thirty pieces of silver to the chief priests and elders,

4 saying, I sinned having betrayed innocent blood. But they said, What is that to us? See you to it.

Comments Matthew 27:3-4. It is too late to change his mind; the deed has been done, and sorry means nothing now. Judas has betrayed the Lord of life; remorse means nothing at this point, and nothing can be changed. This verse

tells all humans to know that they (the chief priests and the elders) say that it is not their fault, it is Judas's because he is the one who delivered the Lord Jesus to them. But Judas, the chief priests, and the elders have the same level of guilt (see John 19:11); the chief priests and elders are guilty because they all know that the Lord Jesus has no fault, yet they take Him to the governor.

5 And having thrown down the pieces of silver into the temple, he departed and, having gone away hanged himself.

Comments Matthew 27:5. Remorse has power; therefore, before doing something, think about the outcome. You can stop it before, but if you go too far, you can't stop anymore. People should think about this. If you do things, you cannot be halfway done; it ends one way or another. To have remorse when you do wrong, or stop before doing wrong, and you don't have to deal with remorse; this is a human choice.

6 And the chief priests, having taken the pieces of silver, said, It is not lawful to put them into the treasury, since it is the price of blood.

7 And having taken counsel, they bought with them the potter's field to bury strangers in.

Comments Matthew 27:6-7. In that time, when they had doubts about what people might think about their actions, they would go and buy something else. But the real purpose was just to show people that they did not take the money for themselves; they bought something. But behind them, there had been many deals as well. Money in any generation has power in itself, as the Bible says, and makes many corrupt.

8 Which is why that field was called, the field of blood, to this day.

9 Then was fulfilled that having been spoken by Jeremiah the prophet, saying, And they took the thirty pieces of silver, the price of the One having been priced, whom they of the sons of Israel set a price;

10 and they gave them for the potter's field, as the Lord directed me.

Comments Matthew 27:9-10. Matthew got this prophecy from the Lord to write it down. People may comment negatively, but it is the Lord's will to put it down as is. Even at that time, what Jeremiah had said was not all being recorded to be known. People can argue about what Matthew wrote, but do people think, by human mind, how Matthew could know how to mix the words

together if not given by the Lord (see Jeremiah 19:1-13, 32:6-9)? Some portions no one could know unless the Lord told them.

11 Now Jesus stood before the governor; and the governor questioned Him, saying, Are Thou the King of the Jews? And Jesus, You say.

Comments Matthew 27:11. You can see from this verse itself what knowledge they have about the Lord Jesus: He is the King. In their hearts, people know that He is the King of His people, which is why the question came from this person himself. People came to tell, so it was well known among people that the Lord Jesus is King.

"You say." When the Lord Jesus answers this, it shows people that it is not He Himself claiming to be, but people claiming Him to be. Notice the way of the answer. The Lord never proclaimed Himself to be anything of this world, because His world is above here. He just tells them to accept what they claim Him to be.

12 And when He was accused by the chief priests and elders, He answered nothing.

13 Then says Pilate to Him, Do Thou hear not how many things they witness against Thee?

14 And He did not answer him, not even to one word, so as the governor marveled greatly.

Comments Matthew 27:12-14. The Lord Jesus answered nothing to the chief priest and elders, and nothing to the governor, because the Lord saw their hearts were closed tight; He could speak more, but nothing would stick to them, so He had no words for them. Sometimes silence is the best answer, and here the Lord has used silence as the answer.

15 Now at the feast the governor was accustomed to release to the multitude one prisoner, whom they wished.

16 Now, they were holding, at that time, a notable prisoner, called Barabbas.

Comments Matthew 27:16. Barabbas was just a criminal, but, in their eyes, the criminal was worth living more than the Lord Jesus Himself.

17 They, therefore, having been gathered together, Pilate said to them, Whom will you that I release to you? Barabbas, or Jesus, who is called Christ?

Comments Matthew 27:17. This multitude here is a new group of people who gathered after the Lord Jesus was handed over to the governor. They came in a

large group, but there was no leader among them, so they were not united; a mob without a leader has no power.

18 For he knew that for envy they had delivered Him up.

19 And as he was sitting on the judgment seat, his wife sent to him, saying, Have you nothing to do with that righteous Man; for I have suffered many things today in a dream because of Him.

Comments Matthew 27:19. "His wife sent to him, saying ..." Now the evil uses this woman to try to stop the plan of the Lord in saving humans. She comes forward and tries to change the plan; this is the work of evil, and not because she means well. People have been confused by this verse because she claims she had a dream, but we don't know in detail what the dream was, and whether it was a dream from the Lord. As a believer, think on this: if she were to convince him (the governor), what would happen? No human would be saved.

God knows what will happen, but people must use their own free will to make the choices in their lives. For example, the Lord Jesus knew that Judas would betray Him, but He did not stop him. The Lord still chose him to be His disciple, but the free will itself will always take control of the human mind. The betrayer had a chance to hear the living Word, but also had the free will to choose to listen to and obey the living Word, or to listen to his own free will and do things he believed would benefit him in some other way; it was his free will. Free will allows humans to be free to choose what they feel is right. Free will keeps humans free, so that they don't feel controlled by the Lord to choose to do good or evil. This is the way of free will in humans: choose what you feel is right. But what you think is right, whether it is right or not, that is what free will plays with.

20 And the chief priests and the elders persuaded the multitudes that they should ask for Barabbas, and destroy Jesus.

Comments Matthew 27:20. This verse clearly tells us who the ones who come to make a decision are. Who are the ones they (the multitudes) listened to? Are they listening to the Lord, or are they listening to the voice of the dark (through the chief priest and the elders)? The woman in verse 19 tries to stop the plan and prevent it from happening at all, but now these people listen to the voice of the dark and act against the Holy Son, the Lord Jesus. Pay attention to the goal of each of them: the goal of the woman was to stop the work of the

Father, but the second group's goal was to stop the Holy Son Jesus from being glorified for accomplishing the work of the Father. Now, they are making the eyes of people pay attention to two persons, specifically, comparing the Holy Son Jesus with criminals, and thus putting the glory of the Son lower than that of a criminal.

Q: How do we understand the crucifixion as the Father's plan for salvation? A: The Father's plan for the Lord Jesus to be crucified is correct, as it is written in the Bible. But, for the condemning people who accuse the Lord Jesus, look at the purpose they condemn. They condemn Him because they don't believe or because they want people to think that He is not who He claims He is. Discrediting the Lord Jesus would be the purpose of crucifying Him; this is the main point to see. The Father planned for the Lord Jesus to be crucified because the Father knew ahead of time what people would do to His Holy Son. But, in order to save all humans, the Son has given Himself up as well and accepted the duty to be crucified by His creation. Humans come from Him, and they crucified the One who created them, but this is also the way to save humans. The Lord did not condemn anyone; their own actions and purposes in their hearts have condemned them. You could think that the Father saw ahead what would happen, yet He still sent the Son, the Lord Jesus, to tell humans about the Lord, and He did not intervene when the humans crucified the Son. He let the suffering and the crucifixion happen, but then the Lord Jesus rose again victoriously after three days. We, as believers, must believe that the Lord Jesus is who He claims He is, the Son of God, and that He is One in the Trinity of God.

21 But answering, the governor said to them, Which of the two do you want to release to you? And they said, Barabbas.

22 Pilate says to them, What then should I do with Jesus, who is called Christ? They all say, Let be crucified.

Comments Matthew 27:22. This verse shows human nature. That is the way the multitude behaves: when one says yes, all will follow. Then and now, there is no difference. A multitude just needs a leader, and regardless of right or wrong (see verse 20), the multitude doesn't care about right or wrong but just about doing it.

23 And he said, Why, what evil did He commit? But they cried out exceedingly, saying, Let be crucified.

Comments Matthew 27:23. The governor has fully known that there is no wrong in the Lord Jesus, but he does not make the decision to let the Lord Jesus go free; instead, he makes the people to be the ones demand it. You have the power, but by doing it this way, the blame does not fall on the governor, because he is not the one to ask that; the multitude takes the blame for the leader (in people's eyes). But the Lord sees the heart; the mob has no brain, just following; but the governor, the chief priests, and the elders are the ones who are guilty in the Lord's eyes. Because the Lord put them as the leaders, the responsibility for right or wrong falls on the leaders; the people just follow the leaders without the brain thinking.

24 Now Pilate having seen that it profited nothing, but rather a tumult was arising, having taken water, he washed the hands before the multitude, saying, I am guiltless of His blood; see you to it.

Comments Matthew 27:24. In this verse itself, the governor, whom the Lord has put to lead people, ignored the duty the Lord has given him; he wants to blame the children, but all the sin and guilt is going on him as well, whom the Lord had put in duty to be a ruler. By washing his hands, he cleans the dirt, but who gave him the job? Selfish people only do that; he is the one to be blamed as well. As a leader, the Lord put him up to rule people; what people did was his fault too; whether he washed his hands or not, it means nothing to be clean. Pilate puts guilt on people, but he is the leader, and by washing his hands, he will not clean his sin. Think of it this way: you wash the mud off your hands, claiming you are clean; you may be clean on the surface, but dirty inside.

25 And answering, all the people said, His blood be on us, and on our children.

Comments Matthew 27:25. Anyone who reads this verse should think twice before admitting fault to their own children. Here, they do it with their own will by saying, "His blood be on us, and on our children." Look at them, since then until now; they themselves were the ones to ask for the blocking of blessing because their mouth spoke without thinking. But even like this, the Lord still blesses them internally; they are not completely under the suffering of this world; in them, something lifts them up. The country may not prosper, but spiritually, they do. However, why put responsibility on your own children? You yourselves have disobeyed the Lord; the children are under your protection, and you don't do the job; your children will suffer because of what your mouth speaks. The main thing to think about here is suffering, not direct

punishment. They have been suffering for a long time for what their mouth spoke at the crucifixion of the Lord Jesus.

Q: In Ezekiel 18:20, the Bible says, "the person who sins will die." A: It is not the guilt that goes on the children, but the suffering as a result of that guilt; all will endure together. Think twice before you say/admit (anything to the Lord); it is just a result of the words. But remember, as well, that the Lord is calling some out; not all reject the Lord Jesus. The ones the Lord calls out, and if they follow the call, they have received His pardon (see Romans 11:25).

26 Then he released to them Barabbas; and Jesus having scourged, he delivered that He be crucified.

Comments Matthew 27:26. Here, they have done a disgrace to the Lord Jesus.

27 Then the soldiers of the governor having taken Jesus into the Praetorium, gathered before Him the whole cohort.

28 And having stripped Him, they put around Him a scarlet robe.

29 And having twisted a crown of thorns, they put it upon His head, and a reed in His right hand; and having kneeled down before Him, they mocked Him, saying, Hail, King of the Jews!

30 And having spit upon Him, they took the reed and struck on His head.

31 And when they had mocked Him, they took off His robe, and they put on Him His garments, and led Him away to be crucified.

Comments Matthew 27:27-31. When they mocked the Lord Jesus, it was not the Lord Jesus alone they were mocking; the Three in One together were mocked at the same time. That is why, when the Son asks the Father for mercy, the Father gives mercy because the Father Himself knows what the Son had gone through. The hurt, the disgrace, the Father had known how much it hurt the Son to receive it. So, when the Son asks anything, the Father will do it, as the Bible tells us. People should meditate carefully on these verses and try to understand how much the Lord has taken for the sins of this world.

32 And as they came out, they found a man of Cyrene, named Simon. They compelled him that he might bear His cross.

Comments Matthew 27:32. There are many, many guesses about this man. However, we must take only what the Word tells us here about this man, no

further details. Many people make a story out of this, but this is all that is written. Just remember, his name has been written down in the Holy Bible, and he has received appreciation through that (see Mark 15:21, Luke 23:26).

33 And having come to a place called Golgotha, which is called, The place of a skull,

34 they gave Him to drink wine mingled with gall; and having tasted, He was not willing to drink it.

Comments Matthew 27:34. They gave this drink not to cut down the thirst; it was a type of torture; when you drink it, it will make your throat hurt, and that is why they gave it to Him to drink, as a torture.

35 Now having crucified Him, they divided His garments, casting lots; [that it might be fulfilled that which was spoken by the prophet, They divided My garments among themselves, and for My clothing they cast a lot;]

36 and sitting down, they were guarding Him there.

Comments Matthew 27:35-36. What they are doing here is to fulfil what has been written in the Word of God (see Psalms 22:18).

37 And they put up over His head His accusation written: THIS IS JESUS THE KING OF THE JEWS.

Comments Matthew 27:37. This verse has been fulfilled: the Lord Jesus is the King of the world, not just of the Jews alone. It is fulfilled: the Lord Jesus is the King of all.

38 At that time were crucified with Him two robbers, one on the right hand and one on the left.

Comments Matthew 27:38. As the Bible has written, He was counted among the criminals (see Luke 22:37, Isaiah 53:12). The Lamb of God has been counted with the sinners of the world; they put Him in the middle of the criminals. The meaning behind their actions is that He is one of them, not the Savior, but a criminal. That is the way they want His name to be told to discourage all the disciples: He is a criminal. Do not follow a criminal was their hidden message, and that's why: to discourage His disciples and make the work of the Lord stop. If His followers believe this, the case will be closed, and no one will talk about it any further. And the leaders will not have to feel guilty anymore, because nobody will come to write up that the Lord Jesus is innocent when He died between the criminals.

39 And those passing by railed on Him, wagging their heads,

40 and saying, Thou who destroys the temple, and builds it in three days, save Thyself! If Thou are the Son of God, come down from the cross!

Comments Matthew 27:39-40. This is what people talk about Him, and it links to a verse before (see [Matthew 26:61](#)). However, He never says to destroy the temple, but rather that He can rebuild it in three days (see [John 2:19](#), and [Comments Matthew 26:61](#)).

41 In like manner also the chief priests, mocking, with the scribes and elders, said,

42 He saved others; Himself He cannot save. He is the King of Israel; let Him now come down from the cross, and we will believe in Him.

43 He trusts on God; let Him deliver Him now, if He wants Him; for He said that I am the Son of God.

Comments Matthew 27:41-43. The leaders here want to justify their actions, but these verses have also condemned them. By themselves, they condemn themselves: they know who the Lord Jesus is, but they ignore Him. Their ears have heard, but they did not listen; here is the support for this. They heard that the Lord Jesus saves people; they should have thought about who He is. By their own words, they have condemned themselves. What they are accusing Him of, they themselves are the ones who are not able to do, because they cannot save themselves and give eternal life, but the Lord Jesus can.

44 And likewise even the robbers, that were crucified with Him threw upon Him the same reproach.

Comments Matthew 27:44. There are two criminals: one mocking, the other accepting the Lord (see [Luke 23:39-43](#)). This clearly shows how the world is. There are only two types of people: those who believe in the Lord Jesus and those who do not believe in the Lord Jesus. The ones who do not believe are the mockers; the ones who believe are those who have acknowledged the Lord Jesus and have become believers. One of the criminals, even at the point of death, and even seeing the Lord being condemned alongside them, yet he had a heart for the Lord; regardless of what happened to the Lord, he believed. Humans should learn from this one and take notice of what the Lord has said to this person: "Truly I say to you, Today you will be with Me in Paradise" (see [Luke 23:43](#)). He has conquered and gained eternal life as a true believer.

45 Now, from the sixth hour, was darkness over all the land until the ninth hour.

Comments Matthew 27:45. "From the sixth hour ... until the ninth hour." This darkness lasted from noon until 3:00 pm, depending on which part of the country they were in. In the upper part of the country, and in the lower part of the country, the time will be shifted. But by tradition, they offer the daily sacrifice at the ninth hour. The daily sacrifice: a small amount each family would offer; they would set aside a portion for the daily sacrifice and also a portion for the family separately, which was done by tradition. Each village would have elders; the people would bring small portions to the elders; the elders would perform the sacrifice; it was a tradition. (See Numbers 28:1-8; Exodus 29:38-46; Numbers 7:1-11, Leviticus 4:15; Deuteronomy 19:12; Deuteronomy 21:1-6; Deuteronomy 21:19-20; Exodus 12:21).

"Was darkness over all the land." What had happened had been clearly shown to humans. When the Son of God was to the point of losing His life on earth, even the sun couldn't shine the light out; that is how the sadness of the light would be. This act shows plain anger from the Father at what humans are doing on earth: even the sun couldn't shine its light. And this was not an eclipse; it is just the hand of the Father blocking the light of the sun.

46 Then about the ninth hour, Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani? That is, My God, My God, why have Thou forsaken Me?

Comments Matthew 27:46. . How sad heaven is when the Son could not feel the Father! The death of the Lord Jesus' human body has an impact on heaven as well, because that human is the Son of Man who departed from the earth. There was sadness beyond human words to explain (see Complementary Comments on Matthew 25:6). Because the Lord Jesus is in the human body, at the moment of death, the Father just stays above watching, because the Father is not in human form, but His feelings are impacted because of the human death of His Son's body. The sorrow beyond human words can be expressed when the Three in One feel separated, because the Son took human form, the death of the human body of the Son also impacted the Father. When the death of the Son happened, the Son went down to the place of death to give light to the dark place; the Father will not go there; His glory will destroy the place of death.

47 Then some of those who were standing there, having heard, said, This Man calls Elijah.

Comments Matthew 27:47. Because they don't understand, so they take what they believe it is; that is the way.

48 And straightaway one of them ran, and took a sponge, and filled it with vinegar, and having put it on a reed, gave Him to drink.

Comments Matthew 27:48. At that time, this was the way to torture criminals when they crucified them. They didn't give them to drink wine; they gave them to drink vinegar; it was a way of torture.

49 And the rest said, Let be; let us see whether Elijah comes to save Him.

50 And Jesus having cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the Spirit.

Comments Matthew 27:50. The God of Three is: God the Father, God the Son, (Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit.

Q: How do we understand the Spirit of the Lord Jesus, as mentioned here in this verse? A: God of Three in One, but the Lord Jesus has taken the form of a human, and He has received the spirit as a human. All humans must have a spirit. Because the Lord Jesus took on the form of dust, He has a body, a spirit, and a soul to confirm the human being in Him. The Trinity is always Three in One, but each one has a duty, and the Father is above all. The Holy Spirit is the Spirit of the Father. The Lord Jesus in human form, as the body, the soul, and the spirit, is three in one as well. The body, soul, and the spirit of the Lord Jesus cannot be separated; they are only as one because He is human. The Father, the Son, Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit are Three in One, yet they can be separated, and each is unique in their own being.

51 And behold, the veil of the temple was torn in two from the top to the bottom; and the earth was shaken, and the rocks were split,

Comments Matthew 27:51. Q: What is the meaning of the veil of the temple being torn in two from the top to the bottom? A: The curtain of the temple stands between God and humans, but with the death of the Lord Jesus, the curtain has been torn apart. Now humans have a chance to approach God through the Lord Jesus. Through the Son of Man, humans have a chance to be closer to the Father; there is no more blockage between humans and the Father.

52 and the tombs were opened, and many bodies of the saints having fallen asleep were raised;

Comments Matthew 27:52. First, because of the death of the Lord Jesus, the saints who had died before, according to faith in the Lord Jesus, have received

a chance to be resurrected with a heavenly body, not with a body of dust that had disappeared. Another way to understand this resurrection is that these saints have resurrected into their heavenly bodies.

Q: The Lord Jesus rose in His same earthly body; how do we understand the rising of the saints into the heavenly bodies? Is the resurrection of the saints here a bodily resurrection in the same way as the Lord Jesus' resurrection? A: Do not try to mix up the heavenly and the body of a human being. The Lord has prepared the heavenly bodies, as the Bible tells us. Every believer has a heavenly body, but the Lord Jesus, His human body, was transformed from the inside out to be a heavenly body; His body has not decayed. All those saints became dust of the ground, but the Lord Jesus' body has never seen decay. The Lord Jesus ascends into heaven as His body rose and was instantly transformed (see also Comments John 19:30).

"The tombs were opened." The tombs must be open for the heavenly bodies to come out. When it was close to the resurrection time of the Lord Jesus, the Lord prepared the heavenly bodies for these saints for their return. Don't forget that all the saints who have perished have a soul, a spirit, and a material body. The material body is gone, but the soul and the spirit are still there. The soul has returned to the Father, but the spirit has remained where the body has disintegrated; only for these select ones, for this time, the spirit remained where the body was, awaiting its return. The tomb must be open for the heavenly body to come in and out from above; this action takes place in a twinkling of an eye. The Lord has put the heavenly body in the spot He wants, and that body joins with the saint's spirit. How can the body get out of the tomb? The Lord has split the tomb open for the heavenly body to get in and out. The Lord has deposited the heavenly body down to be joined with the spirit, and after joining with the spirit, the new heavenly body comes out; this new heavenly body has the substance and becomes similar to the material of the earth, and that body comes out. When the judgment day comes, those who will resurrect that time will join with the soul after being judged; the soul has to be judged first. These saints came to appear to people, and they will be gone; a heavenly body without a soul cannot walk on earth. This resurrection of these saints is just to show people that as the Lord Jesus departs, the dead rise, and humans can see the dead rising.

Q: Why do we say in the comment above that the substance of the heavenly body is similar to the material of the earth? A: The resurrected appearance has

to be similar to the dead one; they just look alike, but they are not the same. All imperfections of the earthly body will not be reproduced in the heavenly body; everything that is imperfect is fixed, and those bodies will come out to meet people.

Q: What happens to us when we die? A: When we die, our soul goes back to the Lord, the body goes back to dust, and the spirit stays inside the tomb, in a different dimension of the tomb, waiting, tomb over tomb. However, the spirits cannot come out to roam free; they stay in a different spiritual dimension waiting in order. Note that there are different waiting places for the spirit and the soul of a person. Cemeteries are not places for the living to go around; they serve different purposes in human life. You are still alive, so why do you go there and fool around? So many go and bother the things that the living cannot understand; just leave them alone where the dead lie, leave them alone; no living needs to do anything with the dead there. In terms of humans, we can say, "Do not disturb the peace of those resting." As the Bible says, the dead can see the living, but cannot cross back to be with or influence the living; between the dimensions (spiritual and physical), they cannot cross over; don't try to mix the truth with human talk; there have been make-beliefs about all sorts of false things.

53 and coming out of the tombs after His resurrection, they entered into the holy city and appeared to many.

Comments Matthew 27:53. These are the saints who have been buried; what is happening here is entirely different from the end-time resurrection.

Q: Why has the Lord allowed the resurrection of these saints at this time? A: These saints who resurrected here go to glorify the Son of God, the Lord Jesus, before the completion of the closing time. That is why the Lord has created the parallel earth: these saints who were raised here will go on this parallel earth and are waiting there for the closing of the age.

"They entered into the holy city." This city does not refer to the Jerusalem city of this earth. This city here refers to the holy city of the parallel earth (the earth upon earth, as we call it in this commentary). Humans see it and want to go there, but not everyone can go.

"Appeared to many" means that the resurrected saints appeared for a short moment to many on this earth who had the chance to see the resurrected bodies of the saints and how they look. They look similar to the human body, but to

the human eye, they appear different; they are not the same, because those resurrected bodies will have something from the glory of God upon them. Humans can notice that they look alike but are not the same; they do not have the same flesh as human flesh has (see 1 Corinthians 15:35-44).

54 Now the centurion, and those with him watching Jesus, having seen the earthquake, and the things that were done, feared extremely, saying, Truly this was the Son of God.

Comments Matthew 27:54. This portion of Scripture clearly tells that human eyes have seen the glory of God in human nature. In the position of crucifixion, yet the glory of the Lord Jesus cannot be hidden. All these soldiers have seen the One they have tortured, and before His last breath on earth, He has shown the glory of God within Him come out. Human eyes noticed the difference between the two criminals beside and the Holy One in the middle. Human eyes could make a clear comparison between humans and the Holy One that has been tortured, and that is why it made them, the centurion and those with him, say "Truly this was the Son of God." Look at this verse itself: the ones who have been part in torturing the Holy One of God have accepted the truth by saying "Truly this was the Son of God"; it was not the saints who said it, but the soldiers who said it.

55 And many women were there beholding from afar, who had followed Jesus from Galilee, ministering to Him,

Comments Matthew 27:55. These women came from many places to follow the Lord Jesus. They followed the Lord and provided for His needs. By their own will, they gave all they had; they have been faithful to the Lord; they left everything behind and followed the Lord, and they didn't expect to get anything in return; they just followed and provided, giving all they had to the Lord. Now you don't have to give money to the Lord, just give your heart to the Lord; your heart is the most valuable treasure to the Lord, and He is happy to receive it. These women, some had money of their own, and some did get work, as they followed, to provide for their living, but the majority of what they made they gave to the Lord; and that is why their names are written here, for remembering them.

56 among whom was Mary Magdalene, and Mary the mother of James and Joses, and the mother of the sons of Zebedee.

Comments Matthew 27:56. These women did not follow the Lord Jesus because their children followed the Lord Jesus, but because their own hearts wanted to follow. These women followed their hearts.

57 And when evening came, a rich man from Arimathea, named Joseph, came, who also himself was discipled to Jesus;

Comments Matthew 27:57. This man, Joseph, had played the most important part among the people who followed the Lord Jesus. His action could lead him to be in trouble for associating with a criminal, as the Lord Jesus was labeled as a criminal on the cross. He could be in trouble himself; this is a man people should look up to.

58 he having gone to Pilate, asked for the body of Jesus. Then Pilate commanded it to be given up.

59 And having taken the body, Joseph wrapped Him in a clean linen cloth,

60 and laid it in his own new tomb, which he had hewn out in the rock; and having rolled a great stone to the door of the tomb, he went away.

Comments Matthew 27:58-60. "And laid it in his own new tomb." This man gave up his own tomb for the Lord Jesus; he did not benefit materially in this world from the Lord, but he gave up his own tomb. This action is a sample of teaching for humans: give without expecting anything in return for your giving. But many Christians nowadays come to the Lord and want something from the Lord. Joseph gave up his own tomb without expecting to be paid; a tomb at that time was not cheap, but he could give up something that was important to himself. In those times, people prepared their tombs with the money they saved and had someone cut it into the stone; it cost them, and Joseph had given up what was his to the Lord. It is a comparison for today on how people can do as he did: give something they have prepared for themselves and give it to the Lord without expecting anything in return. The Lord passed away at that time from the earth, and Joseph gave something without any expectation of a miracle.

"And having taken the body, Joseph wrapped Him in a clean linen cloth." As the Bible tells us, Joseph just wrapped the body of the Lord Jesus in a cloth and did not do any special burial ceremony. At that time, the body had to be prepared for burial, a long and costly preparation. He had no time to finish it, so he just wrapped the Lord Jesus' body and had to place the body in the tomb before the Preparation Day ended (before the Sabbath started). The first day of

the Passover feast was the Preparation Day. The Jews used this day to prepare the place to host the Passover. When Passover is finished, the rest is the preparation for cleaning; what belongs to Passover cannot be further used for other purposes; all things must be cleaned and put away. Many traditions apply to this, and if you are not a Jew, you will never understand the traditions. All the things used for Passover must be put away and kept separate, because, according to Jewish tradition, Passover items are not to be used as everyday items. (Note that there is a difference between the Passover itself, eaten on Thursday at twilight, and the Passover feast held on the Sabbath).

"Hewn out in the rock." This tomb is Joseph's new tomb, which he made for himself. Only the rich people could afford to cut a tomb into the rock; they cut the stone to make a cave. Poor people use natural tombs, such as caves in rocks. This tomb, Joseph cut a stone himself to make a tomb; no one else was ever laid there.

"Having rolled a great stone." The stone he put in front of the tomb needed more men to help roll it; it was a big stone, as the Bible says.

61 And Mary Magdalene was there, and the other Mary, sitting opposite the tomb.

Comments Matthew 27:61. They all saw the Lord Jesus crucified, but that did not make them turn away from their faith. Even though they had already sealed the tomb, these women were still standing in front; their faith is strong. Just by sitting there watching the tomb, it has shown their hearts. The faith they had, we all should learn from it. They gained no material things of this world by following the Lord Jesus. They gave all they had for His daily need and did not receive anything of this world from the Lord, and lost their sons as well. In this case, it does not necessarily signify death; it indicates that instead of the sons contributing to the family, they lost their sons because they were unable to work within the family. The heart these women have is what to look up to.

"The other Mary" mentioned here is the same as Mary, the mother of James and Joses (or Joseph), mentioned in Verse 56.

62 And the next day, which is after the Preparation, the chief priests and the Pharisees were gathered together before Pilate,

Comments Matthew 27:62. The day "after the Preparation" was the Sabbath. These verses tell us all there is to know; these leaders knew what the Lord Jesus had been teaching. Inside of them, they knew who the Lord Jesus was,

but the love of the things of the world covered their eyes and controlled their hearts.

63 saying, Sir, we remember that that deceiver said while living, After three days I arise.

Comments Matthew 27:63. That is the way of their hearts, but the Lord will not hide what people are calling Him. He received more than name-calling; why would He have to hide?

64 Command therefore that the tomb be made secure until the third day, lest ever His disciples having come, steal Him away, and say to the people, He is risen from the dead; and the last error will be worse than the first.

65 Pilate said to them, You have a guard; go, make it as secure as you can.

66 And having gone, they made the tomb secure, sealing the stone, and leaving the guard there.

Comments Matthew 27:65-66. Q: How did they seal the stone? A: The material they used was similar to mortar nowadays; they mixed rock powder with a rubber (glue-like) substance extracted from trees, which hardened into stone when dry. They sealed all around the stone with this mortar glue. Also, they used an entire guard of soldiers because they feared His disciples. Since so many followed the Lord Jesus, they feared they would form a mob.

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) The Lord Jesus suffered on the cross of Golgotha and died for our sins. He is the Lamb of God, the Savior of the world, and He is the King of the world. He has taken all the penalty for humankind; the Lord Jesus has humbled Himself and takes the blame for sins upon Himself, and that is because of His love for humans. 2) We should not follow the Lord Jesus for the things of this world and should not expect anything of this world in exchange for following Him. 3) These days, we cannot literally give the Lord Jesus food or provide for His daily needs, as the women mentioned in this chapter did, but we can give our hearts to the Lord Jesus, and that is the most important treasure we can give Him. 4) God knows what will happen, but people must use their own free will to choose how to live their lives; all should follow the light. 5) Cemeteries are not places for the living to go around; the

cemetery is used for different purposes. As the Bible tells us, the dead can see the living, but they cannot cross back to be with or influence the living. Spirits live in a different dimension than we do, and they cannot cross over; we should not believe human fantasies because they make up many false stories. 6) There are only two types of people in this world: those who believe in the Lord Jesus and those who do not believe in the Lord Jesus. Think about the criminal on the cross; it is never too late to become a believer, but do not wait until the point of death; accept the Lord Jesus now as you read this chapter of the Bible.

Conclusion: How can you be, and what should you be as a Christian? To be Christians, we must believe that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God and that He died for our sins. With the death of the Lord Jesus, the curtain of the temple was torn in two, and now humans have a chance to approach God the Father through His Son, the Lord Jesus. We do not need to pay anything to be forgiven of our sins; the Lord Jesus paid it all; we only need to give our hearts to the Lord Jesus and invite Him to be the King of our lives. In this chapter, there are two examples of true believers that we should follow. First, think about the women and how they followed their hearts: they left everything behind, followed the Lord Jesus, and gave everything they had to support Him in His ministry. These women saw the Lord Jesus crucified and still did not lose their faith and hope in the Lord. Secondly, think of Joseph of Arimathea; he gave his own new tomb and laid the body of the Lord Jesus in it, without expecting anything in return; he was not a selfish person. As Christians, it is important to acknowledge and accept the suffering the Lord Jesus took for our sins, but we cannot take it for granted. Many of us do not realize the pain, suffering, and humiliation that the Lord Jesus went through during the trial and crucifixion; just imagine the whole battalion of soldiers and all of the people mocking the Lord Jesus and abusing Him. The Lord Jesus paid in full for our salvation; we just need to give our hearts fully to the Lord.

Chapter 28

SUMMARY

The events presented in Chapter 28 take place at the tomb where the Lord Jesus was laid, on the way from the tomb to a place where the disciples were gathered, in the city, and in Galilee, on a mountain where the Lord Jesus directed His disciples to go. In this chapter, we encounter various people (Mary Magdalene, the other Mary, the soldiers guard, the chief priests, the elders, the Lord Jesus' disciples), an angel of the Lord, and the risen Lord Jesus. The events described in this chapter are in order: 1) Mary Magdalene and the other Mary went to the tomb of the Lord Jesus; on the Sunday morning before sunrise, these women went to the tomb because of concern and love for the Lord. 2) An angel of the Lord came from heaven to roll back for these women the large stone that Joseph put at the entrance of the tomb. The coming of the angel was miraculous and real; there was an earthquake, and the angel rolled the stone back while the guards became like dead men because of fear. This miracle was only a sign for the women to see the empty place where the Lord lay and to confirm the Lord Jesus' meeting with the disciples in Galilee. 3) The risen Lord Jesus met Mary Magdalene and the other Mary on the way from the tomb to a place where the disciples were gathered. The Lord Jesus met the women and told them to go and remind the disciples about the meeting on the mountain in Galilee that He had told them about before His arrest. 4) The tomb's guard went into the city and told the chief priest about what had happened at the tomb of the Lord Jesus. The chief priests and the elders gave money to the soldiers and plotted with them to lie about the events that took place at the tomb. 5) The risen Lord Jesus met with His eleven disciples in Galilee on a mountain. This meeting is important for the disciples because they see the risen Lord Jesus face to face, and He gives them the great commission to go and make disciples of the Lord Jesus from all the nations of the earth. At this moment, the Lord has commanded them to go and spread the Word and start the work.

1 Then, after the Sabbath, as it began to dawn toward the first day of the week, came Mary Magdalene and the other Mary to see the tomb.

Comments Matthew 28:1. "As it began to dawn" means the beginning of the twilight before sunrise. "Towards the first day of the week" is Sunday morning. For "the other Mary," see [Comments Matthew 27:61](#).

In this verse, it shows who has come to see the tomb: not the disciples who are concerned; the women, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary, come because of their love for the Lord. They are concerned for the dead and come to see. They did not expect a reward for their concern for the dead, and that is true love, which is difficult to find nowadays. Many people come to church to receive, but do not truly give their hearts to worship (seek) the Lord.

2 And behold, there was a great earthquake; for an angel of the Lord having descended from heaven, and having come, rolled away the stone, and sat upon it.

Comments Matthew 28:2. The angel rolled the stone away as a sign for the women to see the place where the Lord Jesus had lain and to confirm the Word of the Lord that He had spoken before about where He would be when He rose (see [Matthew 26:32](#)).

3 Now, His appearance was as lightning, and his raiment white as snow;

4 and from fear of him the watchers trembled, and became as dead.

5 Now answering, the angel said to the women, Fear not you; for I know that you seek Jesus, the One having been crucified.

6 He is not here; for He is risen, as He said. Come, see the place where the Lord was lying.

7 And go quickly, and tell His disciples, He is risen from the dead; and behold, He goeth before you into Galilee; there shall you see Him: behold, I have told you.

Comments Matthew 28:2-7. Q: Has the Lord Jesus risen out of the tomb and passed through the rock, or has the rock been moved before? A: The Lord Jesus has risen in the human body, and the Father's hand led the Lord Jesus through the rock to be out of the tomb, because that was not the place for Him to be. The Lord Jesus rose in the palm of the Father and was led out through the rock; He is in the palm of the Father; nothing can block that hand. The Father's hand from heaven had come there to take the Son out from the tomb, and nothing could stop this. The angel came after the Lord rose, and that was for the women who came. The Father had already taken the Lord away before the women arrived. The guards did not see when the Father took the Lord; humans cannot see the Father's hand. When the disciples have seen the Lord

Jesus by the Father's side, as the Bible says, the Father has taken the Lord Jesus to His side, because that is where the Lord Jesus should be, beside the Father; He has finished the job the Father has given Him. (See [Acts 7:54-55](#)).

8 And having gone out quickly from the tomb with fear and great joy, they ran to report His disciples.

9 And behold, Jesus met them, saying, Hail! And having come, they took hold of His feet, and worshiped Him.

10 Then Jesus says to them, Fear not; go tell My brothers that they depart into Galilee, and there will they see Me.

Comments Matthew 28:10. These women had the privilege of seeing the resurrected Lord first because of their sorrowful hearts. As they sat in front of the tomb, the Lord had mercy on them. The Lord sent these women to remind the disciples about the meeting in Galilee. Forgetting is human nature; when too many things happen, we will forget what we have been told. The disciples were commoners as well; regardless of how many times the Lord told them, when things happened, they would all forget what the Lord had told them.

11 Now, as they were going, behold, some of the guard, having come into the city, reported to the chief priests all the things that were come to pass.

12 And having been gathered together with the elders, and having taken counsel, they gave sufficient silver pieces to the soldiers,

13 saying, Say that His disciples having come by night, stole Him while we slept.

14 And if this is heard by the governor, we will persuade him, and will keep you out of trouble.

15 And having taken money, they did as they were instructed; and this report is spread abroad among the Jews, until the present day.

Comments Matthew 28:11-15. As the Bible says in many places, the love of money is the root of all kinds of evil (1 Timothy 6:10). Humans can sell their own souls for money and the riches of this world. The root itself, not the truth that troubles: money is the root. These verses clearly show that money has the power to control the deepest parts of men's hearts; even the soldiers who have seen the truth, the money still buys the words from their mouths.

"Among the Jews." They must discredit the Lord Jesus towards the Jews first because the Lord Jesus is a Jew; these are the people of His own flesh, but they are the least who accept Him.

16 And the eleven disciples went into Galilee, to the mountain where Jesus assigned them.

17 And having seen Him, they worshipped; but some doubted.

Comments Matthew 28:16-17. In this place in Galilee, on this mountain, the Lord Jesus just met with His eleven disciples. These verses tell us that among all of those who follow the Lord, there is always hope for all who believe. The Lord Jesus has given the disciples specific directions on where they should meet Him. In the same way, the Lord gives the rest of the world directions in the Bible on where to meet Him. The Lord always asks us to meet Him in our hearts: come to the Lord with a sincere heart, and you will always meet with the Lord. In the same way He went to meet the disciples, He comes to you. The same way for all who believe and follow: you meet with the Lord, or He comes to meet with you.

"And having seen Him, they worshipped." Unlike the disciples here, we don't see the Lord physically, but He is in our hearts. The Lord Jesus is in our hearts, not with the eyes to see, but with an internal connection deeper than the physical appearance; it is the soul itself that has this connection with the Lord.

18 And Jesus having come, spoke to them, saying, All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on the earth.

19 Go therefore, make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them into the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit:

Comments Matthew 28:18-19. These verses tell those who follow the Lord's teaching that all should do the same way as the Bible says. When you meet someone, the first thing in your heart should be to call upon the Lord for help to be the guide of your tongue to speak and deposit the words in your heart to be able to speak out those words to all that you have a chance to meet. But first, be aware of the fake (insincere) appearance of people who come and ask for opinions on the Word of God; don't answer from your own understanding, think of the Lord first, and the words will come.

"Baptizing them into the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit." When you baptize someone, you cannot omit any name of the Trinity of God. A complete baptism must always be in the God of Three; you cannot

skip any name, and this is an order of the Way. If anywhere they baptize differently, do not even be involved with them; you cannot be baptized without all Three Persons of the Trinity of God: God the Father, God the Son (Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit.

20 teaching them to observe all things whatever I commanded you; and behold, I am with you all the days, until the end of the age.

Comments Matthew 28:20. "Behold, I am with you all the days, until the end of the age." In this verse, we have two portions. First, "I am with you all the days," which refers to the people who have accepted the Deity of the Son of God, that He is the true and only Son of God, and all things were created through Him, as the Bible tells us. And second, "until the end of the age," which means until the earth itself has collapsed and the end of all things takes place. "The end of the age" means until the earth itself has collapsed, and the end of all things takes place; not just the end of the human race, but the end of the earth itself, because in Him (the Son of God) all things were created; all things were created through Him, so He will not abandon all things until the end of the age.

AMEN!

LIFE AND FAITH APPLICATIONS

1) The Lord Jesus is risen, and as He met the disciples on the Galilee Mountain, He is waiting to meet with all who seek Him; seek and ask Him to meet with you first in your heart, and your faith will grow from the inside out. If you believe and follow, you meet with the Lord, or He comes to meet with you. 2) Do not let money control your mind, and do not seek the power that money has to offer. The Bible teaches us that the love of money is the root of all kinds of evil, and if money controls your mind, you will hear the voice of money louder than the voice of the Lord. 3) As followers of Jesus Christ, we must follow the Lord's commandments and spread the Word to all people. All followers of the Lord Jesus must be baptized in the name of the Father, the Son (Jesus Christ), and the Holy Spirit.

Acknowledgment

At Bible Commentary Forever Ministries, we believe in the Trinity of God: God the Father, God the Son (Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit. In our ministry, we rely on the gifts of the Holy Spirit, which we believe are received through the baptism in the Holy Spirit (Acts 2:1-4). We would like to express our heartfelt gratitude to God the Father, in the name of our Lord Jesus, for sending His beloved Son into the world to bring salvation to all. We are deeply thankful to the Lord Jesus for His sacrifice on the cross, which grants us forgiveness for our sins and brings us peace with the Trinity of God. We are also grateful for His mercy in blessing us with the baptism in the Holy Spirit and for calling us to serve the Trinity of God through our ministry. Finally, we want to convey our sincere appreciation to the Holy Spirit for His anointing and blessings in our work.

"In Him was life, and the life was the light of men. And the light shines in the darkness, and the darkness has not seized it." (John 1:4-5)